MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 27

The Etymologies

Isidore of Seville

Etymologiae

The Etymologies

Part Three: Man, Beasts, the World, and the Earth

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

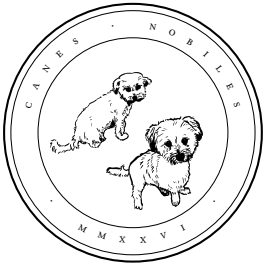


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 27 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows W. M. Lindsay's edition (Oxford, 1911)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

BOOK XI · MAN AND PORTENTS

I · Man and His Parts 9
II · The Ages of Man 46
III · Portents 56
IV · Transformations 67

BOOK XII · ANIMALS

I · Cattle and Beasts of Burden 69
II · Beasts 86
III · Small Animals 99
IV · Serpents 102
V · Worms 118
VI · Fishes 122
VII · Birds 138
VIII · Small Flying Creatures 161

BOOK XIII · THE WORLD AND ITS PARTS

Preface 167
I · The World 167

BOOK XIII · THE WORLD AND ITS PARTS

(continued)

II · Atoms 169
III · The Elements 171
IV · Heaven 173
V · The Parts of Heaven 174
VI · The Circles of Heaven 176
VII · Air and Clouds 178
VIII · Thunder 180
IX · Thunderbolts 181
X · The Rainbow and the Effects of Clouds 182
XI · The Winds 186
XII · Waters 191
XIII · The Diversity of Waters 192
XIV · The Sea 196
XV · The Ocean 197
XVI · The Mediterranean Sea 198
XVII · Gulfs of the Sea 203
XVIII · Tides and Straits 204
XIX · Lakes and Pools 206
XX · The Abyss 209
XXI · Rivers 211
XXII · Floods 221

BOOK XIV · THE EARTH

I · The Earth 225
II · The Globe 226

BOOK XIV · THE EARTH

(continued)

III · Asia 228
IV · Europe 245
V · Libya 258
VI · Islands 266
VII · Promontories 281
VIII · Mountains and Other Words for the Earth 283
IX · The Lower Regions 292

BOOK XV · BUILDINGS AND FIELDS

I · Cities 297
II · Public Buildings 317
III · Dwellings 328
IV · Sacred Buildings 332
V · Storehouses 337
VI · Workshops 339
VII · Entrances 341
VIII · The Parts of Buildings 343
IX · Fortifications 348
X · Tents 349
XI · Tombs 350
XII · Rustic Buildings 352
XIII · Fields 353
XIV · The Boundaries of Fields 357
XV · The Measures of Fields 358
XVI · Roads 361

De homine et partibus eius

I · MAN AND HIS PARTS

Nature is named from causing things to be born, life from vigor, and man from the earth he was made of. Man is twofold, inner and outer: Isidore distinguishes soul, spirit, mind, and memory, then names the five senses and the parts of the body from head to foot, the inner organs, the blood, the seed, and the conception and likeness of children, and ends by sorting the body's parts into those made for use, for beauty, or to tell the sexes apart.

Natura dicta ab eo quod nasci aliquid faciat. Gignendi enim
nature called from that that to-be-born something it-makes of-begetting for
et faciendi potens est. Hanc quidam Deum esse dixerunt, a
and of-making capable it-is this some God to-be have-said by
quo omnia creata sunt et existunt. Genus a gignendo dictum,
whom all-things created are and exist kind from begetting called
cui derivatum nomen a terra, ex qua omnia gignuntur;
to-which derived the-name from earth from which all-things are-begotten
γῆ enim Graece terra dicitur. Vita dicta propter vigorem, vel
ge for in-Greek earth is-called life called on-account-of vigor or
quod vim teneat nascendi atque crescendi. Unde et arbores
because the-force it-holds of-being-born and of-growing whence also trees
vitam habere dicuntur, quia gignuntur et crescunt. Homo
life to-have are-said because they-are-begotten and grow man
dictus, quia ex humo est factus, sicut [et] in Genesi dicitur:
called because from humus he-is made as also in Genesis it-is-said
'Et creavit Deus hominem de humo terrae.' Abusive autem
and created God man from the-humus of-the-earth loosely moreover
pronuntiatur ex utraque substantia totus homo, id est ex
is-pronounced from each substance the-whole man that is from

societate animae et corporis. Nam proprie homo ab humo.
the-fellowship of-soul and of-body for properly man from humus
Graeci autem hominem ἄνθρωπον appellaverunt, eo quod
the-Greeks moreover man anthropos called for-this that
sursum spectet sublevatus ab humo ad contemplationem
upward he-looks raised from the-humus to the-contemplation
artificis sui. Quod Ovidius poeta designat, cum dicit:
of-maker his which Ovid the-poet marks when he-says

Pronaque cum spectant animalia cetera terram,
and-prone though look animals other at-the-earth
os homini sublime dedit caelumque videre
a-face to-man lofty he-gave and-heaven to-see
iussit, et erectos ad sidera tollere vultus.
he-ordered and erect to the-stars to-raise faces

Qui ideo erectus caelum aspicit, ut Deum quaerat, non
who therefore erect heaven beholds that God he-may-seek not
ut terram intendat veluti pecora, quae natura prona et
that the-earth he-may-attend like cattle which nature prone and
ventri oboedientia finxit. Duplex est autem homo: interior
to-the-belly obedient fashioned twofold is moreover man inner
et exterior. Interior homo anima, [et] exterior homo corpus
and outer the-inner man the-soul and the-outer man the-body
Anima autem a gentilibus nomen accepit, eo quod
soul moreover from the-gentiles the-name received for-this that
ventus sit. Unde et Graece ventus ἄνεμος dicitur, quod
wind it-be whence also in-Greek wind anemos is-called because
ore trahentes aerem vivere videamur: sed apertissime
by-the-mouth drawing air to-live we-seem but most-plainly
falsum est, quia multo prius gignitur anima quam concipi
false it-is because much earlier is-begotten the-soul than to-be-conceived

aer ore possit, quia iam in genetricis utero vivit.
air by-the-mouth can because already in of-the-mother the-womb it-lives
Non est igitur aer anima, quod putaverunt quidam qui non
not is therefore air the-soul as thought some who not
potuerunt incorpoream eius cogitare naturam. Spiritum idem
could incorporeal its to-conceive nature spirit the-same
esse quod animam Evangelista pronuntiat dicens: 'Potestatem
to-be as soul the-Evangelist pronounces saying power
habeo ponendi animam meam, et rursus potestatem habeo
I-have of-laying-down soul my and again power I-have
sumendi eam.' De hac quoque ipsa Domini anima passionis
of-taking it about this also very of-the-Lord soul of-the-passion
tempore memoratus Evangelista ita protulit, dicens: 'Et
at-the-time aforementioned the-Evangelist so brought-forth saying and
inclinato capite emisit spiritum.' Quid est enim emittere
with-bowed head he-sent-forth the-spirit what is for to-send-forth
spiritum nisi quod animam ponere? Sed anima dicta
the-spirit except what the-soul to-lay-down but soul called
propter quod vivit: spiritus autem vel pro spiritali natura,
on-account-of that it-lives spirit moreover either for spiritual nature
vel pro eo quod inspiret in corpore. Item animum idem
or for that that it-breathes in the-body likewise mind the-same
esse quod animam; sed anima vitae est, animus consilii.
to-be as soul but the-soul of-life is the-mind of-counsel
Unde dicunt philosophi etiam sine animo vitam manere,
whence say the-philosophers even without mind life to-remain
et sine mente animam durare: unde et amentes. Nam
and without intellect the-soul to-endure whence also senseless for
mentem vocari, ut sciat: animum, ut velit. Mens
intellect to-be-called that it-may-know mind that it-may-will intellect
autem vocata, quod emineat in anima, vel quod meminit.
moreover called because it-stands-out in the-soul or because it-remembers

Unde et inmemores amentes. Quapropter non anima, sed
whence also the-unmindful senseless wherefore not the-soul but
quod excellit in anima mens vocatur, tamquam caput eius
what excels in the-soul intellect is-called as-if the-head its
vel oculus. Unde et ipse homo secundum mentem imago
or the-eye whence also the-very man according-to the-intellect the-image
Dei dicitur. Ita autem haec omnia adiuncta sunt animae ut
of-God is-called so moreover these all joined are to-the-soul that
una res sit. Pro efficientiis enim causarum diversa nomina
one thing it-be for the-effects for of-causes diverse names
sortita est anima. Nam et memoria mens est, unde et
obtained has the-soul for also memory intellect is whence also
inmemores amentes. Dum ergo vivificat corpus, anima est:
the-unmindful senseless while therefore it-quickens the-body soul it-is
dum vult, animus est: dum scit, mens est: dum recolit,
while it-wills mind it-is while it-knows intellect it-is while it-recollects
memoria est: dum rectum iudicat, ratio est: dum spirat,
memory it-is while the-right it-judges reason it-is while it-breathes
spiritus est: dum aliquid sentit, sensus est. Nam inde animus
spirit it-is while something it-senses sense it-is for thence the-mind
sensus dicitur pro his quae sentit, unde et sententia
sense is-called for those-things which it-senses whence also sentence
nomen accepit. Corpus dictum eo quod corruptum perit.
the-name received body called for-this that corrupted it-perishes
Solubile enim atque mortale est, et aliquando solvendum.
dissoluble for and mortal it-is and at-some-time to-be-dissolved
Caro autem a creando est appellata. Crementum enim
flesh moreover from creating is called growth for
semen est masculi, unde animalium et hominum corpora
the-seed is of-the-male whence of-animals and of-men the-bodies
concipiuntur. Hinc et parentes creatores vocantur. Caro
are-conceived hence also parents creators are-called flesh

autem ex quattuor elementis conpacta est. Nam terra in
moreover from four elements compacted is for earth in
carne est, aer in halitu, humor in sanguine, ignis in calore
the-flesh is air in the-breath moisture in the-blood fire in the-heat
vitali. Habent enim in nobis elementa suam quaeque partem,
vital they-have for in us the-elements their each part
cuius quid debetur conpage resoluta. Caro autem et
of-which what is-owed with-the-structure dissolved flesh moreover and
corpus diversa significant. In carne semper corpus est, non
body diverse-things signify in flesh always body is not
semper in corpore caro. Nam caro est quae vivit, idem
always in body flesh for flesh is what lives the-same
et corpus. Corpus, quod non vivit, idem non caro. Nam
also body body which not lives the-same not flesh for
corpus dici aut quod post vitam est mortuum, aut sine
body to-be-called either what after life is dead or without
vita est conditum. Interdum et cum vita corpus, et non
life is made sometimes also with life body and not
caro, ut herba et lignum. Sensus corporis quinque sunt:
flesh as grass and wood the-senses of-the-body five are
visus, auditus, odoratus, gustus, et tactus. Ex quibus duo
sight hearing smell taste and touch of which two
aperiuntur et clauduntur, duo semper patentes sunt. Sensus
are-opened and are-closed two always open are senses
dicti, quia per eos anima subtilissime totum corpus agitat
called because through them the-soul most-subtly the-whole body moves
vigore sentiendi. Unde et praesentia nuncupantur, quod
by-the-vigor of-sensing whence also present-things are-named because
sint prae sensibus; sicut prae oculis, quae praesto sunt
they-be before the-senses as before the-eyes what at-hand are
oculis. Visus est qui a philosophis humor vitreus appellatur.
to-the-eyes sight is which by the-philosophers humor vitreous is-called

Visum autem fieri quidam adseverant aut externa aetherea
sight moreover to-be-made some assert either by-external ethereal
luce, aut interno spiritu lucido per tenues vias a cerebro
light or by-internal spirit shining through fine ways from the-brain
venientes, atque penetratis tunicis in aerem exeuntes, et
coming and with-penetrated tunics into the-air going-out and
tunc conmixtione similis materiae visum dantes. Visus dictus,
then by-mingling of-like matter sight giving sight called
quod vivacior sit ceteris sensibus ac praestantior sive
because livelier it-be than-the-other senses and more-excellent or
velocior, ampliusque vigeat, quantum memoria inter cetera
swifter and-more it-thrives as-much-as memory among the-other
mentis officia. Vicinior est enim cerebro, unde omnia
of-the-mind offices nearer it-is for to-the-brain whence all-things
manant; ex quo fit ut ea quae ad alios pertinent
flow from which it-happens that those-things which to other pertain
sensus, 'vide' dicamus; veluti cum dicimus: 'Vide quomodo
senses see we-say as when we-say see how
sonat,' 'vide quomodo sapit,' sic et cetera. Auditus appellatus,
it-sounds see how it-tastes so also the-rest hearing called
quod voces auriat; hoc est aere verberato suscipiat
because voices it-drinks-in that is with-the-air struck it-receives
sonos. Odoratus quasi aeris odoris adtactus. Tacto enim
sounds smell as-if of-the-air of-odor the-touch with-touched for
aere sentitur. Sic et olfactus, quod odoribus adficiatur.
air it-is-perceived so also olfactus because by-odors it-is-affected
Gustus a gutture dictus. Tactus, eo quod pertractet
taste from the-throat called touch for-this that it-handles
et tangat et per omnia membra vigorem sensus aspergat.
and touches and through all limbs the-vigor of-sense sprinkles
Nam tactu probamus quidquid ceteris sensibus iudicare
for by-touch we-test whatever by-the-other senses to-judge

non possumus. Duo autem genera tactus esse; nam aut
not we-can two moreover kinds of-touch to-be for either
extrinsecus venit quod feriat, aut intus in ipso corpore
from-outside comes what may-strike or within in the-very body
oritur. Unicuique autem sensui propriam naturam datam.
it-arises to-each moreover sense its-own nature given
Nam quod videndum est, oculis capitur, quod audiendum
for what to-be-seen is by-the-eyes is-taken what to-be-heard
est, auribus: mollia et dura tactu aestimantur, sapor gustu,
is by-the-ears soft-things and hard by-touch are-judged flavor by-taste
odor naribus ducitur. Prima pars corporis caput; datumque
odor by-the-nostrils is-drawn the-first part of-the-body the-head and-given
illi hoc nomen eo quod sensus omnes et nervi inde
to-it this name for-this that the-senses all and the-nerves thence
initium capiant, atque ex eo omnis vigendi causa oriatur.
the-beginning take and from it all of-thriving the-cause arises
Ibi enim omnes sensus apparent. Unde ipsius animae,
there for all senses appear whence of-the-very soul
quae consulit corpori, quodammodo personam gerit. Vertex
which takes-thought for-the-body in-a-way the-person it-bears the-crown
est ea pars qua capilli capitis colliguntur, et in qua
is that part by-which the-hairs of-the-head are-gathered and in which
caesaries vertitur; unde et nuncupatur. Calvaria ab ossibus
the-hair is-turned whence also it-is-named the-skull from the-bones
calvis dicta, per defectionem; et neutraliter pronuntiatur.
bald called through defection and as-neuter is-pronounced
Obcipitium capitis pars posterior, quasi contra capitium,
occiput of-the-head the-part rear as-if against the-capitium
vel quod sit capiti retrorsum. Capilli vocati quasi capitis
or because it-be to-the-head backward the-hairs called as-if of-the-head
pili, facti ut et decorem praestent et cerebrum adversus
hairs made that both comeliness they-may-furnish and the-brain against

frigus muniant atque a sole defendant. Pilos autem dictos
cold may-fortify and from the-sun may-defend hairs moreover called
a pelle, qua prodeunt; sicut et pilo dicitur a pila,
from the-skin from-which they-come-forth as also pestle is-called from pila
ubi pigmentum contunditur. Caesaries a caedendo vocata,
where pigment is-pounded caesaries from cutting called
ideoque tantum virorum est. Virum enim tonsum decet,
and-therefore only of-men it-is a-man for shorn befits
mulierem non decet. Comae sunt proprie non caesi capilli,
a-woman not befits comae are properly not cut hairs
et est Graecus sermo. Nam comas Graeci caimos a
and it-is a-Greek word for comae the-Greeks kaimos from
secando nominant, unde et κείρειν tondere [dicunt]. Inde
cutting name whence also keirein to-shear they-say thence
et cirri vocantur, quod etiam idem Graeci μαλλὸν vocant.
also curls are-called which also the-same Greeks mallon call
Crines proprie mulierum sunt. Dictae autem crines eo
tresses properly of-women are called moreover crines for-this
quod vittis discernantur. Unde et discriminalia dicuntur,
that by-fillets they-are-parted whence also hairpins are-called
a quibus divisae religantur. Tempora sunt, quae calvariae
by which divided they-are-bound the-temples are which of-the-skull
dextra laevaque subiacent. Quae ideo sic nuncupantur quia
right and-left lie-below which therefore so are-named because
moventur, ipsaque mobilitate quasi tempora quibusdam
they-are-moved and-by-the-very mobility as-if times at-certain
intervallis mutantur. Facies dicta ab effigie. Ibi est enim
intervals they-are-changed face called from likeness there is for
tota figura hominis et uniuscuiusque personae cognitio.
the-whole figure of-a-man and of-each person the-recognition
Vultus vero dictus, eo quod per eum animi voluntas
countenance but called for-this that through it of-the-mind the-will

ostenditur. Secundum voluntatem enim in varios motus
is-shown according-to the-will for into various motions
mutatur, unde et differunt sibi utraque. Nam facies
it-is-changed whence also differ from-each-other both for face
simpliciter accipitur de uniuscuiusque naturali aspectu;
simply is-taken about of-each the-natural aspect
vultus autem animorum qualitatem significat. Frons ab
countenance moreover of-minds the-quality signifies forehead from
oculorum foraminibus nominata est. Haec imago quaedam
of-the-eyes the-openings named is this an-image certain
animi mentis motum specie sua exprimit, dum vel
of-the-mind of-the-intellect the-motion by-appearance its expresses while either
laeta vel tristis est. Oculi vocati, sive quia eos ciliorum
glad or sad it-is eyes called either because them of-the-lashes
tegmina occulant, ne qua incidentis iniuriae offensione
the-coverings conceal lest by-any of-falling injury the-blow
laedantur, sive quia occultum lumen habeant, id est secretum
they-be-hurt or because hidden light they-have that is secret
vel intus positum. Hi inter omnes sensus viciniores animae
or within placed these among all senses nearer to-the-soul
existunt. In oculis enim omne mentis indicium est, unde
are in the-eyes for every of-the-mind indication is whence
et animi perturbatio vel hilaritas in oculis apparet. Oculi
also of-the-mind the-disturbance or cheerfulness in the-eyes appears the-eyes
autem idem et lumina. Et dicta lumina, quod ex eis
moreover the-same also lights and called lights because from them
lumen manat, vel quod ex initio sui clausam teneant lucem,
light flows or because from beginning their enclosed they-hold light
aut extrinsecus acceptam visui proponendo refundant.
or from-outside received to-the-sight by-setting-forth pour-back
Pupilla est medius punctus oculi, in quo vis est videndi;
the-pupil is the-middle point of-the-eye in which the-power is of-seeing

ubi quia parvae imagines nobis videntur, propterea pupillae
where because small images to-us are-seen for-this-reason pupils
appellantur. Nam parvuli pupilli dicuntur. Hanc plerique
they-are-called for little-ones pupils are-called this most
pupulam vocant: vocatur autem pupilla quod sit pura atque
pupula call it-is-called moreover pupilla because it-be pure and
inpolluta, ut sunt puellae. Physici dicunt easdem
unpolluted as are girls the-natural-philosophers say the-same
pupillas, quas videmus in oculis, morituros ante triduum
pupils which we-see in the-eyes those-about-to-die before three-days
non habere, quibus non visis certa est desperatio. Circulus
not to-have with-which not seen certain is despair the-circle
vero, quo a pupilla albae partes oculi separantur
but by-which from the-pupil the-white parts of-the-eye are-separated
discreta nigredine, corona dicitur, quod rotunditate sui
with-distinct blackness crown is-called because by-roundness its
ornet ambitum pupillae. Palpebrae sunt sinus oculorum, a
it-adorns the-circuit of-the-pupil eyelids are the-folds of-the-eyes from
palpitatione dictae, quia semper moventur. Concurrunt enim
palpitation called because always they-are-moved they-run-together for
invicem, ut assiduo motu reficiant obtutum. Munitae sunt
mutually that by-constant motion they-may-refresh the-gaze fortified are
autem vallo capillorum, ut [et] apertis oculis si quid
moreover by-a-rampart of-hairs that both with-opened eyes if anything
inciderit repellatur, et somno coniventibus tamquam
shall-have-fallen-in it-be-repelled and in-sleep with-(them)-closing as-if
involuti quiescant latentes. In summitate autem palpebrarum
wrapped they-may-rest hidden on the-top moreover of-the-eyelids
locis, quibus se utraque clausa contingunt, extant
in-the-places in-which themselves both closed touch stand-out
adnati ordine servato capilli tutelam oculis ministrantes,
grown with-order kept hairs a-guard to-the-eyes furnishing

ne inruentes facile iniurias excipiant et ex eo noceantur,
lest rushing easily injuries they-receive and from it be-harmed
ut pulveris vel cuiusquam crassioris materiae arceant
that of-dust or of-any thicker matter they-may-keep-off
contactum, aut ipsum quoque aerem concidendo mitificent,
the-contact or the-very also air by-cutting they-may-soften
quo tenuem atque serenum faciant visum. Lacrimas
by-which fine and serene they-may-make the-sight tears
quidam a laceratione mentis putant dictas; alii existimant
some from the-laceration of-the-mind think called others think
ideo quod Graeci δάκρυα vocant. Cilia sunt tegmina
therefore because the-Greeks dakrya call eyelids are the-coverings
quibus operiuntur oculi, et dicta cilia quod celent oculos
by-which are-covered the-eyes and called cilia because they-conceal the-eyes
tegantque tuta custodia. Supercilia dicta, quia superposita
and-cover with-safe guard eyebrows called because placed-above
sunt ciliis; quae idcirco pilis vestita sunt ut oculis
they-are the-eyelids which for-this-reason with-hairs clothed are that to-the-eyes
munimenta praetendant, et sudorem a capite defluentem
defenses they-may-hold-forth and the-sweat from the-head flowing-down
depellant. Intercilium vero est medium illud inter supercilia
may-drive-off the-intercilium but is the-middle that between the-eyebrows
quod sine pilis est. Genae sunt inferiores oculorum partes,
which without hairs is cheeks are the-lower of-the-eyes parts
unde barbae inchoant. Nam Graece γένειον barbae. Hinc
whence beards begin for in-Greek geneion beard hence
et genae, quod inde incipiant gigni barbae. Malae
also genae because thence begin to-be-begotten beards cheekbones
sunt eminentes sub oculis partes ad protectionem eorum
are the-prominent under the-eyes parts for protection their
suppositae. Vocatae autem malae sive quod infra oculos
placed-under called moreover malae either because below the-eyes

prominent in rotunditatem, quam Graeci μῆλα appellant, sive
they-project into roundness which the-Greeks mela call or
quod sint supra maxillas. Maxillae per diminutionem a
because they-be above the-jaws jaws through diminution from
malis; sicuti paxillus a palo, taxillus a talo. Mandibulae
malae as paxillus from palus taxillus from talus jawbones
sunt maxillarum partes, ex quo et nomen factum. Barbam
are of-the-jaws parts from which also the-name made beard
veteres vocaverunt, quod virorum sit, non mulierum. Aurium
the-ancients called because of-men it-be not of-women of-ears
inditum nomen a vocibus auriendis, unde et Vergilius:
given the-name from voices drinking-in whence also Virgil

Vocemque his auribus ausit.
and-a-voice with-these ears he-drank-in

Aut quia vocem ipsam Graeci αὐδὴν vocant, ab auditu; per
or because the-voice itself the-Greeks aude call from hearing through
inmutationem enim litterae aures quasi audes nuncupatae sunt.
the-change for of-a-letter ears as-if audes named are
Vox enim repercussa per anfractus earum sonum facit quo
the-voice for struck-back through the-windings their a-sound makes by-which
sensum excipiant audiendi. Pinnula summa pars auris,
the-sense they-may-receive of-hearing the-pinnula the-top part of-the-ear
ab acumine dicta. Pinnum enim antiqui acutum dicebant,
from sharpness called pinnum for the-ancients sharp called
unde et bipinnis et pinna. Nares idcirco nominantur
whence also bipennis and pinna nostrils for-this-reason are-named
quia per eas vel odor vel spiritus nare non desinit, sive
because through them either odor or breath to-swim not ceases or
quia nos odore admonent ut norimus aliquid ac sciamus.
because us by-odor they-warn that we-may-know something and we-may-know

Unde et e contra inscii ac rudes ignari dicuntur.
whence also on the-contrary the-unknowing and rude ignorant are-called
Olfecisse enim scisse veteres dicebant. Terentius:
to-have-smelled for to-have-known the-ancients said Terence

Ac non totis sex mensibus
and not whole six months
prius olfecissent, quam ille quidquam coeperit.
earlier they-would-have-smelled than he anything had-begun

Narium recta pars, propter quod aequaliter sit
of-the-nostrils the-straight part on-account-of that evenly it-be
in longitudine et rotunditate porrecta, columna vocatur:
in length and roundness extended the-column is-called
extremitas eius pirula, a formula pomi piri: quae
the-extremity its pirula from the-shape of-the-fruit of-the-pear which
vero dextra laevaque sunt, pinnulae, ab alarum similitudine:
but right and-left are pinnulae from of-wings the-likeness
medium autem interfinium. Os dictum, quod per ipsum
the-middle moreover interfinium mouth called because through it
quasi per ostium et cibos intus mittimus et sputum foris
as-if through a-door both foods within we-send and spittle outside
proicimus; vel quia inde ingrediuntur cibi, inde egrediuntur
we-throw or because thence enter foods thence go-out
sermones. Labia a lambendo nominata. Quod autem superius
speeches lips from licking named what moreover upper
est, labium dicimus; quod inferius, eo quod grossior sit,
is labium we-call what lower for-this that thicker it-be
labrum. Alii virorum labra, mulierum labia dicunt. Linguae
labrum others of-men labra of-women labia say to-the-tongue
a ligando cibo putat Varro nomen impositum. Alii, quod
from binding food thinks Varro the-name imposed others because

per articulatos sonos verba ligat. Sicut enim plectrum
through articulated sounds words it-binds as for the-plectrum
cordis, ita lingua inliditur dentibus et vocalem efficit
on-the-strings so the-tongue is-struck against-the-teeth and a-vocal produces
sonum. Dentes Graeci ὀδόντες vocant, et inde in Latinum
sound teeth the-Greeks odontes call and thence into Latin
trahere nomen videntur. Horum primi praecisores dicuntur,
to-draw the-name they-seem of-these the-first cutters are-called
quia omne, quod accipitur, ipsi prius incidunt. Sequentes
because all that is-taken they first cut-into the-following
canini vocantur, quorum duo in dextra maxilla et duo
canines are-called of-which two in the-right jaw and two
in sinistra sunt. Et dicti canini quia ad similitudinem
in the-left are and called canines because to the-likeness
caninorum existunt, et canis ex ipsis ossa frangit, sicut
of-dogs they-are and the-dog with them bones breaks as
et homo; ut quod non possunt priores praecidere, illis
also man that what not can the-front-ones to-cut-off to-them
tradunt ut confrangant. Hos vulgus pro longitudine et
they-hand-over that they-may-break-up these the-crowd for length and
rotunditate colomellos vocant. Ultimi sunt molares, qui
roundness colomelli call the-last are the-molars which
concisa a prioribus atque confracta subigunt et molent
the-things-cut by the-front-ones and broken work and grind
atque inmassant; unde et molares vocati sunt. Dentium
and knead whence also molars called they-are of-teeth
autem numerum discernit qualitas sexus. Nam in viris plures,
moreover the-number distinguishes the-quality of-sex for in men more
in feminis pauciores existunt. Gingivae a gignendis dentibus
in women fewer are the-gums from teeth to-be-begotten
nominatae. Factae sunt autem etiam ad decorem dentium,
named made are moreover also for the-comeliness of-the-teeth

ne nudi horrori potius quam ornamento existerent. Palatum
lest bare for-horror rather than for-ornament they-should-be palate
nostrum sicut caelum est positum, et inde palatum a polo
our as heaven is placed and thence palatum from polus
per derivationem. Sed et Graeci similiter palatum οὐρανὸν
through derivation but also the-Greeks likewise the-palate ouranon
appellant, eo quod pro sui concavitate caeli similitudinem
call for-this that for its hollowness of-heaven the-likeness
habeat. Fauces a fundendis vocibus nominatae, vel quod
it-has the-throat from to-be-poured-forth voices named or because
per eas famur voces. Arteriae vocatae, sive quod per
through it we-speak voices arteries called either because through
eas a pulmone aer, hoc est spiritus fertur, seu quod
them from the-lung air that is breath is-borne or because
artis et angustis meatibus spiritum vitalem retineant, unde
in-tight and narrow passages the-breath vital they-retain whence
vocis sonos emittunt: qui soni uno modo sonarent, nisi
of-voice the-sounds they-emit which sounds in-one way would-sound unless
linguae motus distantias vocis efficeret. Toles Gallica
of-the-tongue the-motion the-differences of-voice effected toles in-the-Gallic
lingua dicuntur, quas vulgo per diminutionem tusillas
tongue are-called which commonly through diminution tonsils
vocant, quae in faucibus turgescere solent. Mentum dictum,
they-call which in the-throat to-swell are-wont chin called
quod inde mandibulae oriantur, vel quod ibi iungantur.
because thence the-jawbones arise or because there they-are-joined
Gurgulio a gutture nomen trahit, cuius meatus ad os
gurgulio from the-gullet the-name draws whose passage to the-mouth
et nares pertendit: habens viam qua vox ad linguam
and nostrils extends having a-way by-which the-voice to the-tongue
transmittitur, ut possit verba conlidere. Unde et garrire
is-transmitted that it-may-be-able words to-strike whence also to-chatter

dicimus. Rumen proximum gurgulioni, quo cibus et potio
we-say rumen next to-the-gurgulio by-which food and drink
devoratur. Hinc bestiae, quae cibum revocant ac remandunt,
is-swallowed hence beasts which food recall and chew-again
ruminare dicuntur. Sublinguium operculum gurgulionis, quasi
to-ruminate are-said sublinguium the-lid of-the-gurgulio as-if
parva lingua quae foramen linguae recludit operitve. Collum
a-little tongue which the-opening of-the-tongue closes or-covers neck
dictum, quod sit rigidum et teres ut columna, baiulans
called because it-be rigid and smooth as a-column carrying
caput et sustentans quasi capitolium: cuius anterior pars
the-head and sustaining as-if a-capitol whose front part
gula vocatur, posterior cervix. Cervix autem vocata, quod
throat is-called the-rear nape nape moreover called because
per eam partem cerebrum ad medullam spinae dirigitur,
through that part the-brain to the-marrow of-the-spine is-directed
quasi cerebri via. Veteres autem plurali tantum numero
as-if of-the-brain the-way the-ancients moreover in-the-plural only number
cervices dicebant: prius Hortensius cervicem singulariter dixit.
cervices said first Hortensius cervix in-the-singular said
Cervix autem numero singulari membrum ipsud significat:
cervix moreover in-number singular the-member itself signifies
nam pluraliter contumaciam saepe demonstrat. Cicero in
for in-the-plural obstinacy often it-shows Cicero in
Verrinis: ‘Praetorem tu accuses? frange cervices.’ Umeri dicti,
the-Verrines a-praetor you accuse break the-necks shoulders called
quasi armi, ad distinctionem hominis a pecudibus mutis,
as-if armi for the-distinction of-man from cattle dumb
ut hi humeros, illi armos habere dicantur. Nam proprie
that these humeri those armi to-have may-be-said for properly
armi quadrupedum sunt. Ola summi humeri pars posterior.
armi of-quadrupeds are ola of-the-top shoulder the-part rear

Brachia a fortitudine nominata: βαρὺ enim Graece grave
arms from strength named bary for in-Greek heavy
et forte significatur. In brachiis enim tori lacertorum
and strong is-signified in the-arms for the-swellings of-the-upper-arms
sunt, et insigne musculorum robur existit. Hi sunt
are and remarkable of-the-muscles the-strength exists these are
tori, id est musculi: et dicti tori, quod illic viscera torta
tori that is muscles and called tori because there the-flesh twisted
videantur. Cubitum dictum, quod ad cibos sumendos in
seems elbow called because for foods to-be-taken on
ipso cubamus. Ulna secundum quosdam utriusque manus
it we-recline ulna according-to some of-each hand
extensio est, secundum alios cubitus; quod magis verum
the-extension is according-to others the-forearm which more true
est, quia Graece ὤλενος cubitus dicitur. Alae subbrachia
is because in-Greek olenos forearm is-called armpits under-arms
sunt appellatae, eo quod ex eis in modum alarum
are called for-this that from them in the-manner of-wings
motus brachiorum inchoet; quas quidam ascillas vocant,
the-motion of-the-arms begins which some ascillae call
quod ex his brachia celluntur, id est moventur; unde et
because from these the-arms are-moved that is are-moved whence also
oscilla dicta ab eo quod his cillantur, hoc est moveantur,
oscilla called from that that by-these are-moved that is are-moved
ora. Nam cillere est movere. Has quidam subhircos vocant,
the-faces for cillere is to-move these some subhirci call
propter quod in plerisque hominibus hircorum foetorem
on-account-of that in most men of-goats the-stench
reddant. Manus dicta, quod sit totius corporis munus.
they-give-off hand called because it-be of-the-whole body the-service
Ipsa enim cibum ori ministrat; ipsa operatur omnia
it for food to-the-mouth furnishes it works all-things

atque dispensat; per eam accipimus et damus. Abusive
and dispenses through it we-receive and give loosely
autem manus etiam ars vel artifex, unde et manupretium
moreover hand also art or artisan whence also manupretium
dicimus. Dextra vocatur a dando, ipsa enim pignus pacis
we-say the-right is-called from giving it for as-the-pledge of-peace
datur; ipsa fidei testis atque salutis adhibetur; et hoc est
is-given it of-faith witness and of-safety is-applied and this is
illud apud Tullium: 'Fidem publicam iussu senatus dedi,'
that in Tully public faith by-the-order of-the-senate I-gave
id est dextram. Unde et Apostolus ['Dextras dederunt
that is the-right-hand whence also the-Apostle right-hands they-gave
mihi.'] Sinixtra autem vocata quasi sine dextra, sive quod
to-me the-left moreover called as-if without right or because
rem fieri sinat. A sinendo enim sinixtra est nuncupata.
a-thing to-be-done it-allows from allowing for sinistra is named
Palma est manus expansis digitis, sicut contractis pugnus.
palm is the-hand with-extended fingers as with-contracted the-fist
Pugnus autem a pugillo dictus, sicut palma ab expansis
fist moreover from pugillus called as palm from the-extended
palmae ramis. Digiti nuncupati, vel quia decem sunt,
of-the-palm branches fingers named either because ten they-are
vel quia decenter iuncti existunt. Nam habent in se
or because becomingly joined they-are for they-have in themselves
et numerum perfectum et ordinem decentissimum. Primus
both the-number perfect and the-order most-becoming the-first
pollex vocatus, eo quod inter ceteros polleat virtute et
thumb called for-this that among the-others it-prevails in-strength and
potestate. Secundus index et salutaris seu demonstratorius,
power the-second index and saluting or pointing
quia eo fere salutamus vel ostendimus. Tertius inpudicus,
because with-it mostly we-salute or show the-third shameless

quod plerumque per eum probri insectatio exprimitur.
because mostly through it of-disgrace the-pursuit is-expressed
Quartus anularis, eo quod in ipso anulus geritur. Idem et
the-fourth ring-finger for-this that on it the-ring is-worn the-same also
medicinalis, quod eo trita collyria a medicis colliguntur.
medicinal because with-it ground salves by physicians are-gathered
Quintus auricularis, pro eo quod eo aurem scalpimus.
the-fifth ear-finger for that that with-it the-ear we-scratch
Ungulas ex Graeco vocamus: illi enim has ὄνυχας dicunt.
nails from Greek we-call they for these onychas call
Truncus media pars corporis a collo ad inguinem. De
trunk the-middle part of-the-body from the-neck to the-groin about
quo Nigidius: 'Caput collo vehitur, truncus sustinetur
which Nigidius the-head by-the-neck is-carried the-trunk is-sustained
coxis et genibus cruribusque.' Thorax a Graecis dicitur
by-the-hips and knees and-legs thorax by the-Greeks is-called
anterior pars trunci a collo usque ad stomachum,
the-front part of-the-trunk from the-neck all-the-way to the-stomach
quam nos dicimus arcam eo quod ibi arcanum sit, id
which we call arca for-this that there the-arcane is that
est secretum, quo ceteri arcentur. Unde et arca et ara
is secret from-which the-rest are-kept-off whence also chest and altar
dicta, quasi res secretae. Cuius eminentes pulpae mamillae:
called as-if things secret whose prominent fleshy-parts the-breasts
inter quas pars illa ossea pectus dicitur, dextraque aut laeva
between which part that bony breast is-called and-right or left
costae. Pectus vocatum, quod sit pexum inter eminentes
the-ribs breast called because it-be combed between the-prominent
mamillarum partes; unde et pectinem dici, quod pexos
of-the-breasts parts whence also comb to-be-called because combed
capillos faciat. Mamillae vocatae, quia rotundae sunt quasi
hair it-makes breasts called because round they-are as-if

malae, per diminutionem scilicet. Papillae capita mammarum
malae through diminution namely nipples the-heads of-the-breasts
sunt, quas sugentes conprehendunt. Et dictae papillae, quod
are which the-sucking grasp and called papillae because
eas infantes quasi pappant, dum lac sugunt. Proinde mamilla
them infants as-if eat while milk they-suck accordingly mamilla
est omnis eminentia uberis, papilla vero breve illud unde
is the-whole prominence of-the-udder papilla but the-short that whence
lac trahitur. Ubera dicta, vel quia lacte uberta, vel quia
milk is-drawn udders called either because with-milk abundant or because
uvida, humore scilicet lactis in more uvarum plena. Lac
moist with-humor namely of-milk in the-manner of-grapes full milk
vim nominis a colore trahit, quod sit albus liquor:
the-force of-the-name from color draws because it-be a-white liquid
λευκὸς enim Graece album dicunt: cuius natura ex sanguine
leukos for in-Greek white they-say whose nature from blood
commutatur. Nam post partum si quid sanguinis nondum
is-changed for after birth if anything of-blood not-yet
fuerit uteri nutrimento consumptum, naturali meatu
shall-have-been of-the-womb by-the-nourishment consumed by-natural passage
fluit in mammas, et earum virtute albescens lactis accipit
it-flows into the-breasts and by-their power whitening of-milk takes
qualitatem. Cutis est quae in corpore prima est, appellata
the-quality skin is which on the-body first is called
quod ipsa corpori superposita incisionem prima patiatur:
because it to-the-body placed-over cutting first suffers
κυτις enim Graece incisio dicitur. Idem et pellis, quod
kytis for in-Greek cutting is-called the-same also hide because
externas iniurias corporis tegendo pellat, pluviasque et ventos
external injuries of-the-body by-covering it-repels and-rains and winds
solisque ardores perferat. Pellis autem mox detracta: subacta
and-of-the-sun the-heats endures hide moreover soon drawn-off tanned

iam corium dicitur. Corium autem per derivationem caro
now leather is-called corium moreover through derivation caro
appellavit, quod eo tegatur: sed hoc in brutis animalibus
called because by-it it-is-covered but this in brute animals
proprium. Pori corporis Graeco nomine appellantur, qui
proper the-pores of-the-body by-Greek name are-called which
Latine proprie spiramenta dicuntur, eo quod per eos
in-Latin properly breathing-holes are-called for-this that through them
vivificus spiritus exterius ministretur. Arvina est pinguedo
the-life-giving breath outward is-furnished arvina is fat
cuti adhaerens. Pulpa est caro sine pinguedine, dicta
to-the-skin adhering pulp is flesh without fat called
quod palpitet: resilit enim saepe. Hanc plerique et
because it-palpitates it-springs-back for often this most also
viscum vocant, propter quod glutinosa sit. Membra sunt
viscum call on-account-of that glutinous it-be limbs are
partes corporis. Artus, quibus conligantur membra, ab
parts of-the-body joints by-which are-bound-together the-limbs from
artando dicti. Nervi Graeca derivatione appellati, quos illi
tightening called sinews by-Greek derivation called which they
νεῦρα vocant. Alii Latine vocatos nervos putant, eo quod
neura call others in-Latin called nervi think for-this that
artuum coniunctiones invicem his inhaereant. Maximam
the-junctions of-the-joints mutually to-these cling the-greatest
autem virium substantiam nervos facere certissimum est:
moreover of-strengths substance the-sinews to-make most-certain is
nam quanto fuerint densiores, tanto propensius
for by-how-much they-shall-have-been denser by-so-much more-readily
augescere firmitatem. Artus dicti, quod conligati invicem
to-increase the-firmness joints called because bound-together mutually
nervis artentur, id est stringantur; quorum diminutiva
by-sinews they-are-tightened that is are-drawn-tight of-which the-diminutives

sunt articuli. Nam artus dicimus membra maiora, ut brachia;
are articuli for artus we-call members greater as arms
articulos minora membra, ut digiti. Conpago capita sunt
articuli lesser members as fingers conpago the-heads are
ossuum, dicta eo quod sibi conpacta nervis velut
of-the-bones called for-this that to-each-other compacted by-sinews as-if
glutino quodam adhaereant. Ossa sunt corporis solidamenta.
by-glue certain they-cling bones are of-the-body the-supports
In his enim positio omnis roburque subsistit. Ossa
in these for the-position all and-strength stands bones
autem ab usto dicta, propter quod cremarentur ab
moreover from burned called on-account-of that they-were-burned by
antiquis; sive, ut alii putant, ab ore, eo quod ibi
the-ancients or as others think from the-mouth for-this that there
pateant. Nam ubique cute visceribusque obtecta celantur.
they-lie-open for everywhere by-skin and-flesh covered they-are-hidden
Medulla appellata, quod madefaciant ossa; inrigant enim
marrow called because it-moistens the-bones it-waters for
et confortant. Vertibula sunt summae ossuum partes nodis
and strengthens vertibula are the-top of-the-bones parts with-knots
crassioribus conglobatae, dictae ita eo quod ad inflexionem
thicker rounded called so for-this that for the-bending
membrorum illa vertantur. Cartilagines ossa mollia et sine
of-the-limbs they are-turned cartilages bones soft and without
medulla, quod genus auriculae et narium discrimen et
marrow which kind the-ear and of-the-nostrils the-partition and
costarum extremitates habent; sive opercula ossuum, quae
of-the-ribs the-ends have or the-lids of-the-bones which
moventur. Et dictae cartilagines quod leni attritu carent
are-moved and called cartilagines because by-light rubbing they-lack
dolorem dum flectuntur. Costas appellari quidam putant quod
pain while they-are-bent ribs to-be-named some think because

ab ipsis interiora custodiantur, et tota mollities ventris
by them the-inner-parts are-guarded and the-whole softness of-the-belly
vallata salvetur. Latus, quia iacentibus nobis latet: est
walled is-kept-safe side because to-lying us it-lies-hidden it-is
enim laeva pars corporis. Dextro autem lateri habilior motus
for the-left part of-the-body to-the-right moreover side readier motion
est; laevo fortior, et oneri ferendo adcommodatior. Unde
is to-the-left stronger and for-burden to-be-borne more-suited whence
et laeva nuncupata, quod aptior sit ad levandum aliquid et
also left named because more-apt it-be for lifting something and
portandum. Ipsa enim gestat clipeum, ensem, pharetra et
carrying it for carries the-shield the-sword the-quiver and
reliqua onera, ut expedita sit dextera ad agendum. Dorsum
the-remaining burdens that free be the-right for acting back
est a cervice usque ad renes. Dictum autem dorsum
is from the-nape all-the-way to the-kidneys called moreover dorsum
quod sit superficies durior corporis in modum saxi, fortis
because it-be the-surface harder of-the-body in the-manner of-a-rock strong
et ad portandum et ad perpetiendum. Terga, quia in ea
both for carrying and for enduring terga because on it
supini iacemus in terra, quod solus homo potest. Nam
on-our-backs we-lie on the-ground which alone man can for
muta animalia tantum aut in ventre aut in latere iacent.
dumb animals only either on the-belly or on the-side lie
Unde et in animalibus terga abusive dicuntur. Scapula
whence also in animals terga loosely are-said shoulder-blade
∗∗∗. Interscapilium spatium, quod inter scapulas est,
(lacuna) interscapilium the-space which between the-shoulder-blades is
unde et nominatum. Palae sunt dorsi dextra laevaque
whence also named palae are of-the-back right and-left
eminentia membra, dicta quod in luctando eas premimus;
the-prominent members called because in wrestling them we-press

quod Graeci πάλην dicunt. Spina est iunctura dorsi, dicta
which the-Greeks palen call spine is the-joining of-the-back called
eo quod habeat radiolos acutos; cuius iuncturae spondilia
for-this that it-has little-rays sharp whose joints vertebrae
appellantur propter partem cerebri, quae fertur per eos
are-called on-account-of the-part of-the-brain which is-borne through them
longo tractu ad ceteras corporis partes. Sacra spina est
by-long course to the-other of-the-body parts the-sacred spine is
ima perpetuae spinae, quam Graeci ἱερὸν ὀστοῦν vocant,
the-lowest of-the-continuous spine which the-Greeks hieron ostoun call
quoniam primum infante concepto nascitur, ideoque ex
since first with-the-infant conceived it-is-born and-therefore from
hostia id primum a gentilibus diis suis dabatur, unde
the-victim it first by the-gentiles to-gods their was-given whence
et sacra spina dicitur. Renes ait Varro dictos quod rivi
also sacred spine it-is-called kidneys says Varro called because streams
ab his obsceni humoris nascantur. Nam venae et medullae
from these of-obscene humor arise for the-veins and marrows
tenuem liquorem desudant in renibus, qui liquor rursus
a-thin liquid sweat-out in the-kidneys which liquid again
a renibus calore Venerio resolutus decurrit. Lumbi ob
from the-kidneys by-heat venereal loosened runs-down loins for
libidinis lasciviam dicti, quia in viris causa corporeae
of-lust the-wantonness called because in men the-cause of-bodily
voluptatis in ipsis est, sicut in umbilico feminis. Unde et
pleasure in them is as in the-navel for-women whence also
ad Iob in exordio sermonis dictum est: ‘Accinge sicut
to Job in the-beginning of-the-speech said it-is gird as
vir lumbos tuos’: ut in his esset resistendi praeparatio,
a-man loins your that in these might-be of-resisting the-preparation
in quibus libidinis est usitata dominandi occasio. Umbilicus
in which of-lust is the-usual of-dominating occasion navel

est medius locus corporis, dictus quod sit umbus iliorum.
is the-middle place of-the-body called because it-be the-umbus of-the-flanks
Unde et umbo appellatur locus in medio clypei, a
whence also boss is-called the-place in the-middle of-the-shield from
quo pendet. Ex eo enim infans in utero pendet, ex eo
which it-hangs from it for the-infant in the-womb hangs from it
etiam et nutritur. Ilium Graeco sermone appellatum, quod
also also it-is-nourished ilium in-Greek speech called because
ibi nos obvolvamus. Graece enim †ilios† obvolvere dicitur.
there we wrap-up in-Greek for ilios to-wrap-up is-called
Clunes vocatae, quod sint iuxta colum, quod est longao.
buttocks called because they-be next-to the-colon which is the-longao
Nates, quod in ipsis innitimur dum sedemus. Unde et
nates because on them we-lean while we-sit whence also
conglobata est in eis caro, ne prementis corporis mole
gathered is in them flesh lest of-the-pressing of-body by-the-weight
ossa dolerent. Genitalia corporis partes, ut nomen ipsud
the-bones should-hurt the-genitals of-the-body parts as the-name itself
docet, gignendae sobolis acceperunt vocabulum, quod his
teaches of-to-be-begotten offspring received the-word because by-these
procreatur et gignitur. Haec et pudenda pro verecundia,
is-procreated and is-begotten these also pudenda for modesty
sive a pube: unde et indumento operiuntur. Dicuntur
or from the-pubes whence also with-clothing they-are-covered are-called
autem ista et inhonesta, quia non habent eam speciem
moreover these also unseemly because not they-have that appearance
decoris sicut membra quae in promptu locata sunt. Idem
of-comeliness as the-members which in view placed are the-same
et veretrum, quia viri est tantum, sive quod ex eo
also veretrum because of-the-male it-is only or because from it
virus emittitur. Nam virus proprie dicitur humor fluens a
the-virus is-emitted for virus properly is-called the-humor flowing from

natura viri. Testiculi per diminutionem a testibus
the-nature of-the-male testicles through diminution from testes
dicti, quorum numerus incipit a duobus. Hi semen
called whose number begins from two these seed
calamo ministrant, quod ab spinae medulla et renes
to-the-reed furnish which from of-the-spine the-marrow both the-kidneys
et lumbus suscipiunt ad gratiam procreandi. Fiscus est
and the-loin receive for the-sake of-procreating fiscus is
pellis in qua testiculi sunt. Posteriora vero vocata, quod
the-skin in which the-testicles are the-binder-parts but called because
retro sunt et a vultu aversa, ne dum alvum purgamus
behind they-are and from the-face turned-away lest while the-bowel we-purge
inquinaremus aspectum. Meatus inde appellatus, quia per
we-should-defile the-sight meatus thence called because through
eum meant, id est egeruntur, stercora. Femora dicta sunt,
it pass that is are-voided the-feces thighs called are
quod ea parte a femina sexus viri discrepet. Sunt
because in-that part from woman the-sex of-man differs they-are
autem ab inguinibus usque ad genua. Femina autem
moreover from the-groins all-the-way to the-knees femina moreover
per derivationem femorum partes sunt, quibus in equitando
through derivation of-the-thighs the-parts are by-which in riding
tergis equorum adhaeremus. Unde et proeliatores olim sub
to-the-backs of-horses we-cling whence also fighters once under
feminibus equos amisisse dicebantur. Coxae quasi coniunctae
the-thighs horses to-have-lost were-said hips as-if joined
axes; ipsis enim femora moventur. Quarum concava vertebra
axles by-them for the-thighs are-moved of-which the-hollows vertebra
vocantur, quia in eis capita femorum vertuntur. Suffragines,
are-called because in them the-heads of-the-thighs are-turned hocks
quia subtus franguntur, id est flectuntur, non supra,
because below they-are-broken that is are-bent not above

sicut in brachiis. Genua sunt commissiones femorum et
as in the-arms knees are the-joinings of-thighs and
crurum; et dicta genua eo quod in utero sint genis
of-legs and called genua for-this that in the-womb they-be to-the-cheeks
opposita. Cohaerent enim ibi sibi, et cognata sunt
opposite they-cohere for there to-each-other and kindred are
oculis, lacrimarum indicibus et misericordiae. Nam a genis
to-the-eyes of-tears the-witnesses and of-pity for from genae
genua dicuntur. Denique conplicatum gigni formarique
genua are-called finally folded to-be-begotten and-to-be-formed
hominem, ita ut genua sursum sint, quibus oculi formantur,
man so that the-knees above are by-which the-eyes are-formed
ut cavi ac reconditi fiant. Ennius:
that hollow and recessed they-become Ennius

Atque genua conprimit arta gena.
and the-knees presses close to-the-cheek

Inde est quod homines dum ad genua se prosternunt,
thence it-is that men while to the-knees themselves they-prostrate
statim lacrimantur. Voluit enim eos natura uterum maternum
at-once weep willed for them nature the-womb maternal
rememorare, ubi quasi in tenebris consedebant antequam
to-recall where as-if in darkness they-sat before
venirent ad lucem. Crura dicta, quia in his currimus et
they-came to the-light legs called because on these we-run and
gressum facimus. Sunt autem sub genibus usque ad suras.
a-step we-make they-are moreover below the-knees all-the-way to the-calves
Tibiae vocatae quasi tubae. Sunt enim et longitudine et
shins called as-if trumpets they-are for both in-length and
specie similes. Talus dictus a tolo. Nam tolus est
in-appearance like ankle called from tolus for tolus is

eminens rotunditas: unde et fastigium templi rotundi
a-prominent roundness whence also the-gable of-a-temple round
tolus vocatur. Talus autem sub crura est, sub talo
tolus is-called the-ankle moreover below the-leg is below the-ankle
calcanei. Pedes ex Graeca etymologia nomen sortiti sunt.
the-heel feet from Greek etymology the-name obtained have
Hos enim Graeci πόδας dicunt, qui alternis motibus
these for the-Greeks podas call which by-alternate motions
solo fixi incedunt. Plantae a planitie nuncupatae,
to-the-ground fixed walk soles from flatness named
quia non rotundae, ut in quadrupedibus, ne stare non
because not round as in quadrupeds lest to-stand not
possit bipes homo, sed planae atque longiores formatae
could the-two-footed man but flat and longer formed
sunt, ut stabile corpus efficerent. Sunt autem plantae
they-are that a-stable body they-might-make they-are moreover the-soles
anteriores partes, quae etiam de multis ossibus constant.
the-front parts which also of many bones consist
Calcis prima pars plantae: a callo illi nomen inpositum,
heel the-first part of-the-sole from callus to-it the-name imposed
quo terram calcamus; hinc et calcaneus. Solum inferior
by-which the-earth we-tread hence also calcaneus sole the-lower
pars pedis, dictum quia eo terrae vestigia inprimimus.
part of-the-foot called because by-it on-the-earth footprints we-press
Sed et solum dicitur omne quod aliquid sustinet, quasi
but also solum is-called all that something sustains as-if
solidum: unde et terra solum, quod cuncta sustineat; et
solid whence also the-earth solum because all-things it-sustains and
solum pedis, quod totam corporis molem portat. Viscera
the-sole of-the-foot because the-whole of-the-body mass it-carries viscera
non tantum intestina dicimus, sed quidquid sub corio est,
not only intestines we-call but whatever under the-hide is

a visco, quod est inter cutem et carnem. Item viscera
from viscum which is between the-skin and the-flesh likewise viscera
vitalia, id est circumfusa cordis loca, quasi viscora, eo
the-vital that is the-surrounding of-the-heart places as-if viscora for-this
quod ibi vita, id est anima, continetur. Item viscera capita
that there life that is the-soul is-contained likewise viscera the-heads
nervorum ex sanguine et nervis copulata. Item lacerti, sive
of-the-sinews from blood and sinews coupled likewise lacerti or
mures, quia sic in singulis membris cordis loco sunt
mures because so in single members of-the-heart in-the-place they-are
ut cor in media totius corporis parte, appellanturque
as the-heart in the-middle of-the-whole body part and-they-are-named
a nomine similium animalium sub terra delitescentium.
from the-name of-like animals under the-earth lurking
Nam inde musculi a murium similitudine: idem etiam
for thence musculi from of-mice the-likeness the-same also
et tori, quod illic viscera torta videantur. Cor a Graeca
also tori because there the-flesh twisted seems heart from the-Greek
appellatione derivatum, quod illi καρδίαν dicunt, sive a
appellation derived because they kardian say or from
cura. In eo enim omnis sollicitudo et scientiae causa manet.
care in it for all solicitude and of-knowledge the-cause remains
Qui ideo pulmoni vicinus est ut, cum ira accenditur,
which therefore to-the-lung neighbor is that when by-anger it-is-kindled
pulmonis humore temperetur. Huius duae arteriae sunt,
of-the-lung by-the-moisture it-may-be-tempered of-this two arteries are
e quibus sinistra plus sanguinem habet, dextra plus spiritum:
of which the-left more blood has the-right more breath
unde et in dextro brachio pulsum inspicimus. Praecordia
whence also in the-right arm the-pulse we-examine the-praecordia
sunt loca cordis vicina quibus sensus percipitur; et
are the-places to-the-heart neighboring by-which sense is-perceived and

dicta praecordia eo quod ibi sit principium cordis et
called praecordia for-this that there be the-beginning of-the-heart and
cogitationis. Pulsus vocatus, quod palpitet; cuius indicio
of-thought pulse called because it-palpitates whose by-indication
aut infirmitatem intellegimus aut salutem. Huius duplex
either infirmity we-understand or health of-this twofold
est motus; aut simplex, aut conpositus. Simplex, qui ex
is the-motion either simple or compound simple which from
uno saltu constat; conpositus, qui ex pluribus motibus
one leap consists compound which from many motions
inordinatus et inaequalis existit. Qui motus certa habent
disordered and unequal is which motions fixed have
spatia; dactylicum percussum, quamdiu sine vitio sunt; si
spaces a-dactylic beat as-long-as without fault they-are if
quando vero citatiores sunt, ut δορκαδάζοντες, aut leniores,
ever but quicker they-are as dorkadazontes or slower
ut μυρμίζοντες, mortis signa sunt. Venae dictae, eo quod
as myrmizontes of-death signs they-are veins called for-this that
viae sint natantis sanguinis, atque rivi per corpus omne
ways they-be of-swimming blood and streams through the-body all
divisi, quibus universa membra inrigantur. Sanguis ex Graeca
divided by-which all members are-watered blood from Greek
etymologia nomen duxit, quod vegetetur et sustentetur
etymology the-name drew because it-is-enlivened and is-sustained
et vivat. Sanguis autem est dum in corpore est, effusus
and lives blood moreover it-is while in the-body it-is poured-out
vero cruor dicitur. Nam cruor vocatus ab eo quod effusus
but gore it-is-called for gore called from that that poured-out
decurrit, vel ab eo quod currendo corruat. Alii cruorem
it-runs-down or from that that by-running it-falls others gore
interpretantur sanguinem corruptum qui emittitur. Alii aiunt
interpret blood corrupted which is-emitted others say

vocatum sanguinem quod suavis sit. Sanguis autem non
called blood because sweet it-be blood moreover not
est integer, nisi in iuvenibus. Nam dicunt physici
is whole except in the-young for say the-natural-philosophers
minui sanguinem per aetatem; unde et in senibus
to-be-diminished the-blood through age whence also in old-men
tremor est. Proprie autem sanguis animae possessio est: inde
trembling is properly moreover blood of-the-soul the-possession is thence
genas lacerare mulieres in luctu solent; inde et purpureae
the-cheeks to-tear women in mourning are-wont thence also purple
vestes et flores purpurei mortuis praebentur. Pulmo ex
garments and flowers purple to-the-dead are-offered lung from
Graeco trahit vocabulum. Graeci enim pulmonem πλεύμων
Greek draws the-word the-Greeks for the-lung pleumon
vocant, eo quod cordis flabellum sit, in quo πνεῦμα, id
call for-this that of-the-heart the-fan it-be in which pneuma that
est spiritus inest, per quod et agitantur et moventur;
is breath is-in through which also they-are-stirred and are-moved
unde et pulmones vocati sunt. Nam Graece πνεῦμα spiritus
whence also lungs called they-are for in-Greek pneuma breath
dicitur, qui flando et exagitando aerem amittit et recipit;
is-called which by-blowing and stirring the-air lets-go and receives
a quo moventur pulmones et palpitant et aperiendo se
by which are-moved the-lungs and palpitate both by-opening themselves
ut flatum capiant, stringendo, ut eiciant. Est enim
that the-breath they-may-take by-tightening that they-may-expel it-is for
organus corporis. Iecur nomen habet eo quod ignis ibi
an-organ of-the-body liver the-name has for-this that fire there
habeat sedem, qui in cerebro subvolat. Inde ad oculos
has its-seat which into the-brain flies-up thence to the-eyes
ceterosque sensus et membra diffunditur, et calore suo
and-the-other senses and members it-is-spread and by-heat its

ad se sucum ex cibo tractum vertit in sanguinem, quem
to itself the-juice from food drawn it-turns into blood which
ad usum pascendi nutriendique singulis membris praebet. In
for the-use of-feeding and-of-nourishing to-single members it-furnishes in
iecore autem consistit voluptas et concupiscentia iuxta eos
the-liver moreover consists pleasure and concupiscence according-to those
qui de physicis disputant. Fibrae iecoris sunt extremitates,
who about natural-things dispute the-fibers of-the-liver are the-extremities
sicut [et] extremae partes foliorum in intibis, sive quasi
as also the-farthest parts of-leaves in endives or as-if
linguae eminentes. Dictas autem fibras quod apud gentiles in
tongues projecting called moreover fibrae because among the-gentiles in
sacris ad Phoebi aras ferebantur ab ariolis, quibus
sacred-rites to of-Phoebus the-altars they-were-carried by the-soothsayers with-which
oblatis atque subcensis responsa acciperent. Splen dictum a
offered and burned answers they-received spleen called from
supplemento ex contraria parte iecoris, ne vacua existeret:
supplement from the-opposite side of-the-liver lest empty it-should-be
quem quidam etiam risus causa factum existimant. Nam
which some also of-laughter for-the-sake made think for
splene ridemus, felle irascimur, corde sapimus,
with-the-spleen we-laugh with-the-gall we-are-angry with-the-heart we-are-wise
iecore amamus. Quibus quattuor elementis constantibus
with-the-liver we-love with-which four elements standing
integrum est animal. Fel appellatum, quod sit folliculum
whole is the-animal gall called because it-be a-little-bag
gestans humorem, qui vocatur bilis. Stomachus Graece os
bearing the-humor which is-called bile stomach in-Greek mouth
vocatur, eo quod ostium ventris sit, et ipse cibum
is-called for-this that the-door of-the-belly it-be and it food
excipiat atque in intestina transmittat. Intestina dicuntur,
receives and into the-intestines transmits intestines are-called

eo quod corporis interiore parte cohibentur; quae idcirco
for-this that of-the-body in-the-inner part they-are-held which for-this-reason
longis nexibus in circulorum ordinata sunt modo, ut
in-long knots in of-circles ordered are the-manner that
susceptas escas paulatim digerant, et superadditis cibis
the-received foods little-by-little they-may-digest and by-added foods
non inpediantur. Omentum membranum, quod continet
not they-be-bindered omentum the-membrane which holds
intestinorum maiorem partem, quod ἐπίπλουν Graeci vocant.
of-the-intestines the-greater part which epiploun the-Greeks call
Disseptum intestinum, quod discernit ventrem et cetera
the-disseptum intestine which separates the-belly and the-other
intestina a pulmonibus, a corde. Caecum intestinum,
intestines from the-lungs from the-heart the-blind intestine
quod sit sine foramine et exitu; quem Graeci τυφλὸν
because it-be without opening and exit which the-Greeks typhlon
ἔντερον dicunt. Ieiuna tenue intestinum, unde et ieiunium
enteron call the-jejunum the-thin intestine whence also fasting
dicitur. Venter autem et alvus et uterus inter se
is-called belly moreover and bowel and womb among themselves
differunt. Venter est qui acceptos cibos digerit, et apparet
differ belly is which the-received foods digests and appears
extrinsecus, pertinetque a pectore ad inguinem, et dictus
from-outside and-extends from the-breast to the-groin and called
venter quod per totum corpus vitae alimenta transmittat.
venter because through the-whole body of-life the-nourishments it-transmits
Alvus est qui cibum recipit, et purgari solet. Sallustius:
bowel is which food receives and to-be-purged is-wont Sallust
‘Simulans sibi alvum purgari.’ Et vocatum alvum quod
pretending for-himself the-bowel to-be-purged and called alvus because
abluatur, id est purgetur: ex ipso enim sordes stercorum
it-is-washed that is purged from it for the-filth of-feces

defluunt. Uterum solae mulieres habent, in quo concipiunt,
flows-down the-womb only women have in which they-conceive
ad similitudinem cauliculi. Tamen auctores uterum pro
in the-likeness of-a-little-stalk yet the-authors womb for
utriusque libet sexus ventre plerumque ponunt, nec poetae
of-either whatever sex the-belly mostly set nor the-poets
tantummodo, sed et ceteri. Vocatus autem uterus, quod
only but also the-rest called moreover uterus because
duplex sit et ab utraque in duas se dividat partes,
twofold it-be and from each-side into two itself it-divides parts
quae in diversum diffusae ac replexae circumplicantur in
which in diverse-ways spread and folded are-wound-round in
modum cornu arietis; vel quod interius inpleatur foetu.
the-manner of-the-horn of-a-ram or because inside it-is-filled with-offspring
Hinc et uter, quod aliquid intrinsecus habuerit, membra
hence also wineskin because something within it-has-had members
et viscera. Aqualiculus autem proprie porci est; hinc ad
and viscera aqualiculus moreover properly of-the-pig is hence to
ventrem translatio. Matrix dicitur, quod foetus in eo
the-belly the-transfer matrix is-called because the-offspring in it
generetur: semen enim receptum confovet, confotum corporat,
is-generated the-seed for received it-warms warmed it-embodies
corporatum in membra distinguit. Vulva vocata quasi valva,
embodied into members it-distinguishes vulva called as-if valva
id est ianua ventris, vel quod semen recipiat, vel quod
that is the-door of-the-belly either because seed it-receives or because
ex ea foetus procedat. Vesica dicta, quia sicut vas
from it the-offspring proceeds bladder called because as a-vessel
aqua, ita de renibus urina collecta conpletur, et humore
with-water so from the-kidneys with-urine collected it-is-filled and by-moisture
distenditur. Cuius usus in volucribus non habetur. Urina
is-distended whose use in birds not is-had urine

autem dicta, sive quod urat, seu quia ex renibus egeritur.
moreover called either because it-burns or because from the-kidneys it-is-voided
Cuius indicio et salus et aegritudo futura monstratur. Qui
whose by-indication both health and sickness future is-shown which
humor vulgo lotium dicitur, quod eo lota, id est munda,
humor commonly lotium is-called because by-it washed that is clean
vestimenta efficiantur. Semen est quod iactum sumitur aut a
garments are-made seed is what cast is-taken either by
terra aut ab utero ad gignendum vel fructus vel foetus.
the-earth or by the-womb for begetting either fruits or offspring
Est enim liquor ex cibi et corporis decoctione factus
it-is for a-liquid from of-food and of-body the-concoction made
ac diffusus per venas atque medullas, qui inde desudatus
and spread through the-veins and marrows which thence sweated-out
in modum sentinae concrescit in renibus, eiectusque
in the-manner of-bilge-water thickens in the-kidneys and-cast-out
per coitum, et in utero mulieris susceptus calore
through coupling and in the-womb of-the-woman received by-the-heat
quodammodo viscerum et menstrualis sanguinis inrigatione
in-a-way of-the-viscera and of-menstrual blood by-the-watering
formatur in corpore. Menstrua supervacuus mulierum sanguis.
is-formed into a-body the-menses the-superfluous of-women blood
Dicta autem menstrua a circuitu lunaris luminis, quo
called moreover menstrua from the-circuit of-the-lunar light in-which
solet hoc venire profluvium; luna enim Graece μήνη
is-wont this to-come flow the-moon for in-Greek mene
dicitur. Haec et muliebria nuncupantur; nam mulier solum
is-called these also muliebria are-named for woman the-only
animal menstruale est. Cuius cruoris contactu fruges non
animal menstrual is whose gore by-the-contact crops not
germinant, acescunt musta, moriuntur herbae, amittunt
sprout turn-sour musts die herbs lose

arbores fetus, ferrum rubigo corripit, nigrescunt aera. Si
trees fruits iron rust seizes grow-black bronzes if
qui canes inde ederint, in rabiem efferuntur. Glutinum
any dogs thence shall-have-eaten into madness they-are-carried the-glue
asphalti, quod nec ferro nec aquis dissolvitur, cruore ipso
of-asphalt which neither by-iron nor by-waters is-dissolved by-gore itself
pollutum sponte dispergitur. Post plurimos autem dies
polluted of-its-own-accord is-scattered after very-many moreover days
menstruos ideo semen non esse germinabile, quia iam
menstrual therefore the-seed not to-be fertile because now
non est menstrualis sanguis, a quo perfusum inrigetur.
not is the-menstrual blood by which suffused it-may-be-watered
Tenue semen locis muliebribus non adhaerere; labitur
thin seed to-the-places womanly not to-adhere it-slips
enim nec habet vim adhaerendi. Similiter et crassum vim
for nor has the-power of-adhering likewise also thick power
non habet gignendi, quia muliebri sanguini miscere se
not has of-begetting because with-womanly blood to-mix itself
non potest propter nimiam sui spissitudinem. Hinc et
not it-can on-account-of the-excessive its density hence also
steriles mares vel feminas fieri; vel per nimiam seminis
sterile males or females to-become either through excessive of-seed
vel sanguinis crassitudinem, vel propter nimiam raritatem.
or of-blood thickness or on-account-of excessive thinness
Primum autem aiunt cor hominis fingi, quod in eo sit
first moreover they-say the-heart of-man to-be-formed because in it be
et vita omnis et sapientia; deinde quadragesimo die totum
both life all and wisdom then on-the-fortieth day the-whole
opus expleri; quod ex abortionibus, ut ferunt, collecta
work to-be-completed which from abortions as they-say gathered
sunt. Alii foetus a capite sumere dicunt exordium.
are others the-offspring from the-head to-take say the-beginning

Unde et in avium foetus primum oculos fingi in ovis
whence also in of-birds the-offspring first the-eyes to-be-formed in eggs
videmus. Foetus autem nominatus, quod adhuc in utero
we-see fetus moreover named because still in the-womb
foveatur. Cuius secundae dicuntur folliculus, qui simul cum
it-is-warmed whose afterbirth is-called the-little-bag which together with
infante nascitur continetque eum; dictus, quia et cum
the-infant is-born and-holds it called because also when
editur sequitur. Nasci autem patribus similes aiunt,
it-is-brought-forth it-follows to-be-born moreover to-fathers like they-say
si paternum semen validius sit; matribus, si matris; hac
if the-paternal seed stronger be to-mothers if of-the-mother in-this
ratione similes exprimi vultus: qui autem utriusque parentis
way like to-be-expressed the-faces who moreover of-each parent
figuram reddunt, aequaliter mixto paterno maternoque semine
the-figure render with-equally mixed paternal and-maternal seed
concipiuntur. Avorum proavorumque similes fieri, quia
are-conceived to-grandfathers and-great-grandfathers like to-become because
sicut in terra multa semina occulta, sic et in nobis
as in the-earth many seeds hidden so also in us
semina celantur figuras parentum redditura. Ex paterno
seeds are-concealed the-figures of-parents about-to-render from paternal
autem semine puellas nasci et ex materno pueros, quia
moreover seed girls to-be-born and from maternal boys because
omnis partus constat duplici semine, cuius pars maior cum
every birth consists of-twofold seed of-which the-part greater when
invaluit occupat similitudinem sexus. In corpore nostro
it-has-prevailed occupies the-likeness of-sex in body our
quaedam tantum utilitatis causa facta sunt, ut viscera:
certain-things only of-utility for-the-sake made are as the-viscera
quaedam et utilitatis et decoris, ut sensus in facie, et
certain-things both of-utility and of-comeliness as the-senses in the-face and

in corpore manus ac pedes: quorum membrorum et utilitas
in the-body the-hands and feet of-which members both the-utility
magna est, et species decentissima. Quaedam tantum
great is and the-appearance most-becoming certain-things only
decoris, ut mamillae in viris, et in utroque sexu umbilicus.
of-comeliness as the-nipples in men and in each sex the-navel
Quaedam discretionis, ut in viris genitalia, barba promissa,
certain-things of-distinction as in men the-genitals the-beard long
pectus amplum; in mulieribus leves genae, et angustum
the-chest broad in women smooth cheeks and narrow
pectus; ad concipiendos autem et portandos foetus renes
chest for conceiving moreover and carrying offspring the-kidneys
et latera dilatata. Quod ad hominem et ad partes attinet
and sides widened what to man and to the-parts pertains
corporis ex parte dictum est, nunc aetates eius subiungam.
of-the-body in part said it-has-been now the-ages his I-shall-subjoin

De aetatibus hominum

II · THE AGES OF MAN

The ages of man are six: infancy, boyhood, adolescence, youth, maturity, and old age, each but the last with its span of years, old age having no fixed end. Isidore explains the names of infant, boy, ward, man, woman, virgin, and old man, the goods and ills of old age, the three kinds of death, and the words for the dead and the buried.

Gradus aetatis sex sunt: infantia, pueritia, adolescentia,
the-steps of-age six are infancy boyhood adolescence
iuventus, gravitas atque senectus. Prima aetas infantia est
youth seniority and old-age the-first age infancy is
pueri nascentis ad lucem, quae porrigitur in septem
of-the-boy being-born to the-light which extends into seven

annis. Secunda aetas pueritia, id est pura et necdum
years the-second age boyhood that is pure and not-yet
ad generandum apta, tendens usque ad quartumdecimum
for generating apt stretching all-the-way to the-fourteenth
annum. Tertia adolescentia ad gignendum adulta, quae
year the-third adolescence for begetting grown which
porrigitur usque ad viginti octo annos. Quarta iuventus
extends all-the-way to twenty eight years the-fourth youth
firmissima aetatum omnium, finiens in quinquagesimo anno.
the-strongest of-ages all ending in the-fiftieth year
Quinta aetas senioris, id est gravitas, quae est declinatio
the-fifth age of-the-elder that is seniority which is the-decline
a iuventute in senectutem; nondum senectus sed iam
from youth into old-age not-yet old-age but already
nondum iuventus, quia senioris aetas est, quam Graeci
not-yet youth because of-the-elder the-age it-is which the-Greeks
πρεσβύτην vocant. Nam senex apud Graecos non presbyter,
presbyten call for old-man among the-Greeks not presbyter
sed γέρων dicitur. Quae aetas a quinquagesimo anno
but geron is-called which age from the-fiftieth year
incipiens septuagesimo terminatur. Sexta aetas senectus, quae
beginning at-the-seventieth is-ended the-sixth age old-age which
nullo annorum tempore finitur; sed post quinque illas aetates
by-no of-years time is-ended but after five those ages
quantumcumque vitae est, senectuti deputatur. Senium autem
however-much of-life is to-old-age is-assigned senium moreover
pars est ultima senectutis, dicta quod sit terminus sextae
the-part is last of-old-age called because it-be the-end of-the-sixth
aetatis. In his igitur sex spatiis philosophi vitam discripserunt
age in these therefore six spaces the-philosophers life described
humanam, in quibus mutatur et currit et ad mortis
human in which it-is-changed and runs and to of-death

terminum pervenit. Pergamus ergo breviter per praedictos
the-end comes let-us-proceed therefore briefly through the-aforesaid
gradus aetatum, etymologias eorum in homine demonstrantes.
steps of-the-ages the-etymologies their in man showing
Infans dicitur homo primae aetatis; dictus autem infans quia
infant is-called man of-the-first age called moreover infans because
adhuc fari nescit, id est loqui non potest. Nondum enim
still to-speak he-knows-not that is to-talk not can not-yet for
bene ordinatis dentibus minus est sermonis expressio. Puer
well ordered with-teeth less is of-speech the-expression boy
a puritate vocatus, quia purus est, et necdum lanuginem
from purity called because pure he-is and not-yet the-down
floremque genarum habens. Hi sunt ephebi, id est a Phoebo
and-the-bloom of-the-cheeks having these are ephebi that is from Phoebus
dicti, necdum [pronati] viri, adolescentuli lenes. Puer autem
called not-yet grown men youths smooth boy moreover
tribus modis dicitur, pro nativitate, ut Esaias: 'Puer natus
in-three ways is-said for birth as Isaiah a-boy born
est nobis.' Pro aetate, ut octoennis, decennis. Unde est illud:
is to-us for age as eight-years-old ten-years-old whence is that

Iam puerile iugum tenera cervice gerebat.
now the-boyish yoke on-tender neck he-bore

Pro obsequio et fidei puritate, ut Dominus ad prophetam:
for obedience and of-faith purity as the-Lord to the-prophet
'Puer meus es tu, noli timere,' dum iam Ieremias longe
boy my are you do-not fear when already Jeremiah far
pueritiae excessisset annos. Puella est parvula, quasi pulla.
of-boyhood had-exceeded the-years girl is a-little-one as-if pulla
Unde et pupillos non pro condicione, sed pro aetate puerili
whence also wards not for condition but for age boyish

vocamus. Pupilli autem dicti quasi in oculis, hoc est a
we-call wards moreover called as-if in eyes that is from
parentibus orbi. Hi autem vere pupilli dicuntur quorum patres
parents bereft these moreover truly wards are-called whose fathers
ante decesserunt quam ab his nomen acceperint. Ceteri orbi
before died than from them the-name they-received the-other bereft
vocantur orphani, idem qui et pupilli; illud enim Graecum
are-called orphans the-same who also wards that for Greek
nomen est, hoc Latinum. Nam et in psalmo, ubi legitur:
name is this Latin for also in the-psalm where is-read
'Pupillo tu eris adiutor,' Graecus habet ὀρφανῷ. Puberes
to-the-ward you shall-be helper the-Greek has orphano the-pubescent
a pube, id est a pudenda corporis, nuncupati, quod
from the-pubes that is from the-private-parts of-the-body named because
haec loca tunc primum lanuginem ducunt. Quidam autem ex
these places then first down draw some moreover from
annis pubertatem existimant, id est eum puberem esse qui
years puberty judge that is him pubescent to-be who
quattuordecim annos expleverit, quamvis tardissime pubescat:
fourteen years has-completed however most-slowly he-grows-hair
certissimum autem puberem esse qui et ex habitu corporis
most-certain moreover pubescent to-be who both from the-habit of-body
pubertatem ostendit et generare iam possit. Puerperae sunt,
puberty shows and to-generate already can puerperae are
quae annis puerilibus pariunt. Unde et Horatius:
who in-years boyish bear whence also Horace

Laudatur primo prole puerpera [nato].
is-praised with-first offspring the-mother born

Et dictae puerperae vel quod primo partu gravantur, vel
and called puerperae either because by-the-first birth they-are-burdened or
quod primum pueros pariunt. Adolescens dictus, eo quod sit
because first boys they-bear adolescent called for-this that he-be
ad gignendum adultus, sive a crescere et augeri. Iuvenis
for begetting grown or from to-grow and to-be-increased young-man
vocatus, quod iuvare posse incipit; ut in bubus iuvenci, cum
called because to-help to-be-able he-begins as among oxen bullocks when
a vitulis discesserint. Est enim iuvenis in ipso aetatis
from calves they-have-departed he-is for the-young-man in the-very of-age
incremento positus, et ad auxilium praeparatus. Nam iuvare
increase placed and for help prepared for to-help
hominis est opus aliquod conferentis. Sicut autem trecesimus
of-a-man is work some contributing as moreover the-thirtieth
perfectae aetatis est annus in hominibus, ita in pecudibus ac
of-perfect age is the-year in men so in cattle and
iumentis tertius robustissimus. Vir nuncupatus, quia maior in
draft-animals the-third most-robust man named because greater in
eo vis est quam in feminis: unde et virtus nomen accepit; sive
him force is than in women whence also virtue the-name received or
quod vi agat feminam. Mulier vero a mollitie, tamquam
because by-force he-drives the-woman woman but from softness as-if
mollier, detracta littera vel mutata, appellata est mulier.
mollier with-taken-away letter or changed called is mulier
Utrique enim fortitudine et inbecillitate corporum separantur.
both for by-strength and weakness of-bodies are-separated
Sed ideo virtus maxima viri, mulieris minor, ut
but therefore the-strength greatest of-the-man of-the-woman less that
patiens viri esset; scilicet, ne feminis repugnantibus
submissive to-the-man she-might-be namely lest with-women resisting
libido cogeret viros aliud appetere aut in alium sexum
lust might-compel men something-else to-seek or into another sex

proruere. Dicitur igitur mulier secundum femineum sexum, non
to-rush is-called therefore woman according-to the-female sex not
secundum corruptionem integritatis: et hoc ex lingua sacrae
according-to the-corruption of-integrity and this from the-tongue of-holy
Scripturae. Nam Eva statim facta de latere viri sui, nondum
Scripture for Eve at-once made from the-side of-man her not-yet
contacta a viro, mulier appellata est, dicente Scriptura: 'Et
touched by a-man woman called is with-saying Scripture and
formavit eam in mulierem.' Virgo a viridiori aetate dicta est,
he-formed her into woman virgin from greener age called is
sicut et virga, sicut et vitula. Alias ab incorruptione, quasi
as also rod as also heifer otherwise from incorruption as-if
virago, quod ignoret femineam passionem. Virago vocata,
virago because she-knows-not the-female passion virago called
quia virum agit, hoc est opera virilia facit et masculini
because the-man she-acts that is works manly does and of-masculine
vigoris est. Antiqui enim fortes feminas ita vocabant. Virgo
vigor is the-ancients for strong women so called virgin
autem non recte virago dicitur, si non viri officio fungitur.
moreover not rightly virago is-called if not of-a-man the-office she-discharges
Mulier vero si virilia facit, recte virago dicitur, ut Amazona.
woman but if manly-things she-does rightly virago is-called as the-Amazon
Quae vero nunc femina, antiquitus vira vocabatur; sicut a
who but now femina anciently vira was-called as from
servo serva, sicut a famulo famula, ita a viro vira. Hinc
servus serva as from famulus famula so from vir vira hence
et virginis nomen quidam putant. Femina vero a partibus
also of-virgin the-name some think femina but from the-parts
femorum dicta, ubi sexus species a viro distinguitur.
of-the-thighs called where of-sex the-appearance from the-man is-distinguished
Alii Graeca etymologia feminam ab ignea vi dictam putant,
others by-Greek etymology woman from fiery force called think

quia vehementer concupiscit. Libidinosiores enim viris
because vehemently she-desires more-lustful for than-men
feminas esse tam in mulieribus quam in animalibus. Unde
women to-be as-well in women as in animals whence
nimius amor apud antiquos femineus vocabatur. Senior est
excessive love among the-ancients feminine was-called senior is
adhuc viridior. In sexto libro Ovidius: Senior,
still greener in the-sixth book Ovid senior

Inter iuvenemque senemque.
between and-the-young-man and-the-old-man

Terentius:
Terence

Quo iure sum us⟨us⟩ adulescentior.
by-what right I-have used younger

⟨Adulescentior⟩ non utique magis adolescens, sed minus;
younger not certainly more adolescent but less
ut senior minus sene, ubi comparativus gradus minus
as senior less than-old-man where the-comparative degree less
significat a positivo. Ergo senior non satis, sicut
signifies than the-positive therefore senior not enough as
iunior inter iuvenem, sicut pauperior intra ditem et
junior between the-young-man as poorer within the-rich and
pauperem. Senes autem quidam dictos putant a sensus
the-poor old-men moreover some called think from of-sense
diminutione, eo quod iam per vetustatem desipiant.
the-diminution for-this that already through age they-are-foolish
Nam physici dicunt stultos esse homines frigidioris
for the-natural-philosophers say foolish to-be men of-colder

sanguinis, prudentes calidi: unde et senes, in quibus iam
blood the-prudent of-warm whence also old-men in whom already
friget, et pueri, in quibus necdum calet, minus sapiunt.
it-is-cold and boys in whom not-yet it-is-warm less are-wise
Inde est quod convenit sibi infantum aetas et senum:
thence it-is that agrees with-each-other of-infants the-age and of-old-men
senes enim per nimiam aetatem delirant; pueri per
old-men for through excessive age dote boys through
lasciviam et infantiam ignorant quid agant. Senex autem
wantonness and infancy know-not what they-do old-man moreover
tantum masculini generis est, sicut anus feminini; nam anus
only of-masculine gender is as anus of-feminine for anus
dicitur sola mulier. Anus autem appellata a multis annis,
is-called only a-woman anus moreover called from many years
quasi annosa. Nam si commune esset nomen, cur diceret
as-if annosa for if common were the-name why would-say
Terentius: 'senem mulierem'? Hinc et vetula, quia vetusta.
Terence old-man woman hence also vetula because old
Sicut autem a sene senectus, ita ab anu anilitas nominata
as moreover from senex senectus so from anus anility named
est. Canities autem vocata a candore, quasi candities. Unde
is hoariness moreover called from whiteness as-if candities whence
est illud: 'florida iuventus, lactea canities,' prout diceret
is that flowery youth milky hoariness as he-would-say
candida. Senectus autem multa secum et bona adfert et
white old-age moreover many-things with-itself both good brings and
mala. Bona, quia nos ab inpotentissimis dominis liberat,
bad good because us from most-unbridled masters it-frees
voluptatibus inponit modum, libidinis frangit impetus, auget
on-pleasures it-imposes measure of-lust it-breaks the-impulses it-increases
sapientiam, dat maturiora consilia. Mala autem, quia
wisdom it-gives riper counsels bad moreover because

senium miserrimum est debilitate et odio. 'Subeunt' enim
old-age most-wretched is with-weakness and hatred come-on for
'morbi tristisque senectus'. Nam duo sunt quibus minuuntur
diseases and-sad old-age for two are by-which are-diminished
corporis vires, senectus et morbus. Mors dicta, quod
of-the-body the-strengths old-age and disease death called because
sit amara, vel a Marte, qui est effector mortium [sive
it-be bitter or from Mars who is the-effecter of-deaths or
mors a morsu hominis primi, quod vetitae arboris
mors from the-bite of-man the-first because of-the-forbidden tree
pomum mordens mortem incurrit]. Tria sunt autem genera
the-fruit biting death he-incurred three are moreover kinds
mortis: acerba, inmatura, naturalis. Acerba infantum, inmatura
of-death bitter untimely natural bitter of-infants untimely
iuvenum, merita, id est naturalis, senum. Mortuus autem
of-young-men deserved that is natural of-old-men mortuus moreover
ex qua parte orationis declinetur incertum est. Nam sicut
from what part of-speech it-be-declined uncertain is for as
ait Caesar, ab eo quod est morior in participio praeteriti
says Caesar from that which is morior in the-participle of-past
temporis in 'tus' exire debuit, per unum scilicet U,
tense into tus to-come-out it-ought through one namely U
non per duo. Nam ubi geminata est littera U, nominativus
not through two for where doubled is the-letter U a-nominative
est, non participium, ut fatuus, arduus. Convenienter itaque
it-is not a-participle as fatuus arduus fittingly and-so
factum ut quemadmodum id, quod significat, non potest
it-was-done that as that which it-signifies not can
agendo, ita et ipsud nomen non possit loquendo declinari.
by-acting so also the-very name not could in-speaking to-be-declined
Omnis autem mortuus aut funus est, aut cadaver. Funus
every moreover dead-man either a-funeral is or a-corpse funus

est, si sepeliatur. Et dictum funus a funibus accensis, quos
it-is if he-be-buried and called funus from ropes kindled which
ante feretrum papyris cera circumdatis ferebant. Cadaver
before the-bier with-papyrus with-wax surrounded they-carried cadaver
autem est, si insepultum iacet. Nam cadaver nominatum
moreover it-is if unburied it-lies for cadaver named
a cadendo, quia iam stare non potest. Quod dum
from falling because already to-stand not it-can which while
portatur, exsequias dicimus: crematum reliquias: conditum
it-is-carried obsequies we-call burned remains stored
iam sepultum. Corpus autem consuetudine dicitur, ut illud:
already buried body moreover by-custom it-is-called as that

Tum corpora luce carentum.
then the-bodies light of-those-lacking

Defunctus vocatus, quia conplevit vitae officium. Nam
defunct called because he-has-completed of-life the-office for
dicimus functos officio, qui officia debita conpleverunt; unde
we-call functi in-office who the-offices owed have-completed whence
est et honoribus functus. Hinc ergo defunctus, quod ab
is also in-honors functus hence therefore defunct because from
officio sit vitae depositus, sive quod sit diem functus.
the-office he-be of-life laid-down or because he-be the-day discharged
Sepultus autem dictus, eo quod iam sine pulsu et
buried moreover called for-this that already without pulse and
palpitatione est, id est sine motu. Sepelire autem est condere
palpitation he-is that is without motion to-bury moreover is to-store
corpus. Nam humare obruere dicimus, hoc est humum inicere.
the-body for humare to-cover we-say that is earth to-throw-on

De portentis

III · PORTENTS

Portents, Varro says, seem born against nature but are not, since they come by the will of God, and they foretell things to come, as Xerxes' and Alexander's did. Isidore names the kinds of portent in single bodies, then the monstrous peoples, the Giants, Cynocephali, Cyclopes, Blemmyes, Panotii, Sciopodes, and Pygmies, and the fabled monsters, Geryon, the Gorgons, the Sirens, Scylla, Cerberus, the Hydra, the Chimera, and the Centaurs, with the truth behind each.

Portenta esse Varro ait quae contra naturam nata videntur: sed
portents to-be Varro says which against nature born seem but
non sunt contra naturam, quia divina voluntate fiunt, cum
not are against nature because by-divine will they-are-made since
voluntas Creatoris cuiusque conditae rei natura sit. Unde et
the-will of-the-Creator of-each created thing the-nature be whence also
ipsi gentiles Deum modo Naturam, modo Deum appellant.
the-very gentiles God now Nature now God call
Portentum ergo fit non contra naturam, sed contra quam
portent therefore is-made not against nature but against what
est nota natura. Portenta autem et ostenta, monstra atque
is known nature portents moreover and ostents monsters and
prodigia ideo nuncupantur, quod portendere atque ostendere,
prodigies therefore are-named because to-portend and to-show
monstrare ac praedicare aliqua futura videntur. Nam portenta
to-demonstrate and to-foretell some future-things they-seem for portents
dicta perhibent a portendendo, id est praeostendendo. Ostenta
called they-hold from portending that is fore-showing ostents
autem, quod ostendere quidquam futurum videantur. Prodigia,
moreover because to-show anything future they-seem prodigies
quod porro dicant, id est futura praedicant. Monstra vero
because forward they-say that is future-things they-foretell monsters but

a monitu dicta, quod aliquid significando demonstrent, sive
from warning called because something by-signifying they-demonstrate or
quod statim monstrent quid appareat; et hoc proprietatis est,
because at-once they-show what may-appear and this of-propriety is
abusione tamen scriptorum plerumque corrumpitur. Quaedam
by-the-misuse yet of-writers mostly it-is-corrupted certain
autem portentorum creationes in sinificationibus futuris
moreover of-portents creations in significations future
constituta videntur. Vult enim deus interdum ventura
set seem wills for God sometimes things-to-come
significare per aliqua nascentium noxia, sicut et per
to-signify through some of-those-born harmful-things as also through
somnos et per oracula, qua praemoneat et significet
dreams and through oracles by-which he-may-forewarn and signify
quibusdam vel gentibus vel hominibus futuram cladem; quod
to-certain either nations or men future disaster which
plurimis etiam experimentis probatum est. Xerxen quippe
by-very-many also experiences proved is to-Xerxes indeed
vulpis ex equa creata solvi regnum portendit. Alexandro
a-fox from a-mare created to-be-dissolved the-kingdom portended to-Alexander
ex muliere monstrum creatum, quod superiores corporis
from a-woman a-monster created which the-upper of-the-body
partes hominis, sed mortuas habuerit, inferiores diversarum
parts of-a-man but dead had the-lower of-diverse
bestiarum, sed viventes, significasse repentinam regis
beasts but living to-have-signified the-sudden of-the-king
interfectionem: supervixerant enim deteriora melioribus. Sed
killing had-survived for the-worse-parts the-better but
haec monstra quae in significationibus dantur non diu
these monsters which in significations are-given not long
vivunt, sed continuo ut nata fuerint occidunt. Inter
live but immediately as born they-shall-have-been they-die between

portentum autem et portentuosum differt. Nam portenta
portent moreover and portentous it-differs for portents
sunt quae transfigurantur, sicut fertur in Umbria mulierem
are which are-transfigured as it-is-said in Umbria a-woman
peperisse serpentem. Unde Lucanus:
to-have-borne a-serpent whence Lucan

Matremque suus conterruit infans.
and-the-mother its-own terrified infant

Portentuosa vero levem sumunt mutationem, exempli causa
portentous-things but a-light take change of-example for-the-sake
cum sex digitis nati. Portenta igitur vel portentuosa
when with-six fingers born portents therefore or portentous-things
existunt alia magnitudine totius corporis ultra communem
are some by-size of-the-whole body beyond the-common
hominum modum, quantus fuit Tityon in novem iugeribus
of-men measure as-great-as was Tityos over nine acres
iacens, Homero testante: alia parvitate totius corporis,
lying with-Homer witnessing some by-smallness of-the-whole body
ut nani, vel quos Graeci Pygmaeos vocant, eo quod
as dwarfs or whom the-Greeks Pygmies call for-this that
sint statura cubitales. Alii a magnitudine partium, veluti
they-be in-stature a-cubit-tall others from the-size of-parts as
capite informi, aut superfluis membrorum partibus, ut
with-head misshapen or with-superfluous of-the-limbs parts as
bicipites et trimani, vel cynodontes, quibus gemini
the-two-headed and the-three-handed or the-cynodontes from-whom twin
procedunt dentes. Alii a defectu partium, in quibus altera
come-forth teeth others from the-defect of-parts in which the-one
pars plurimum deficit ab altera, ut manus a manu, vel
part greatly falls-short of the-other as hand from hand or

pes a pede. Alii a decisione, ut sine manu aut capite
foot from foot others from cutting-off as without hand or head
generata, quos Graeci steresios vocant. Alia praenumeria,
generated whom the-Greeks steresioi call others praenumeria
quando solum caput aut crus nascitur. Alia, quae in parte
when only the-head or the-leg is-born others which in part
transfigurantur, sicut qui leonis habent vultum vel canis,
are-transfigured as who of-a-lion have the-face or of-a-dog
vel taurinum caput aut corpus, ut ex Pasiphaë memorant
or bullish head or body as from Pasiphae they-record
genitum Minotaurum; quod Graeci ἑτερομορφίαν vocant. Alia,
begotten the-Minotaur which the-Greeks heteromorphian call others
quae ex omni parte transfigurantur in alienae creationis
which from every part are-transfigured into of-alien creation
portentum, ut ex muliere vitulum dicit historia generatum.
a-portent as from a-woman a-calf says history generated
Alia, quae sine transfiguratione mutationem habent locorum,
others which without transfiguration change have of-places
ut oculos in pectore vel in fronte, aures supra tempora: vel
as eyes in the-breast or in the-forehead ears above the-temples or
sicut Aristoteles tradidit quendam in sinistra parte iecur,
as Aristotle handed-down a-certain-man in the-left part the-liver
in dextera splen habuisse. Alia secundum connaturationem,
in the-right the-spleen to-have-had others according-to joining-in-birth
ut in alia manu digiti plures connaturati et cohaerentes
as in one hand fingers more grown-together and cohering
reperiuntur, in alia minus, sive in pedibus. Alia secundum
are-found in the-other fewer or in the-feet others according-to
inmaturam et intemperatam creationem, sicut hi qui dentati
untimely and intemperate creation as those who toothed
nascuntur sive barbati vel cani. Alia conplexu plurimarum
are-born or bearded or gray others by-the-combination of-very-many

differentiarum, sicut illud quod praediximus in Alexandro
differences as that which we-have-mentioned-before in Alexander
multiforme portentum. Alia conmixtione generis, ut ἀνδρόγυνοι
a-multiform portent others by-the-mixing of-kind as androgynoi
et ἑρμαφροδῖται vocantur. Hermaphroditae autem nuncupati
and hermaphroditai are-called hermaphrodites moreover named
eo quod eis uterque sexus appareat. Ἑρμῆς quippe apud
for-this that in-them each sex appears Hermes indeed among
Graecos masculus, Ἀφροδίτη femina nuncupatur. Hi dexteram
the-Greeks male Aphrodite female is-named these the-right
mamillam virilem, sinistram muliebrem habentes vicissim
breast manly the-left womanly having in-turn
coeundo et gignunt et pariunt. Sicut autem in singulis
by-coupling both beget and bear as moreover among single
gentibus quaedam monstra sunt hominum, ita in universo
nations certain monsters are of-men so in the-universal
genere humano quaedam monstra sunt gentium, ut Gigantes,
race human certain monsters are of-nations as the-Giants
Cynocephali, Cyclopes, et cetera. Gigantes dictos iuxta
Cynocephali Cyclopes and the-rest giants called according-to
Graeci sermonis etymologiam, qui eos γηγενεῖς existimant,
of-the-Greek speech the-etymology who them gegeneis think
id est terrigenas, eo quod eos fabulose parens terra
that is earth-born for-this that them fabulously as-parent the-earth
inmensa mole et similes sibi genuerit. Γῆ enim terra
with-immense bulk and like to-herself begot ge for earth
appellatur: γένος genus; licet et terrae filios vulgus vocat:
is-called genos kind although also of-the-earth sons the-crowd calls
quorum genus incertum est. Falso autem opinantur quidam
whose kind uncertain is falsely moreover think some
inperiti de Scripturis sanctis praevaricatores angelos cum
unskilled in the-Scriptures holy transgressing angels with

filiabus hominum ante diluvium concubuisse, et exinde
the-daughters of-men before the-flood to-have-lain and thence
natos Gigantes, id est nimium grandes et fortes viros, de
born the-Giants that is exceedingly great and strong men with
quibus terra conpleta est. Cynocephali appellantur eo quod
whom the-earth filled was Cynocephali are-called for-this that
canina capita habeant, quosque ipse latratus magis bestias
canine heads they-have and-whom the-very barking rather beasts
quam homines confitetur. Hi in India nascuntur. Cyclopes
than men confesses these in India are-born the-Cyclopes
quoque eadem India gignit; et dictos Cyclopes eo quod
also the-same India begets and called Cyclopes for-this that
unum habere oculum in fronte media perhibentur. Hi et
one to-have eye in the-forehead middle they-are-held these also
ἀγριοφαγῖται dicuntur, propter quod solas ferarum carnes
agriophagitai are-called on-account-of that only of-wild-beasts the-flesh
edunt. Blemmyas in Libya credunt truncos sine capite
they-eat the-Blemmyes in Libya they-believe trunks without head
nasci, et os et oculos habere in pectore. Alios sine
to-be-born and mouth and eyes to-have in the-breast others without
cervicibus gigni, oculos habentes in humeris. In ultimo
necks to-be-begotten eyes having in the-shoulders in the-farthest
autem Orientis monstruosae gentium facies scribuntur. Aliae
moreover of-the-East monstrous of-nations faces are-written some
sine naribus, aequali totius oris planitie, informes habentes
without nostrils with-even of-the-whole face flatness shapeless having
vultus. Aliae labro subteriori adeo prominenti ut in solis
countenances others with-lip lower so projecting that in of-the-sun
ardoribus totam ex eo faciem contegant dormientes. Aliis
heats the-whole from it face they-cover sleeping to-others
concreta ora esse, modico tantum foramine calamis
grown-together mouths to-be with-small only opening through-reeds

avenarum pastus haurientes. Nonnulli sine linguis esse
of-oats food drinking-in some without tongues to-be
dicuntur, invicem sermonis utentes nutum sive motum.
are-said with-each-other for-speech using nod or motion
Panotios apud Scythiam esse ferunt, tam diffusa magnitudine
the-Panotii among Scythia to-be they-say with-so spread size
aurium ut omne corpus ex eis contegant. Πᾶν enim Graeco
of-ears that all the-body with them they-cover pan for in-Greek
sermone omne, ὦτα aures dicuntur. Artabatitae in Aethiopia
speech all ota ears are-called the-Artabatitae in Ethiopia
proni, ut pecora, ambulare dicuntur: quadragesimum aevi
prone like cattle to-walk are-said the-fortieth of-life
annum nullus supergreditur. Satyri homunciones sunt aduncis
year no-one goes-beyond satyrs little-men are with-hooked
naribus; cornua in frontibus, et caprarum pedibus similes,
noses horns on the-foreheads and of-goats to-the-feet like
qualem in solitudine Antonius sanctus vidit. Qui etiam
such-as in the-solitude Anthony saint saw who also
interrogatus Dei servo respondisse fertur dicens: ‘Mortalis
asked of-God to-the-servant to-have-answered is-said saying mortal
ego sum unus ex accolis heremi, quos vario delusa
I am one of the-dwellers of-the-desert whom with-various deluded
errore gentilitas Faunos Satyrosque colit.’ Dicuntur quidam
error gentility as-Fauns and-Satyrs worships are-said certain
et silvestres homines, quos nonnulli Faunos ficarios vocant.
also woodland men whom some Fauns ficarii call
Sciopodum gens fertur in Aethiopia singulis cruribus et
of-the-Sciopodes the-nation is-said in Ethiopia with-single legs and
celeritate mirabili: quos inde σκιόποδας Graeci vocant, eo
with-speed marvelous whom thence skiopodas the-Greeks call for-this
quod per aestum in terra resupini iacentes pedum
that through the-heat on the-ground on-their-backs lying of-feet

suorum magnitudine adumbrentur. Antipodes in Libya plantas
their by-the-size they-are-shaded the-Antipodes in Libya the-soles
versas habent post crura et octonos digitos in plantis.
turned have behind the-legs and eight-each toes on the-soles
Hippopodes in Scythia sunt, humanam formam et equinos
the-Hippopodes in Scythia are human form and equine
pedes habentes. In India ferunt esse gentem quae Μακρόβιοι
feet having in India they-say to-be a-nation which Makrobioi
nuncupantur, duodecim pedum staturam habentes. Est et
are-named of-twelve feet stature having there-is also
gens ibi statura cubitalis, quos Graeci a cubito Pygmaeos
a-nation there in-stature a-cubit-tall whom the-Greeks from cubit Pygmies
vocant, de qua supra diximus. Hi montana Indiae tenent,
call about which above we-have-said these the-mountains of-India hold
quibus est vicinus oceanus. Perhibent [et] in eadem India
to-whom is near the-ocean they-hold also in the-same India
esse gentem feminarum quae quinquennes concipiunt, et
to-be a-nation of-women which five-years-old conceive and
octavum vitae annum non excedunt. Dicuntur autem et
the-eighth of-life year not exceed are-said moreover also
alia hominum fabulosa portenta, quae non sunt, sed ficta
other of-men fabulous portents which not are but feigned
in causis rerum interpretantur, ut Geryonem Hispaniae
in the-causes of-things are-interpreted as Geryon of-Spain
regem triplici forma proditum. Fuerunt enim tres fratres
the-king of-triple form recorded there-were for three brothers
tantae concordiae ut in tribus corporibus quasi una anima
of-such concord that in three bodies as-if one soul
esset. Gorgones quoque meretrices crinitas serpentibus, quae
there-were the-Gorgons also harlots haired with-serpents who
aspicientes convertebant in lapides, habentes unum oculum
those-looking turned into stones having one eye

quem invicem utebantur. Fuerunt autem tres sorores unius
which by-turns they-used there-were moreover three sisters of-one
pulchritudinis, quasi unius oculi, quae ita spectatores suos
beauty as-if of-one eye who so beholders their
stupescere faciebant ut vertere eos putarentur in lapides.
to-be-stupefied made that to-turn them they-were-thought into stones
Sirenas tres fingunt fuisse ex parte virgines, ex parte
the-Sirens three they-feign to-have-been in part virgins in part
volucres, habentes alas et ungulas: quarum una voce,
birds having wings and claws of-whom one with-the-voice
altera tibiis, tertia lyra canebant. Quae inlectos
another with-pipes the-third with-the-lyre sang who the-enticed
navigantes sub cantu in naufragium trahebant. Secundum
sailors under song into shipwreck drew according-to
veritatem autem meretrices fuerunt, quae transeuntes quoniam
the-truth moreover harlots they-were who passers-by since
deducebant ad egestatem, his fictae sunt inferre naufragia.
they-led-down to poverty to-these feigned they-are to-bring shipwrecks
Alas autem habuisse et ungulas, quia amor et volat et
wings moreover to-have-had and claws because love both flies and
vulnerat. Quae inde in fluctibus conmorasse dicuntur, quia
wounds who thence in the-waves to-have-dwelt are-said because
fluctus Venerem creaverunt. Scyllam quoque ferunt feminam
the-waves Venus created Scylla also they-say a-woman
capitibus succinctam caninis, cum latratibus magnis, propter
with-heads girded canine with barkings great on-account-of
fretum Siculi maris, in quo navigantes verticibus in
the-strait of-the-Sicilian sea in which sailors by-the-whirlpools into
se concurrentium undarum exterriti latrari aestimant
themselves running of-waves terrified to-bark think
undas, quas sorbentis aestus vorago conlidit. Fingunt et
the-waves which of-the-sucking tide the-abyss dashes they-feign also

monstra quaedam inrationabilium animantium, ut Cerberum
monsters certain of-irrational living-things as Cerberus
inferorum canem tria capita habentem, significantes per
of-the-underworld the-dog three heads having signifying through
eum tres aetates per quas mors hominem devorat, id
him the-three ages through which death man devours that
est infantiam, iuventutem et senectutem. Quem quidam
is infancy youth and old-age whom some
ideo dictum Cerberum putant quasi κρεοβόρος, id est
therefore called Cerberus think as-if kreoboros that is
carnem vorans. Dicunt et Hydram serpentem cum novem
flesh devouring they-speak-of also the-Hydra a-serpent with nine
capitibus, quae Latine excetra dicitur, quod uno caeso tria
heads which in-Latin excetra is-called because with-one cut three
capita excrescebant. Sed constat Hydram locum fuisse
heads grew-out but it-is-agreed the-Hydra a-place to-have-been
evomentem aquas, vastantem vicinam civitatem, in quo
vomiting-forth waters laying-waste a-neighboring city in which
uno meatu clauso multi erumpebant. Quod Hercules videns
with-one passage closed many burst-out which Hercules seeing
loca ipsa exussit, et sic aquae clausit meatus.
the-places themselves burned and so of-the-waters closed the-passages
Nam hydra ab aqua dicta est. Huius mentionem facit
for hydra from water called is of-this mention makes
Ambrosius in similitudinem haeresium, dicens: 'Haeresis
Ambrose in the-likeness of-heresies saying heresy
enim velut quaedam hydra fabularum vulneribus suis crevit;
for as a-certain hydra of-the-fables by-wounds its grew
et dum saepe reciditur, pullulavit igni debita incendioque
and while often it-is-cut-back it-sprouted to-fire owed and-by-burning
peritura.' Fingunt et Chimaeram triformem bestiam: ore
about-to-perish they-feign also the-Chimera a-three-formed beast in-mouth

leo, postremis partibus draco, media caprea. Quam
a-lion in-the-hindmost parts a-dragon in-the-middle a-she-goat which
quidam Physiologi non animal, sed Ciliciae montem
some natural-philosophers not an-animal but of-Cilicia a-mountain
esse aiunt, quibusdam locis leones et capreas nutrientem,
to-be say in-certain places lions and she-goats nourishing
quibusdam ardentem, quibusdam plenum serpentibus. Hunc
in-certain burning in-certain full of-serpents this
Bellorophontes habitabilem fecit, unde Chimaeram dicitur
Bellerophon habitable made whence the-Chimera he-is-said
occidisse. Centauris autem species vocabulum indidit,
to-have-killed to-the-Centaurs moreover the-appearance the-name gave
id est hominem equo mixtum, quos quidam fuisse
that is a-man with-a-horse mixed whom some to-have-been
equites Thessalorum dicunt, sed pro eo quod discurrentes in
horsemen of-the-Thessalians say but for that that running-about in
bello velut unum corpus equorum et hominum viderentur,
war as-if one body of-horses and of-men they-seemed
inde Centauros fictos adseruerunt. Porro Minotaurum nomen
thence Centaurs feigned they-asserted further the-Minotaur the-name
sumpsisse ex tauro et homine, qualem bestiam dicunt
to-have-taken from bull and man such-as a-beast they-say
fabulose in Labyrintho inclusam fuisse. De qua Ovidius:
fabulously in the-Labyrinth shut-in to-have-been about which Ovid

Semibovemque virum, semivirumque bovem.
and-the-half-bull man and-the-half-man bull

Onocentaurum autem vocari eo quod media hominis
onocentaur moreover to-be-called for-this that in-the-half of-man
specie, media asini esse dicatur; sicut et Hippocentauri,
appearance in-the-half of-an-ass to-be it-be-said as also the-hippocentaurs

quod equorum hominumque in eis natura coniuncta
because of-horses and-of-men in them the-nature joined
fuisse putatur.
to-have-been is-thought

De transformatis

IV · TRANSFORMATIONS

Transformations of men into beasts are recorded, as Circe's of Ulysses' companions and of the Arcadians into wolves; by nature too corrupted bodies change, bees from the flesh of calves, beetles from horses, scorpions from crabs.

Scribuntur autem et quaedam monstruosae hominum
are-written moreover also certain monstrous of-men
transformationes et commutationes in bestiis, sicut de
transformations and changes into beasts as about
illa maga famosissima Circe, quae socios quoque Ulixis
that sorceress most-famous Circe who the-companions also of-Ulysses
mutasse fertur in bestias: et de Arcadibus, qui
to-have-changed is-said into beasts and about the-Arcadians who
sorte ducti transnatabant quoddam stagnum atque ibi
by-lot led swam-across a-certain pool and there
convertebantur in lupos. Nam et Diomedis socios in
were-turned into wolves for also of-Diomedes the-companions into
volucres fuisse conversos non fabuloso mendacio, sed
birds to-have-been turned not by-fabulous lie but
historica adfirmatione confirmant. Sed et quidam adserunt
by-historical affirmation they-confirm but also some assert
Strigas ex hominibus fieri. Ad multa enim latrocinia
witches from men to-be-made for many for robberies

figurae sceleratorum mutantur, et sive magicis cantibus, sive
the-figures of-the-wicked are-changed and either by-magic spells or
herbarum veneficio totis corporibus in feras transeunt.
of-herbs by-the-poisoning in-whole bodies into wild-beasts they-pass
Siquidem et per naturam pleraque mutationem recipiunt,
since also through nature very-many change receive
et corrupta in diversas species transformantur; sicut de
and corrupted into diverse species are-transformed as from
vitulorum carnibus putridis apes, sicut de equis scarabei,
of-calves the-flesh putrid bees as from horses beetles
de mulis locustae, de cancris scorpiones. Ovidius:
from mules locusts from crabs scorpions Ovid

Concava litorei si demas brachia cancri,
the-hollow of-a-shore if you-take-away the-arms of-a-crab
scorpio exibit, caudaque minabitur unca.
a-scorpion shall-come-out and-with-tail shall-threaten hooked

De pecoribus et iumentis

I · CATTLE AND BEASTS OF BURDEN

Adam first named all the animals in the one tongue before the flood. Isidore distinguishes cattle, beasts of burden, and herds, then names the sheep, the ram, the lamb, the goats, the stag, the hare, the pig, the bull and the ox, the camel, the ass and the onager, and at length the horse, its qualities and colors, and the mule and the other hybrids.

Omnibus animantibus Adam primum vocabula indidit,
to-all living-things Adam first names gave
appellans unicuique nomen ex praesenti institutione iuxta
naming to-each a-name from present institution according-to
condicionem naturae cui serviret. Gentes autem unicuique
the-condition of-nature which it-served the-nations moreover to-each
animalium ex propria lingua dederunt vocabula. Non autem
of-animals from their-own tongue gave names not moreover
secundum Latinam linguam atque Graecam aut quarumlibet
according-to the-Latin tongue and Greek or of-whatever
gentium barbararum nomina illa inposuit Adam, sed illa
nations barbarous names those imposed Adam but in-that
lingua quae ante diluvium omnium una fuit, quae Hebraea
tongue which before the-flood of-all one was which Hebrew
nuncupatur. Latine autem animalia sive animantia dicta,
is-named in-Latin moreover animalia or animantia called
quod animentur vita et moveantur spiritu. Quadrupedia
because they-are-animated by-life and are-moved by-breath quadrupeds
vocata, quia quattuor pedibus gradiuntur: quae dum sint
called because on-four feet they-walk which though they-be
similia pecoribus, tamen sub cura humana non sunt; ut
like to-cattle yet under care human not they-are as

cervi, dammae, onagri, et cetera. Sed neque bestiae sunt, ut
stags fallow-deer wild-asses and the-rest but neither beasts they-are as
leones; neque iumenta, ut usus hominum iuvare possint.
lions nor draft-animals that the-uses of-men to-help they-may-be-able
Pecus dicimus omne quod humana lingua et effigie caret.
cattle we-call all that human tongue and likeness lacks
Proprie autem pecorum nomen his animalibus adcommodari
properly moreover of-cattle the-name to-those animals to-be-applied
solet quae sunt aut ad vescendum apta, ut oves et sues;
is-wont which are either for eating apt as sheep and swine
aut in usu hominum commoda, ut equi et boves. Differt
or in the-use of-men convenient as horses and oxen it-differs
autem inter pecora et pecudes: nam veteres communiter
moreover between pecora and pecudes for the-ancients commonly
in significatione omnium animalium pecora dixerunt; pecudes
in the-signification of-all animals pecora said pecudes
autem tantum illa animalia quae eduntur, quasi pecuedes.
moreover only those animals which are-eaten as-if pecuedes
Generaliter autem omne animal pecus a pascendo vocatum.
generally moreover every animal pecus from feeding called
Iumenta nomina inde traxerunt, quod nostrum laborem vel
draft-animals the-names thence drew because our labor or
onus suo adiutorio subvectando vel arando iuvent. Nam bos
burden by-their help by-carrying or by-plowing they-help for the-ox
carpenta trahit, et durissimas terrae glebas vomere
wagons draws and the-hardest of-the-earth clods with-the-plowshare
vertit; equus et asinus portant onera, et hominum in
turns the-horse and the-ass carry burdens and of-men in
gradiendo laborem temperant. Unde et iumenta appellantur
walking the-labor temper whence also iumenta are-called
ab eo quod iuvent homines: sunt enim magnarum virium
from that that they-help men they-are for of-great strength

animalia. Item quoque armenta, vel quod sint apta armis,
animals likewise also herds either because they-be apt for-arms
id est bello; vel quod his in armis utimur. Alii armenta
that is for-war or because these in arms we-use others armenta
tantum boves intellegunt, ab arando, quasi aramenta [vel
only oxen understand from plowing as-if aramenta or
quod sint cornibus armata]. Discretio est autem inter
because they-be with-horns armed the-distinction is moreover between
armenta et greges: nam armenta equorum et boum sunt,
armenta and greges for armenta of-horses and of-oxen are
greges vero caprarum et ovium. Ovis molle pecus lanis,
greges but of-goats and of-sheep the-sheep a-soft animal with-wool
corpore inerme, animo placidum, ab oblatione dictum; eo
in-body unarmed in-spirit placid from offering called for-this
quod apud veteres [in] initio non tauri, sed oves in
that among the-ancients in the-beginning not bulls but sheep in
sacrificio mactarentur. Ex his quasdam bidentes vocant, eas
sacrifice were-slain of these some bidentes they-call those
quae inter octo dentes duos altiores habent, quas maxime
which among eight teeth two higher have which most-of-all
gentiles in sacrificium offerebant. Vervex vel a viribus
the-gentiles in sacrifice offered the-wether either from strength
dictus, quod ceteris ovibus sit fortior; vel quod sit vir,
called because than-the-other sheep it-be stronger or because it-be vir
id est masculus; vel quod vermem in capite habeat, quorum
that is male or because a-worm in the-head it-has whose
excitati pruritu invicem se concutiunt, et pugnantes cum
roused by-itching mutually themselves they-strike and fighting with
magno impetu feriunt. Aries vel ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἄρεος, id est a
great impetus strike the-ram either from the Ares that is from
Marte, vocatus: unde apud nos in gregibus masculi mares
Mars called whence among us in flocks the-males mares

dicuntur: sive quod hoc pecus a gentilibus primum aris est
are-called or because this animal by the-gentiles first on-altars was
immolatum. Aries, quod inponeretur aris. Unde est illud:
sacrificed aries because it-was-placed on-altars whence is that

Aries mactatur ad aram.
a-ram is-slain at the-altar

Agnum quamquam et Graeci vocent ἀπὸ τοῦ ἁγνοῦ, quasi
lamb although also the-Greeks call-it from the pure as-if
pium, Latini autem ideo hoc nomen habere putant,
pious the-Latins moreover therefore this name to-have think
eo quod prae ceteris animantibus matrem agnoscat; adeo
for-this that before the-other living-things the-mother it-recognizes so
ut etiam si in magno grege erraverit, statim balatu
that even if in a-great flock it-shall-have-strayed at-once by-bleating
recognoscat vocem parentis. Haedi ab edendo vocati. Parvi
it-recognizes the-voice of-the-parent kids from eating called little
enim pinguissimi sunt et saporis iucundi, unde [et edere,
for most-fat they-are and of-flavor pleasant whence also edere
unde] et edulium vocatur. Hircus lascivum animal et
whence also edulium is-called he-goat a-wanton animal and
petulcum et fervens semper ad coitum; cuius oculi ob
butting and burning always for coupling whose eyes for
libidine in transversum aspiciunt, unde et nomen traxit.
lust into askew look whence also the-name it-drew
Nam hirqui sunt oculorum anguli secundum Suetonium;
for hirqui are of-the-eyes the-corners according-to Suetonius
cuius natura adeo calidissima est ut adamantem lapidem,
whose nature so most-hot is that the-adamant stone
quem nec ignis, nec ferri domare valet materia, solus
which neither fire nor of-iron to-subdue is-able the-matter alone

huius cruor dissolvat. Maiores hirci Cinyphii dicuntur a
its gore dissolves the-larger he-goats Cinyphian are-called from
fluvio Cinyphe in Libya, ubi grandes nascuntur. Capros et
the-river Cinyps in Libya where large they-are-born capri and
capras a carpendis virgultis quidam dixerunt. Alii quod
caprae from cropping shrubs some have-said others because
captent aspera. Nonnulli a crepitu crurum, unde eas
they-seize rough-things some from the-crackling of-the-legs whence them
crepas vocitatas; quae sunt agrestes caprae, quas Graeci
crepae called which are wild goats whom the-Greeks
pro eo quod acutissime videant, id est ὀξυδερκέστερον,
for that that most-sharply they-see that is oxyderkesteron
δορκάς appellaverunt. Morantur enim in excelsis montibus,
dorkas called they-linger for on lofty mountains
et quamvis de longinquo, vident tamen omnes qui veniunt.
and although from far-off they-see yet all who come
Idem autem et capreae: idem ibices, quasi avices, eo
the-same moreover also capreae the-same ibexes as-if avices for-this
quod ad instar avium ardua et excelsa teneant et in
that in the-likeness of-birds steep-places and lofty they-hold and on
sublime inhabitent, ita ut de sublimitate vix humanis
high they-dwell so that from height scarcely to-human
obtutibus pateant. Unde et meridiana pars ibices aves
gazes they-lie-open whence also the-southern part ibexes birds
vocant, qui Nili fluentis inhabitant. Haec itaque animalia,
call which of-the-Nile the-streams inhabit these and-so animals
ut diximus, in petris altissimis commorantur, et si quando
as we-have-said on rocks highest linger and if ever
ferarum vel hominum adversitatem persenserint, de
of-wild-beasts or of-men the-hostility they-shall-have-perceived from
altissimis saxorum cacuminibus sese praecipitantes in
the-highest of-the-rocks summits themselves hurling on

suis [se] cornibus inlaesa suscipiunt. Cervi dicti ἀπὸ
their-own themselves horns unharmed they-catch stags called from
τῶν κεράτων, id est a cornibus; κέρατα enim Graece
the horns that is from horns kerata for in-Greek
cornua dicuntur. Hi serpentium inimici cum se gravatos
horns are-called these of-serpents the-enemies when themselves burdened
infirmitate persenserint, spiritu narium eos extrahunt
by-infirmity they-shall-have-perceived by-the-breath of-the-nostrils them they-draw-out
de cavernis, et superata pernicie veneni eorum pabulo
from the-caverns and with-overcome the-ruin of-the-poison their by-pasture
reparantur. Dictamnum herbam ipsi prodiderunt; nam eo
they-are-restored dittany the-herb they revealed for on-it
pasti excutiunt acceptas sagittas. Mirantur autem sibilum
fed they-shake-out the-received arrows they-wonder moreover at-the-whistle
fistularum. Erectis auribus acute audiunt, summissis nihil.
of-pipes with-ears erect sharply they-hear with-lowered nothing
Si quando inmensa flumina vel maria transnatant, capita
if ever immense rivers or seas they-swim-across the-heads
clunibus praecedentium superponunt sibique invicem
on-the-haunches of-those-going-before they-place and-to-each-other in-turn
succedentes nullum laborem ponderis sentiunt. Tragelaphi a
succeeding no labor of-weight they-feel tragelaphs by
Graecis nominati, qui quum eadem specie sint ut cervi,
the-Greeks named which though of-the-same appearance they-be as stags
villosos tamen habent armos ut hirci, et menta promissis
shaggy yet they-have shoulders as he-goats and chins with-long
hirta barbis, qui non alibi sunt quam circa Phasidem.
bristling beards which not elsewhere are than around the-Phasis
Hinnuli filii sunt cervorum [ab innuere dicti, quia ad
fawns the-young are of-stags from nodding called because at

nutum matris absconduntur]. Dammula vocata, quod de
the-nod of-the-mother they-are-hidden the-little-doe called because from
manu effugiat: timidum animal et inbelle; de quo Martialis:
the-hand it-escapes a-timid animal and unwarlike about which Martial

Dente timetur aper, defendunt cornua cervum:
by-the-tooth is-feared the-boar defend the-horns the-stag
inbelles damae quid nisi praeda sumus?
unwarlike does what except prey are-we

Lepus, levipes, quia velociter currit. Unde et Graece
hare light-foot because swiftly it-runs whence also in-Greek
pro cursu λαγώς dicitur; velox est enim animal et
for running lagos it-is-called swift it-is for an-animal and
satis timidum. Cuniculi genus agrestium animalium dicti
quite timid rabbits a-kind of-wild animals called
quasi caniculi, eo quod canum indagine capiantur vel
as-if caniculi for-this that of-dogs by-the-tracking they-are-caught or
excludantur ab speluncis. Sus dicta, quod pascua subigat,
are-driven-out from caves sow called because the-pastures it-works
id est terra subacta escas inquirat. Verres, quod grandes
that is with-the-earth worked foods it-seeks boar because great
habeat vires. Porcus, quasi spurcus. Ingurgitat enim se
it-has strength pig as-if foul it-gorges for itself
caeno, luto inmergit, limo inlinit. Horatius:
with-filth in-mud it-plunges with-slime it-smears Horace

Et amica luto sus.
and friend to-mud the-sow

Hinc etiam spurcitiam vel spurios nuncupatos. Porcorum
hence also filth or bastards named of-pigs
pilos setas vocamus, et setas a sue dictas: a quibus et
the-hairs bristles we-call and setae from the-sow called from which also
sutores vocantur, quod ex setis suant, id est consuant, pelles.
cobblers are-called because from bristles they-sew that is sew-together hides
Aper a feritate vocatus, ablata F littera et subrogata
wild-boar from fierceness called with-taken-away F the-letter and substituted
P. Unde et apud Graecos σύαγρος, id est ferus, dicitur.
P whence also among the-Greeks syagros that is wild is-called
Omne enim, quod ferum est et inmite, abusive agreste
all for which wild is and ungentle loosely rustic
vocamus. Iuvencus dictus, quod iuvare incipiat hominum usus
we-call bullock called because to-help it-begins of-men the-uses
in colenda terra, vel quia apud gentiles Iovi semper ubique
in tilling the-earth or because among the-gentiles to-Jupiter always everywhere
iuvencus inmolabatur, numquam taurus. Nam in victimis
a-bullock was-sacrificed never a-bull for in victims
etiam aetas considerabatur. Taurus Graecum nomen est, sicut
also the-age was-considered bull a-Greek name is as
et bos. Indicis tauris color fulvus est, volucris pernicitas,
also bos of-the-Indian bulls the-color tawny is winged swiftness
pilis in contrarium versis; caput circumflectunt flexibilitate
with-hairs in the-opposite-way turned the-head they-turn-round with-flexibility
qua volunt; tergi duritia omne telum respuunt inmiti
as they-will of-the-back by-the-hardness every weapon they-reject with-ungentle
feritate. Bovem Graeci βοῦν dicunt. Hunc Latini trionem
fierceness ox the-Greeks boun call this the-Latins trio
vocant, eo quod terram terat, quasi terionem. Naevius:
call for-this that the-earth it-treads as-if terio Naevius

Trionum hic moderator rusticus.
of-the-plow-oxen here the-driver rustic

Cuius latitudo pellium a mento ad crura palearia dicuntur,
whose breadth of-hides from the-chin to the-legs dewlaps are-called
a pelle ipsa, quasi pellearia; quod est generositatis in bove
from the-hide itself as-if pellearia which is of-nobility in the-ox
signum. Boum in sociis eximia pietas; nam alter alterum
a-sign of-oxen in partners remarkable devotion for the-one the-other
inquirit, cum quo ducere collo aratra consuevit, et
seeks with whom to-draw by-the-neck plows it-has-been-accustomed and
frequenti mugitu pium testatur affectum si forte defecerit.
by-frequent lowing pious it-testifies affection if perhaps it-shall-have-failed
Vacca dicta, quasi boacca. Est enim ex qualitate mobilium
cow called as-if boacca it-is for from the-quality of-mobile
nominum, sicut leo leaena, draco dracaena. Vitulus et
nouns as leo leaena draco dracaena vitulus and
vitula a viriditate vocati sunt, id est aetate viridi, sicut
vitula from greenness called are that is from-age green as
virgo. Vitulam ergo parvam esse et nondum enixam:
virgo heifer therefore small to-be and not-yet having-borne
nam enixa iuvenca est aut vacca. Bubali vocati per
for having-borne iuvenca it-is or vacca buffaloes called through
derivationem, quod sint similes boum; adeo indomiti ut prae
derivation because they-be like to-oxen so untamed that for
feritate iugum cervicibus non recipiant. Hos Africa procreat.
fierceness the-yoke on-the-necks not they-receive these Africa procreates
Uri agrestes boves sunt in Germania, habentes cornua in
uri wild oxen are in Germany having horns in
tantum protensa ut regiis mensis insigni capacitate ex
so-much extended that for-royal tables by-remarkable capacity from

eis gerulae fiant. [Dicti uri ἀπὸ τῶν ὀρέων, id est a
them vessels may-be-made called uri from the mountains that is from
montibus.] Camelis causa nomen dedit, sive quod quando
the-mountains to-camels a-cause the-name gave either because when
onerantur, ut breviores et humiles fiant, accubant,
they-are-loaded that shorter and low they-may-become they-lie-down
quia Graeci χαμαὶ humile et breve dicunt; sive quia curvus
because the-Greeks chamai low and short say or because curved
est dorso. Καμουρ enim verbo Graeco curvum significat.
it-is in-the-back kamour for by-the-word Greek curved signifies
Hos licet et aliae regiones mittant, sed Arabia plurimos.
these although also other regions send but Arabia very-many
Differunt autem sibi; nam Arabici bina tubera in
they-differ moreover from-each-other for the-Arabian two humps on
dorso habent, reliquarum regionum singula. Dromeda genus
the-back have of-the-remaining regions single dromedary a-kind
camelorum est, minoris quidem staturae, sed velocioris. Unde
of-camels is of-smaller indeed stature but swifter whence
et nomen habet; nam δρόμος Graece cursus et velocitas
also the-name it-has for dromos in-Greek running and swiftness
appellatur. Centum enim et amplius milia uno die pergere
is-called a-hundred for and more miles in-one day to-go
solet. Quod animal, sicut bos et ovis et camelus,
it-is-wont which animal as the-ox and the-sheep and the-camel
ruminat. Ruminatio autem dicta [est] a ruma, eminente
ruminates rumination moreover called is from ruma the-prominent
gutturis parte, per quam dimissus cibus a certis revocatur
of-the-throat part through which the-sent-down food by certain is-recalled
animalibus. Asinus et asellus a sedendo dictus, quasi
animals asinus and asellus from sitting called as-if
asedus: sed hoc nomen, quod magis equis conveniebat,
asedus but this name which more to-horses was-fitting

ideo hoc animal sumpsit quia priusquam equos caperent
therefore this animal took because before horses they-captured
homines, huic praesidere coeperunt. Animal quippe tardum
men over-this to-preside they-began an-animal indeed slow
et nulla ratione renitens, statim ut voluit sibi homo
and with-no reason resisting at-once as he-willed for-himself man
substravit. Onager interpretatur asinus ferus. Ὄνον quippe
subdued onager is-interpreted ass wild onon indeed
Graeci asinum vocant: ἄγριον ferum. Hos Africa habet
the-Greeks ass call agrion wild these Africa has
magnos et indomitos et in deserto vagantes. Singuli autem
great and untamed and in the-desert wandering single-ones moreover
feminarum gregibus praesunt. Nascentibus masculis zelant
of-females over-the-herds preside with-being-born males they-are-jealous
et testiculos eorum morsu detruncant, quod caventes
and the-testicles their by-bite they-cut-off which guarding-against
matres eos in secretis locis occultant. Asinos Arcadicos
the-mothers them in secret places hide asses Arcadian
dictos, eo quod ab Arcadia primum vecti sunt magni
called for-this that from Arcadia first carried they-were great
et alti. Minor autem asellus agro plus necessarius est,
and tall the-smaller moreover little-ass to-the-field more necessary is
quia et laborem tolerat et neglegentiam propemodum non
because both labor it-endures and neglect nearly not
recusat. Equi dicti, eo quod quando quadrigis iungebantur,
it-refuses horses called for-this that when to-quadrigas they-were-joined
aequabantur, paresque forma et similes cursu copulabantur.
they-were-matched and-equal in-form and like in-running were-coupled
Caballus antea cabo dictus, propter quod gradiens ungula
caballus earlier cabo called on-account-of that walking with-the-hoof
inpressa terram concavet, quod reliqua animalia non habent.
pressed the-earth it-hollows which the-remaining animals not have

Inde et sonipes, quod pedibus sonat. Vivacitas equorum
thence also sonipes because with-feet it-sounds the-liveliness of-horses
multa: exultant enim in campis; odorantur bellum; excitantur
much they-exult for in the-plains they-scent war they-are-roused
sono tubae ad proelium; voce accensi ad cursum
by-the-sound of-the-trumpet to battle by-the-voice kindled to the-race
provocantur; dolent cum victi fuerint; exultant cum
they-are-provoked they-grieve when conquered they-shall-have-been they-exult when
vicerint. Quidam hostes in bello sentiunt, adeo ut
they-shall-have-conquered some enemies in war perceive so that
adversarios morsu petant: aliqui etiam proprios dominos
the-adversaries by-bite they-attack some also their-own masters
recognoscunt, obliti mansuetudinis si mutentur; aliqui
recognize forgetting gentleness if they-be-changed some
praeter dominum dorso nullum recipiunt: interfectis vel
except the-master on-the-back none receive with-killed or
morientibus dominis multi lacrimas fundunt. Solum enim
dying masters many tears shed alone for
equum propter hominem lacrimare et doloris affectum
the-horse on-account-of man to-weep and of-grief the-affection
sentire. Unde [et] in Centauris equorum et hominum natura
to-feel whence also in the-Centaurs of-horses and of-men the-nature
permixta est. Solent etiam ex equorum vel maestitia
mixed is they-are-wont also from of-horses either the-sadness
vel alacritate eventum futurum dimicaturi colligere. Aetas
or the-eagerness the-outcome future those-about-to-fight to-gather the-age
longaeva equis Persicis, Hunnicis, Epirotis ac Siculis
long-lived for-horses Persian Hunnish Epirote and Sicilian
in annis ultra quinquaginta, brevior autem Hispanis ac
in years beyond fifty shorter moreover for-the-Spanish and
Numidis et Gallicis frequens opinio est. In generosis equis,
Numidian and Gallic the-common opinion is in noble horses

ut aiunt veteres, quattuor spectantur: forma, pulchritudo,
as say the-ancients four are-regarded form beauty
meritum atque color. Forma, ut sit validum corpus et
merit and color form that it-be a-strong body and
solidum, robori conveniens altitudo, latus longum, substrictus
solid to-strength fitting height side long drawn-in
maxime et rotundi clunis, pectus late patens, corpus omne
especially and round haunches chest widely lying-open body all
musculorum densitate nodosum, pes siccus et cornu concavo
of-muscles with-density knotty foot dry and with-horn hollow
solidatus. Pulchritudo, ut sit exiguum caput et siccum,
made-solid beauty that it-be small the-head and dry
pelle prope ossibus adhaerente, aures breves et argutae,
with-skin close to-the-bones adhering ears short and pointed
oculi magni, nares patulae, erecta cervix, coma densa et
eyes large nostrils wide erect neck mane thick and
cauda, ungularum soliditatis fixa rotunditas. Meritum, ut
tail of-the-hooves of-solidity the-fixed roundness merit that
sit animo audax, pedibus alacer, trementibus membris, quod
it-be in-spirit bold in-feet eager with-trembling limbs which
est fortitudinis indicium: quique ex summa quiete facile
is of-fortitude the-sign and-who from the-highest rest easily
concitetur, vel excitata festinatione non difficile teneatur.
be-roused or with-roused haste not with-difficulty be-held
Motus autem equi in auribus intellegitur, virtus in
the-motion moreover of-the-horse in the-ears is-understood the-strength in
membris trementibus. Color hic praecipue spectandus: badius,
the-limbs trembling color this especially to-be-regarded bay
aureus, roseus, myrteus, cervinus, gilvus, glaucus, scutulatus,
golden rose myrtle deer-colored dun gray dappled
canus, candidus, albus, guttatus, niger. Sequenti autem
hoary bright-white white spotted black in-the-following moreover

ordine, varius ex nigro badioque distinctus; reliquus
order varied from black and-bay distinguished the-remaining
varius color vel cinereus deterrimus. Badium autem antiqui
varied color or ash-gray the-worst badius moreover the-ancients
vadium dicebant, quod inter cetera animalia fortius vadat.
vadius called because among the-other animals more-strongly it-goes
Ipse est et spadix, quem phoenicatum vocant: et dictus
it is also spadix which phoenicatus they-call and called
spadix a colore palmae, quam Siculi spadicam vocant.
spadix from the-color of-the-palm which the-Sicilians spadica call
Glaucus vero est veluti pictos oculos habens et quodam
glaucus but is as-if painted eyes having and with-a-certain
splendore perfusos. Nam glaucum veteres dixerunt. Gilvus
splendor suffused for glaucum the-ancients said gilvus
autem melinus color est subalbidus. Guttatus, albus nigris
moreover honey-yellow color is whitish guttatus white with-black
intervenientibus punctis. Candidus autem et albus invicem
intervening spots candidus moreover and albus mutually
sibi differunt. Nam albus cum quodam pallore est:
from-each-other differ for albus with a-certain pallor is
candidus vero niveus et pura luce perfusus. Canus dictus,
candidus but snowy and with-pure light suffused canus called
quia ex candido colore et nigro est. Scutulatus vocatus
because from white color and black it-is scutulatus called
propter orbes, quos habent candidos inter purpuras. Varius,
on-account-of the-circles which they-have white among purples varius
quod vias habeat colorum inparium. Qui autem albos
because ways it-has of-colors unequal who moreover white
tantum pedes habent, petili appellantur; qui frontem albam,
only feet have petili are-called who a-forehead white
calidi. Cervinus est quem vulgo guaranen dicunt. Aeranen
calidi cervinus is which commonly guaranen they-call aeranen

idem vulgus vocat, quod in modum aerei sit coloris.
the-same crowd calls because in the-manner of-bronze it-be of-color
Myrteus autem est pressus in purpura. Dosina autem dictus,
myrteus moreover is pressed in purple dosina moreover called
quod sit color eius de asino: idem et cinereus. Sunt
because it-be the-color its from the-ass the-same also ash-gray they-are
autem hi de agresti genere orti, quos equiferos dicimus,
moreover these from the-wild kind sprung which equiferi we-call
et proinde ad urbanam dignitatem transire non possunt.
and accordingly to urban dignity to-pass not they-can
Mauron niger est; nigrum enim Graeci μαῦρον vocant.
mauron black is black for the-Greeks mauron call
Mannus vero equus brevior [est], quem vulgo brunicum
mannus but a-horse shorter is which commonly brunicus
vocant. Veredos antiqui dixerunt, quod veherent redas, id
they-call veredi the-ancients called because they-drew carriages that
est ducerent; vel quod vias publicas currant, per quas
is led or because the-roads public they-run through which
et redas ire solitum erat. Equorum tria sunt genera: unum
also carriages to-go customary it-was of-horses three are kinds one
generosum, proeliis et oneribus aptum; alterum vulgare atque
noble for-battles and burdens apt the-second common and
gregarium ad vehendum, non ad equitandum aptum; tertium
of-the-herd for drawing not for riding apt the-third
ex permixtione diversi generis ortum, quod etiam dicitur
from the-mixing of-diverse kind sprung which also is-called
bigenerum quia ex diversis nascitur, ut mulus. Mulus autem
bigenerum because from diverse-ones it-is-born as the-mule mule moreover
a Graeco tractum vocabulum habet. Graece enim hoc vel
from Greek drawn the-name has in-Greek for this or
quod iugo pistorum subactus tardas molendo ducat in gyro
because to-the-yoke of-millers subjected the-slow by-grinding it-draws in a-circle

molas. Iudaei asserunt quod Ana abnepos Esau equarum
millstones the-Jews assert that Anah great-great-grandson of-Esau of-mares
greges ab asinis in deserto ipse fecerit primus ascendi,
the-herds by asses in the-desert he-himself made first to-be-mounted
ut mulorum inde nova contra naturam animalia nascerentur.
that of-mules thence new against nature animals might-be-born
Onagros quoque ad hoc admissos esse ad asinas: et
onagers also for this admitted to-have-been to she-asses and
ipsum istiusmodi repperisse concubitum, ut velocissimi ex his
himself of-this-kind to-have-found the-coupling that most-swift from these
asini nascerentur. Industria quippe humana diversum animal
asses might-be-born industry indeed human a-diverse animal
in coitu coegit, sicque adulterina commixtione genus aliud
in coupling compelled and-so by-adulterous mingling a-kind another
repperit; sicut et Iacob contra naturam colorum similitudines
found as also Jacob against nature of-colors likenesses
procuravit. Nam tales foetus oves illius concipiebant,
procured for such offspring the-sheep his conceived
quales umbras arietum desuper ascendentium in aquarum
as the-shadows of-the-rams from-above mounting in of-the-waters
speculo contemplabantur. Denique et hoc ipsud in equarum
the-mirror they-contemplated finally also this very in of-mares
gregibus fieri fertur, ut generosos obiciant equos visibus
the-herds to-be-done is-said that noble they-set-before horses to-the-sights
concipientium, quo eorum similes concipere et creare
of-those-conceiving by-which to-them like to-conceive and to-create
possint. Nam et columbarum dilectores depictas ponunt
they-may-be-able for also of-doves the-lovers painted place
pulcherrimas columbas isdem locis, quibus illae versantur,
most-beautiful doves in-the-same places in-which they move
quo rapiente visu similes generent. Inde est quod
by-which with-snatching sight like they-may-generate thence it-is that

quidam gravidas mulieres iubent nullos intueri turpissimos
some pregnant women order no to-look-at most-ugly
animalium vultus, ut cynocephalos et simios, ne visibus
of-animals faces as cynocephali and apes lest to-the-sights
occurrentes similes foetus pariant. Hanc enim feminarum esse
occurring like offspring they-bear this for of-females to-be
naturam ut quales perspexerint sive mente conceperint in
the-nature that such-as they-have-looked-at or in-mind they-have-conceived in
extremo voluptatis aestu, dum concipiunt, talem et sobolem
the-extreme of-pleasure heat while they-conceive such also offspring
procreent. Etenim animal in usu Venerio formas extrinsecus
they-procreate for the-animal in use venereal the-forms from-outside
intus transmittit, eorumque satiata typis rapit species
within transmits and-of-them sated with-the-types snatches the-appearances
eorum in propriam qualitatem. In animantibus bigenera
their into its-own quality among living-things bigenera
dicuntur quae ex diversis nascuntur, ut mulus ex equa
are-called which from diverse-ones are-born as the-mule from a-mare
et asino; burdo ex equo et asina; hybridae ex apris et
and an-ass the-hinny from a-horse and a-she-ass hybrids from boars and
porcis; tityrus ex ove et hirco; musmo ex capra et
pigs the-tityrus from a-sheep and a-he-goat the-musmo from a-she-goat and
ariete. Est autem dux gregis.
a-ram it-is moreover the-leader of-the-flock

De bestiis

II · BEASTS

Beasts are named from the force with which they rage. Isidore describes the lion and its mercy, the tiger, the panther, the leopard, the rhinoceros, the elephant, the griffin, the chameleon, the camelopard, the lynx, the beaver, the bear, the wolf, the dog, the fox, the apes, and a number of lesser creatures, down to the cat, the ferret, and the badger.

Bestiarum vocabulum proprie convenit leonibus, pardis, tigribus,
of-beasts the-word properly fits lions leopards tigers
lupis et vulpibus canibusque et simiis ac ceteris, quae vel
wolves and foxes and-dogs and apes and the-others which either
ore vel unguibus saeviunt, exceptis serpentibus. Bestiae
with-mouth or with-claws rage with-excepted serpents beasts
dictae a vi, qua saeviunt. Ferae appellatae, eo quod
called from the-force by-which they-rage wild-beasts called for-this that
naturali utuntur libertate et desiderio suo ferantur. Sunt enim
natural they-use liberty and by-desire their are-borne are for
liberae eorum voluntates, et huc atque illuc vagantur et
free their wills and hither and thither they-wander and
quo animus duxerit, eo feruntur. Leonis vocabulum ex
whither the-spirit shall-have-led thither are-borne of-lion the-word from
Graeca origine inflexum est in Latinum. Graece enim λέων
Greek origin bent is into Latin in-Greek for leon
vocatur; et est nomen nothum, quia ex parte corruptum.
it-is-called and it-is a-name bastard because in part corrupted
Leaena vero totum Graecum est, sicut et dracaena. Ut autem
leaena but wholly Greek is as also dracaena that moreover
leaena lea dicatur usurpatum est a poetis. Leo autem Graece,
leaena lea be-called used is by the-poets lion moreover in-Greek

Latine rex interpretatur, eo quod princeps sit omnium
in-Latin king is-interpreted for-this that the-prince it-be of-all
bestiarum. Cuius genus trifarium dicitur. E quibus breves et
beasts whose kind threefold is-said of which the-short and
iuba crispa inbelles sunt; longi et coma simplici acres.
with-mane curly unwarlike are the-long and with-hair simple fierce
Animos eorum frons et cauda indicat. Virtus eorum in
the-spirits their the-brow and the-tail show the-strength their in
pectore; firmitas in capite. Septi a venatoribus terram
the-breast the-firmness in the-head hemmed-in by hunters the-earth
contuentur, quo minus conspectis venabulis terreantur.
they-gaze-at so-that less with-seen spears they-may-be-terrified
Rotarum timent strepitus, sed ignes magis. Cum dormierint,
of-wheels they-fear the-rumbling but fires more when they-shall-have-slept
vigilant oculi; cum ambulant, cauda sua cooperiunt vestigia
are-awake the-eyes when they-walk with-tail their they-cover footprints
sua, ne eos venator inveniat. Cum genuerint catulum,
their lest them the-hunter find when they-shall-have-begotten a-cub
tribus diebus et tribus noctibus catulus dormire fertur; tunc
for-three days and three nights the-cub to-sleep is-said then
deinde patris fremitu vel rugitu veluti tremefactus cubilis
thereupon of-the-father by-the-roaring or roar as-if shaken of-the-lair
locus suscitare dicitur catulum dormientem. Circa hominem
the-place to-rouse is-said the-cub sleeping toward man
leonum natura est ut nisi laesi nequeant irasci. Patet
of-lions the-nature is that unless hurt they-cannot to-be-angry lies-open
enim eorum misericordia exemplis assiduis. Prostratis enim
for their mercy by-examples constant the-prostrate for
parcunt; captivos obvios repatriare permittunt; hominem non
they-spare captives met to-return-home they-allow man not
nisi in magna fame interimunt. De quibus Lucretius:
unless in great hunger they-kill about which Lucretius

Scymnique leonum.
and-the-cubs of-lions

Tigris vocata propter volucrem fugam; ita enim nominant
tiger called on-account-of its-swift flight so for name
Persae et Medi sagittam. Est enim bestia variis distincta
the-Persians and Medes the-arrow it-is for a-beast with-various marked
maculis, virtute et velocitate mirabilis; ex cuius nomine
spots in-strength and swiftness marvelous from whose name
flumen Tigris appellatur, quod is rapidissimus sit omnium
the-river Tigris is-called because it most-rapid be of-all
fluviorum. Has magis Hyrcania gignit. Panther dictus, sive
rivers these most Hyrcania begets panther called either
quod omnium animalium sit amicus, excepto dracone,
because of-all animals it-be the-friend with-excepted the-dragon
sive quia et sui generis societate gaudet et ad
or because both of-its-own kind in-the-fellowship it-rejoices and to
eandem similitudinem quicquid accipit reddit. Πᾶν enim
the-same likeness whatever it-receives it-renders pan for
Graece omne dicitur. Bestia minutis orbiculis superpicta, ita
in-Greek all is-called a-beast with-tiny little-circles painted-over so
ut oculatis ex fulvo circulis, nigra vel alba distinguatur
that with-eyed from tawny circles black or white it-is-distinguished
varietate. Haec semel omnino parturit; cuius causae ratio
by-variety this once altogether gives-birth of-which cause the-reason
manifesta est. Nam cum in utero matris coaluere catuli
plain is for when in the-womb of-the-mother have-grown the-cubs
maturisque ad nascendum viribus pollent, odiunt temporum
and-with-ripe for being-born strengths are-strong they-hate of-times
moras; itaque oneratam foetibus vulvam tamquam obstantem
the-delays and-so loaded with-offspring the-womb as-if opposing

partui unguibus lacerant: effundit illa partum, seu potius
the-birth with-claws they-tear she pours-out the-birth or rather
dimittit, dolore cogente. Ita postea corruptis et cicatricosis
lets-go with-pain compelling so afterward with-corrupted and scarred
sedibus genitale semen infusum non haeret acceptum, sed
seats genital seed poured-in not clings received but
inritum resilit. Nam Plinius dicit animalia cum acutis
vain springs-back for Pliny says animals with sharp
unguibus frequentur parere non posse; vitiantur enim
claws often to-give-birth not to-be-able they-are-damaged for
intrinsecus se moventibus catulis. Pardus secundus post
from-within themselves with-moving cubs the-pard second after
pantherem est, genus varium ac velocissimum et praeceps
the-panther is a-kind varied and most-swift and headlong
ad sanguinem. Saltu enim ad mortem ruit. Leopardus
for blood by-a-leap for to death it-rushes the-leopard
ex adulterio leaenae et pardi nascitur, et tertiam originem
from the-adultery of-a-lioness and a-pard is-born and a-third origin
efficit; sicut et Plinius in Naturali Historia dicit, leonem
makes as also Pliny in the-Natural History says the-lion
cum parda, aut pardum cum leaena concumbere et ex
with the-she-pard or the-pard with the-lioness to-lie and from
utroque coitu degeneres partus creari, ut mulus et burdo.
each coupling degenerate offspring to-be-created as the-mule and the-hinny
Rhinoceron a Graecis vocatus. Latine interpretatur in nare
rhinoceros by the-Greeks called in-Latin is-interpreted on the-nose
cornu. Idem et monoceron, id est unicornus, eo quod
a-horn the-same also monoceros that is unicorn for-this that
unum cornu in media fronte habeat pedum quattuor ita
one horn in the-middle forehead it-has of-feet four so
acutum et validum ut quidquid inpetierit, aut ventilet
sharp and strong that whatever it-shall-have-attacked either it-tosses

aut perforet. Nam et cum elephantis saepe certamen habet,
or pierces for also with elephants often a-contest it-has
et in ventre vulneratum prosternit. Tantae autem esse
and in the-belly wounded lays-low of-so-great moreover to-be
fortitudinis ut nulla venantium virtute capiatur; sed, sicut
strength that by-no of-hunters skill it-is-caught but as
asserunt qui naturas animalium scripserunt, virgo puella
assert who the-natures of-animals have-written a-virgin girl
praeponitur, quae venienti sinum aperit, in quo ille omni
is-set-before which to-it-coming the-lap opens in which it with-all
ferocitate deposita caput ponit, sicque soporatus velut inermis
ferocity laid-down the-head places and-so lulled-to-sleep as-if unarmed
capitur. Elephantum Graeci a magnitudine corporis vocatum
is-caught elephant the-Greeks from the-size of-body called
putant, quod formam montis praeferat; Graece enim mons
think because the-form of-a-mountain it-shows in-Greek for mountain
λόφος dicitur. Apud Indos autem a voce barro vocatur;
lophos is-called among the-Indians moreover from the-voice barrus it-is-called
unde et vox eius barritus, et dentes ebur. Rostrum autem
whence also the-voice its barritus and the-teeth ivory the-trunk moreover
proboscida dicitur, quoniam illo pabulum ori admovet;
proboscis is-called since with-it fodder to-the-mouth it-moves
et est angui similis, vallo munitus eburno. Hos
and it-is to-a-snake like with-a-rampart fortified ivory these
boves Lucas dictos ab antiquis Romanis: boves, quia nullum
oxen Lucanian called by the-ancient Romans oxen because no
animal grandius videbant: Lucas, quia in Lucania illos
animal larger they-saw Lucanian because in Lucania them
primus Pyrrhus in proelio obiecit Romanis. Nam hoc genus
first Pyrrhus in battle set-against the-Romans for this kind
animantis in rebus bellicis aptum est; in eis enim Persae
of-animal in affairs warlike apt is on them for the-Persians

et Indi ligneis turribus conlocatis, tamquam de muro
and Indians with-wooden towers placed as-if from a-wall
iaculis dimicant. Intellectu autem et memoria multa
with-javelins fight in-understanding moreover and memory much
vigent. Gregatim incedunt; motu, quo valent, salutant;
they-thrive in-herds they-walk with-the-motion by-which they-can they-salute
murem fugiunt; aversi coeunt; quando autem parturiunt,
the-mouse they-flee turned-away they-couple when moreover they-give-birth
in aquis vel insulis dimittunt fetus propter dracones,
in waters or islands they-let-go the-offspring on-account-of dragons
quia inimici sunt et ab eis inplicati necantur; biennio
because enemies they-are and by them entwined they-are-killed for-two-years
autem portant fetus, nec amplius quam semel gignunt nec
moreover they-carry the-offspring nor more than once they-beget nor
plures, sed tantum unum; vivunt [autem] annos trecentos.
more but only one they-live moreover years three-hundred
Apud solam Africam et Indiam elephanti prius nascebantur;
in alone Africa and India elephants earlier were-born
nunc sola eos India gignit. Grypes vocatur, quod sit animal
now alone them India begets griffin is-called because it-be an-animal
pinnatum et quadrupes. Hoc genus ferarum in Hyperboreis
winged and four-footed this kind of-wild-beasts in the-Hyperborean
nascitur montibus. Omni parte corporis leones sunt; alis
is-born mountains in-every part of-the-body lions they-are in-wings
et facie aquilis similes; equis vehementer infesti. Nam
and face to-eagles like to-horses vehemently hostile for
et homines visos discerpunt. Chamaeleon non habet unum
also men seen they-tear-apart the-chameleon not has one
colorem, sed diversa est varietate consparsus, ut pardus.
color but with-diverse is variety sprinkled as the-pard
Dictus autem ita ∗∗∗ Huius chamaeleontis corpusculum
called moreover so (lacuna) of-this chameleon the-little-body

ad colores quos videt facillima conversione variatur, quod
to the-colors which it-sees by-most-easy change is-varied which
aliorum animalium non est ita ad conversionem facilis
of-other animals not is so for change easy
corpulentia. Camelopardus dictus, quod dum sit ut pardus
the-bodiliness camelopard called because though it-be as the-pard
albis maculis superaspersus, collo equo similis, pedibus
with-white spots sprinkled-over in-neck to-a-horse like in-feet
bubulis, capite tamen camelo est similis. Hunc Aethiopia
bovine in-head yet to-the-camel it-is like this Ethiopia
gignit. Lyncis dictus, quia in luporum genere numeratur;
begets lynx called because in of-wolves the-kind it-is-numbered
bestia maculis terga distincta ut pardus, sed similis lupo:
a-beast with-spots in-the-back marked as the-pard but like to-the-wolf
unde et ille λύκος, iste lyncis. Huius urinam convertere in
whence also that lykos this lynx of-this the-urine to-turn into
duritiam pretiosi lapidis dicunt, qui lyncurius appellatur,
the-hardness of-a-precious stone they-say which lyncurius is-called
quod et ipsas lynces sentire hoc documento probatur. Nam
which also the-very lynxes to-perceive by-this proof is-proved for
egestum liquorem harenis, in quantum potuerint,
the-voided liquid with-sands as-far as they-shall-have-been-able
contegunt, invidia quadam naturae ne talis egestio transeat
they-cover by-envy a-certain of-nature lest such voiding pass
in usum humanum. Lynces dicit Plinius Secundus extra
into use human lynxes says Pliny the-Second beyond
unum non admittere fetum. Castores a castrando dicti
one not to-admit offspring beavers from castrating called
sunt. Nam testiculi eorum apti sunt medicaminibus, propter
are for the-testicles their apt are for-medicines on-account-of
quos cum praesenserint venatorem, ipsi se castrant
which when they-shall-have-perceived the-hunter they themselves castrate

et morsibus vires suas amputant. De quibus Cicero
and with-bites strengths their cut-off about which Cicero
in Scauriana: 'Redimunt se ea parte corporis,
in the-Scaurian-speech they-ransom themselves with-that part of-the-body
propter quod maxime expetuntur.' Iuvenalis:
on-account-of which most-of-all they-are-sought Juvenal

Qui se
who himself
eunuchum ipse facit, cupiens evadere damno
a-eunuch himself makes desiring to-escape by-the-loss
testiculi.
of-the-testicle

Ipsi sunt et fibri, qui etiam Pontici canes vocantur. Ursus fertur
they are also fibri which also Pontic dogs are-called the-bear is-said
dictus quod ore suo formet fetus, quasi orsus. Nam
called because with-mouth its it-forms the-offspring as-if orsus for
aiunt eos informes generare partus, et carnem quandam nasci
they-say them shapeless to-beget births and flesh a-certain to-be-born
quam mater lambendo in membra conponit. Unde est illud:
which the-mother by-licking into members composes whence is that

Sic format lingua fetum cum protulit ursa.
so shapes with-the-tongue the-offspring when has-brought-forth the-she-bear

Sed hoc inmaturitas partus facit: denique tricesimo die
but this the-unripeness of-the-birth makes finally on-the-thirtieth day
generat. Unde evenit ut praecipitata fecunditas informes
it-begets whence it-happens that hastened fertility shapeless-things
procreet. Ursorum caput invalidum; vis maxima in brachiis
procreates of-bears the-head weak the-force greatest in the-arms

et lumbis; unde interdum erecti insistunt. Lupus Graeca
and loins whence sometimes erect they-stand the-wolf by-Greek
derivatione in linguam nostram transfertur. Lupos enim illi
derivation into tongue our is-transferred wolves for they
λύκους dicunt: λύκος autem Graece a moribus appellatur,
lykous call lykos moreover in-Greek from manners is-called
quod rabie rapacitatis quaequae invenerit trucidet.
because by-the-madness of-rapacity whatever it-shall-have-found it-slaughters
Alii lupos vocatos aiunt quasi leopos, quod quasi leonis,
others wolves called say as-if leopos because as-if of-the-lion
ita sit illi virtus in pedibus; unde et quidquid pede
so is to-it the-strength in the-feet whence also whatever with-foot
presserit non vivit. Rapax autem bestia et cruoris
it-shall-have-pressed not lives rapacious moreover a-beast and of-gore
appetens; de quo rustici aiunt vocem hominem perdere, si
desirous about which rustics say the-voice a-man to-lose if
eum lupus prior viderit. Unde et subito tacenti dicitur:
him the-wolf first shall-have-seen whence also suddenly to-one-silent it-is-said
'Lupus in fabula.' Certe si se praevisum senserit,
the-wolf in the-tale surely if itself foreseen it-shall-have-perceived
deponit feritatis audaciam. Lupi toto anno non amplius
it-lays-down of-ferocity the-boldness wolves in-the-whole year not more
dies duodecim coeunt; famem diu portant, et post longa
days twelve couple hunger long they-bear and after long
ieiunia multum devorant. Lupos Aethiopia mittit cervice
fasts much they-devour wolves Ethiopia sends with-neck
iubatos, et tanto varios ut nullum colorem illis abesse
maned and so varied that no color to-them to-be-absent
dicant. Canis nomen Latinum Graecam etymologiam habere
they-say of-the-dog the-name Latin a-Greek etymology to-have
videtur; Graece enim κύων dicitur. Licet eum quidam a
seems in-Greek for kyon it-is-called although it some from

canore latratus appellatum existiment, eo quod insonat;
the-singing of-barking called think for-this that it-sounds
unde et canere. Nihil autem sagacius canibus; plus enim
whence also canere nothing moreover more-sagacious than-dogs more for
sensus ceteris animalibus habent. Namque soli sua nomina
sense than-the-other animals they-have for alone their names
recognoscunt; dominos suos diligunt; dominorum tecta
they-recognize masters their they-love of-the-masters the-houses
defendunt; pro dominis suis se morti obiciunt; voluntarie
they-defend for masters their themselves to-death they-expose willingly
cum domino ad praedam currunt; corpus domini sui etiam
with the-master to the-prey they-run the-body of-master their even
mortuum non relinquunt. Quorum postremo naturae est
dead not they-leave of-which lastly of-the-nature it-is
extra homines esse non posse. In canibus duo sunt: aut
outside men to-be not to-be-able in dogs two-things there-are either
fortitudo, aut velocitas. Catuli abusive dicuntur quarumlibet
strength or swiftness catuli loosely are-called of-whatever
bestiarum filii. Nam proprie catuli canum sunt, per
beasts the-young for properly catuli of-dogs are through
diminutionem dicti. Lycisci autem dicuntur, ut ait Plinius,
diminution called lycisci moreover are-called as says Pliny
canes nati ex lupis et canibus, cum inter se forte
dogs born from wolves and dogs when among themselves by-chance
miscuntur. Solent et Indi feminas canes noctu in
they-are-mixed they-are-wont also the-Indians female dogs by-night in
silvis alligatas admitti ad tigres bestias, a quibus
the-woods tied to-let-be-admitted to tigers beasts by which
insiliri, et nasci ex eodem foetu canes adeo acerrimos et
to-be-covered and to-be-born from the-same offspring dogs so most-fierce and
fortes ut in conplexu leones prosternant. Vulpes dicta, quasi
strong that in embrace lions they-lay-low fox called as-if

volupes. Est enim volubilis pedibus, et numquam rectis
volupes it-is for rolling in-feet and never by-straight
itineribus, sed tortuosis anfractibus currit, fraudulentum
paths but by-tortuous windings it-runs a-fraudulent
animal insidiisque decipiens. Nam dum non habuerit
animal and-with-ambushes deceiving for when not it-shall-have-had
escam, fingit mortem, sicque descendentes quasi ad cadaver
food it-feigns death and-so descending as-if to a-corpse
aves rapit et devorat. Simiae Graecum nomen est, id est
birds it-seizes and devours simia a-Greek name is that is
pressis naribus; unde et simias dicimus, quod suppressis
with-pressed nostrils whence also apes we-call because with-pressed
naribus sint et facie foeda, rugis turpiter follicantibus;
nostrils they-be and in-face foul with-wrinkles basely puckering
licet et capellarum sit pressum habere nasum. Alii simias
although also of-she-goats it-be pressed to-have the-nose others apes
Latino sermone vocatos arbitrantur, eo quod multa in eis
in-Latin speech called think for-this that much in them
similitudo rationis humanae sentitur; sed falsum est. Hi
likeness of-reason human is-felt but false it-is these
elementorum sagaces nova luna exultant, media et cava
of-the-elements sagacious at-the-new moon exult at-the-half and hollow
tristantur. Fetus, quos amant, ante se gestant; neglecti
are-sad the-offspring which they-love before themselves they-carry the-neglected
circa matrem haerent. Horum genera quinque sunt, ex quibus
around the-mother cling of-these the-kinds five are of which
cercopitheci caudas habent; simia enim cum cauda est, quam
the-cercopitheci tails have the-ape for with a-tail is which
quidam cluram vocant. Sphingae villosae sunt comis, mammis
some clura call the-sphinxes shaggy are with-hair with-breasts
prominentibus, dociles ad feritatis oblivionem. Cynocephali
prominent docile for of-ferocity forgetfulness the-cynocephali

et ipsi similes simiis, sed facie ad modum canis; unde
also themselves like to-apes but in-face after the-manner of-a-dog whence
et nuncupati. Satyri facie admodum grata, et gesticulatis
also named the-satyrs with-face very pleasing and with-gesticulated
motibus inquieti. Callitriches toto paene aspectu a ceteris
motions restless the-callitriches in-whole nearly aspect from the-others
distant. Sunt enim in facie producta barba et lata cauda.
differ they-are for in face with-long beard and broad tail
Leontophonos bestia modica; et ex eo ita vocata quia
the-leontophonos a-beast small and from this so called because
capta exuritur, eiusque cinere aspersae carnes et positae
caught it-is-burned and-with-its ash sprinkled meats and placed
per conpita semitarum leones necant, si quantulumcumque
through the-crossroads of-paths lions kill if however-little
ex illis sumpserint. Histrix animal in Africa erinacii
from them they-shall-have-taken the-porcupine an-animal in Africa to-the-hedgehog
simile, vocatum ab stridore spinarum, quas tergo laxatas
like called from the-whirring of-the-spines which from-the-back loosened
emittit ut canes vulneret insequentes. Enhydros bestiola
it-sends-forth that dogs it-may-wound pursuing the-enhydros a-little-beast
ex eo nuncupata, quod in aquis versetur, et maxime in
from this named because in waters it-dwells and most in
Nilo. Quae si invenerit dormientem corcodilum, volutat
the-Nile which if it-shall-have-found sleeping a-crocodile rolls
se in luto primum, et intrat per os eius in ventrem,
itself in mud first and enters through the-mouth its into the-belly
et carpens omnia intranea eius, sic moritur. Ichneumon
and plucking all the-insides its so it-dies the-ichneumon

Graece vocatus, eo quod odore suo et salubria
in-Greek called for-this that by-scent its both the-wholesome-things
ciborum et venenosa produntur. De quo Dracontius ait: —
of-foods and the-poisonous are-betrayed about which Dracontius says

Praecidit suillus vim cuiuscumque veneni.
cuts-off the-suillus the-force of-whatever poison

Suillus autem a saetis est nuncupatus. Hic etiam serpentes
suillus moreover from bristles is named this also serpents
insequitur; qui, cum adversus aspidem pugnat, caudam erigit,
pursues which when against the-asp it-fights the-tail raises
quam aspis maxime incipit observare quasi minantem; ad
which the-asp most begins to-watch as-if threatening to
quam cum vim suam transfert, decepta corripitur. Musio
which when force its it-transfers deceived it-is-seized musio
appellatus, quod muribus infestus sit. Hunc vulgus cattum
called because to-mice hostile it-be this the-crowd cat
a captura vocant. Alii dicunt, quod cattat, id est videt.
from catching call others say because it-cattat that is sees
Nam tanto acute cernit ut fulgore luminis noctis tenebras
for so sharply it-discerns that by-the-gleam of-light of-night the-darkness
superet. Unde a Graeco venit catus, id est ingeniosus,
it-overcomes whence from the-Greek comes catus that is ingenious
ἀπὸ τοῦ καίεσθαι. Furo a furvo dictus; unde et fur.
from the to-be-burned ferret from furvus called whence also thief
Tenebrosos enim et occultos cuniculos effodit, et eicit
dark for and hidden burrows it-digs-out and casts-out
praedam quam invenerit. Melo, vel quod sit rotundissimo
the-prey which it-shall-have-found badger either because it-be with-most-round
membro, vel quod favos petat et assidue mella captet.
limb or because honeycombs it-seeks and constantly honey catches

De minutis animantibus

III · SMALL ANIMALS

The mouse, the shrew, the weasel, the spider-mouse, the solifuga, the mole, the dormouse, the hedgehog, the cricket, the ant, and the ant-lion, each with its name and habits.

Mus pusillum animal. Graecum illi nomen est; quidquid vero
mouse a-tiny animal Greek its name is whatever but
ex eo trahit Latinum fit. Alii dicunt mures quod ex
from it it-draws Latin becomes others say mures because from
humore terrae nascantur; nam mus terra, unde et humus.
the-moisture of-the-earth they-are-born for mus earth whence also humus
His in plenilunio iecur crescit, sicut quaedam maritima
to-these in the-full-moon the-liver grows as certain sea-things
augentur, quae rursus minuente luna deficiunt. Sorex Latinum
are-increased which again with-waning moon fail shrew Latin
est, eo quod rodat et in modum serrae praecidat. Antiqui
it-is for-this that it-gnaws and in the-manner of-a-saw cuts-off the-ancients
autem soricem sauricem dicebant, sicut et clodum claudum.
moreover soricem sauricem said as also clodum claudum
Mustela dicta, quasi mus longus; nam telum a longitudine
weasel called as-if mouse long for telum from length
dictum. Haec ingenio subdola in domibus, ubi nutrit
called this in-wit crafty in houses where it-nourishes
catulos suos, transfert mutatque sedem. Serpentes etiam
young its it-moves and-changes its-seat serpents also
et mures persequitur. Duo autem sunt genera mustelarum;
and mice it-pursues two moreover are kinds of-weasels
alterum enim silvestre est distans magnitudine, quod Graeci
the-one for woodland is differing in-size which the-Greeks

ἴκτιδας vocant; alterum in domibus oberrans. Falso autem
iktidas call the-other in houses wandering falsely moreover
opinantur qui dicunt mustelam ore concipere, aure
think who say the-weasel by-the-mouth to-conceive by-the-ear
effundere partum. Mus araneum, cuius morsu aranea. Est
to-pour-out the-offspring the-mouse spidery whose by-bite the-spider there-is
in Sardinia animal perexiguum, aranei forma, quae solifuga
in Sardinia an-animal very-small of-the-spider in-form which solifuga
dicitur, quod diem fugiat. In metallis argentariis plurima
is-called because the-day it-flees in mines of-silver most-abundant
est, occultim reptans, et per inprudentiam supersedentibus
it-is secretly creeping and through heedlessness to-those-sitting-on
pestem facit. Talpa dicta, quod sit damnata caecitate perpetua
a-plague makes mole called because it-be condemned to-blindness perpetual
tenebris. Est enim absque oculis, semper terram fodit, et
in-darkness it-is for without eyes always the-earth it-digs and
humum egerit, et radices subter frugibus comedit; quam
the-soil carries-out and the-roots underneath the-crops eats which
Graeci ἀσφάλακα vocant. Glires dicti sunt quia pingues eos
the-Greeks aspalaka call dormice called are because fat them
efficit somnus; nam gliscere dicimus crescere. Hieme enim tota
makes sleep for gliscere we-say to-grow in-winter for whole
dormiunt et inmobiles quasi mortui iacent, tempore aestivo
they-sleep and motionless as-if dead lie in-time summer
reviviscunt. Ericium animal spinis coopertum, quod exinde
they-revive hedgehog an-animal with-spines covered which thence
dicitur nominatum, eo quod subrigit se quando spinis
is-said named for-this that it-raises itself when with-spines
suis clauditur, quibus undique protectus est contra insidias.
its it-is-enclosed by-which on-all-sides protected it-is against ambushes
Nam statim ut aliquid praesenserit, primum se subrigit,
for at-once as something it-shall-have-sensed first itself it-raises

atque in globum conversus in sua se arma recolligit.
and into a-ball turned into its-own itself arms gathers
Huius prudentia quaedam est; nam dum absciderit
of-this a-prudence certain there-is for when it-shall-have-cut-off
uvam de vite, supinus sese volutat super eam, et sic
a-grape from the-vine on-its-back itself it-rolls upon it and so
eam exhibet natis suis. Gryllus nomen a sono vocis
it shows to-young its the-cricket the-name from the-sound of-its-voice
habet. Hic retro ambulat, terram terebrat, stridet noctibus.
has this backward walks the-earth bores sbrills by-nights
Vena⟨n⟩tur eum formica circumligata capillo in cavernam
they-hunt it with-an-ant bound by-a-hair into the-hole
eius coniecta, afflato prius pulvere ne se abscondat; ita
its thrown with-blown first dust lest itself it-hide so
formicae conplexibus trahitur. Formica dicta, ab eo quod
of-the-ant by-the-embraces it-is-drawn ant called from that that
ferat micas farris. Cuius sollertia multa; providet enim
it-carries grains of-spelt whose skill much foresees for
in futurum, et praeparat aestate quod hieme comedat; in
for the-future and prepares in-summer what in-winter it-may-eat in
messe autem eligit triticum, hordeum non tangit; dum
the-harvest moreover it-chooses wheat barley not it-touches when
pluit ei super frumentum, totum eicit. Dicuntur in
it-rains on-it upon the-grain all it-casts-out are-said in
Aethiopia esse formicae ad formam canis quae arenas aureas
Ethiopia to-be ants after the-form of-a-dog which sands golden
pedibus eruunt, quas custodiunt ne quis auferat, captantesque
with-feet dig-up which they-guard lest anyone carry-off and-those-seizing
ad necem persequuntur. Formicoleon ob hoc vocatus, quia
to death they-pursue the-ant-lion for this called because
est vel formicarum leo vel certe formica pariter et leo.
it-is either of-ants the-lion or surely an-ant equally and a-lion

Est enim animal parvum formicis satis infestum, quod
it-is for an-animal small to-ants quite hostile which
se in pulvere abscondit, et formicas frumenta gestantes
itself in the-dust hides and ants grain carrying
interficit. Proinde autem leo et formica vocatur, quia aliis
kills accordingly moreover lion and ant it-is-called because to-other
animalibus ut formica est, formicis autem ut leo est.
animals as an-ant it-is to-ants moreover as a-lion it-is

De serpentibus

IV · SERPENTS

Snake, serpent, and colubra are named, and Isidore describes the dragon, the basilisk, the viper, the kinds of asp, the cerastes, the scytale, the amphisbaena, the water snakes, the boa, the iaculus, and many others, then the lizards and the salamander. He ends with the natures of serpents: their cold, their poison, their sharp sense, and the sloughing of their skins.

Anguis vocabulum omnium serpentium genus quod plicari
snake the-word of-all serpents the-kind which to-be-folded
et contorqui potest; et inde anguis quod angulosus sit et
and to-be-twisted can and thence anguis because angular it-be and
numquam rectus. Angues autem apud gentiles pro geniis
never straight snakes moreover among the-gentiles for the-geniuses
locorum erant habiti semper, unde Persius:
of-places were held always whence Persius

Pinge duos angues: pueri, sacer est locus.
paint two snakes boys sacred is the-place

Colubrum ab eo dictum, quod colat umbras, vel quod
colubra from that called because it-inhabits shadows or because
in lubricos tractus flexibus sinuosis labatur. Nam lubricum
into slippery tracts with-bends winding it-glides for slippery
dicitur quidquid labitur dum tenetur, ut piscis, serpens.
is-called whatever glides while it-is-held as a-fish a-serpent
Serpens autem nomen accepit quia occultis accessibus serpit,
serpent moreover the-name received because by-hidden approaches it-creeps
non apertis passibus, sed squamarum minutissimis nisibus
not by-open steps but of-scales by-the-tiniest efforts
repit. Illa autem quae quattuor pedibus nituntur, sicut lacerti
it-crawls those moreover which on-four feet lean as lizards
et stiliones, non serpentes, sed reptilia nominantur. Serpentes
and newts not serpents but reptiles are-named serpents
autem reptilia sunt, quia ventre et pectore reptant. Quorum
moreover reptiles are because with-belly and breast they-crawl of-which
tot venena quot genera, tot pernicies quot
as-many poisons as-many-as kinds as-many destructions as-many-as
species, tot dolores quot colores habentur. Draco
species as-many pains as-many-as colors are-held the-dragon
maior cunctorum serpentium, sive omnium animantium super
greater of-all serpents or of-all living-things upon
terram. Hunc Graeci δράκοντα vocant; unde et derivatum est
the-earth this the-Greeks drakonta call whence also derived it-is
in Latinum ut draco diceretur. Qui saepe ab speluncis
into Latin that draco it-should-be-called which often from caves
abstractus fertur in aerem, concitaturque propter eum aer.
drawn is-borne into the-air and-is-stirred on-account-of it the-air

Est autem cristatus, ore parvo, et artis fistulis, per
it-is moreover crested with-mouth small and with-narrow pipes through
quas trahit spiritum et linguam exerat. Vim autem non
which it-draws breath and the-tongue it-thrusts-out the-force moreover not
in dentibus, sed in cauda habet, et verbere potius quam
in the-teeth but in the-tail it-has and by-a-lash rather than
rictu nocet. Innoxius autem est a venenis, sed ideo huic
by-a-gape it-harms harmless moreover it-is from poisons but therefore for-this
ad mortem faciendam venena non esse necessaria, quia si
for death to-be-made poisons not to-be necessary because if
quem ligarit occidit. A quo nec elephans tutus est
anyone it-shall-have-bound it-kills from which not-even the-elephant safe is
sui corporis magnitudine; nam circa semitas delitescens,
of-its-own of-body by-the-size for around paths lurking
per quas elephanti soliti gradiuntur, crura eorum nodis
through which elephants accustomed walk the-legs their with-knots
inligat, ac suffocatos perimit. Gignitur autem in Aethiopia
it-binds and suffocated kills it-is-begotten moreover in Ethiopia
et India in ipso incendio iugis aestus. Basiliscus Graece,
and India in the-very burning of-continual heat basilisk in-Greek
Latine interpretatur regulus, eo quod rex serpentium sit,
in-Latin is-interpreted little-king for-this that the-king of-serpents it-be
adeo ut eum videntes fugiant, quia olfactu suo eos necat;
so that it seeing they-flee because by-smell its them it-kills
nam et hominem vel si aspiciat interimit. Siquidem et eius
for also a-man even if it-look-at it-destroys since also its
aspectu nulla avis volans inlaesa transit, sed quam procul
at-the-sight no bird flying unharmed passes but however far
sit, eius ore conbusta devoratur. A mustelis tamen
it-be its by-the-mouth burned it-is-devoured by weasels yet
vincitur, quas illic homines inferunt cavernis in quibus
it-is-conquered which there men bring-in to-the-caverns in which

delitescit; itaque eo visu fugit, quem illa persequitur et
it-lurks and-so at-that sight it-flees whom she pursues and
occidit. Nihil enim parens ille rerum sine remedio constituit.
kills nothing for parent that of-things without remedy established
Est autem longitudine semipedalis; albis maculis lineatus.
it-is moreover in-length half-a-foot with-white spots lined
Reguli autem, sicut scorpiones, arentia quaeque sectantur, et
reguli moreover as scorpions dry-things all pursue and
postquam ad aquas venerint, ὑδροφόβους et lymphaticos
after to waters they-shall-have-come water-fearing and frenzied
faciunt. Sibilus idem est qui et regulus. Sibilo enim occidit,
they-make sibilus the-same is who also regulus by-hissing for it-kills
antequam mordeat vel exurat. Vipera dicta, quod vi pariat.
before it-bite or burn viper called because by-force it-bears
Nam et cum venter eius ad partum ingemuerit, catuli
for also when the-belly its for birth shall-have-groaned the-young
non expectantes maturam naturae solutionem conrosis eius
not waiting-for the-ripe of-nature release with-gnawed its
lateribus vi erumpunt cum matris interitu. Lucanus:
sides by-force burst-out with of-the-mother the-death Lucan

Viperei coeunt, abrupto corpore, nodi.
viperish couple with-broken body knots

Fertur autem quod masculus ore inserto viperae semen
it-is-said moreover that the-male with-mouth inserted into-the-viper seed
expuat; illa autem ex voluptate libidinis in rabiem versa
spits-out she moreover from the-pleasure of-lust into madness turned
caput maris ore receptum praecidit. Ita fit ut
the-head of-the-male in-her-mouth received cuts-off so it-happens that
parens uterque pereat; masculus, dum coit, dum parturit,
parent each perishes the-male while he-couples while she-gives-birth

femina. Ex vipera autem fiunt pastilli, qui θηριακοὶ
the-female from the-viper moreover are-made lozenges which theriakoi
vocantur a Graecis. Aspis vocata, quod morsu venena inmittat
are-called by the-Greeks asp called because by-bite poisons it-sends-in
et spargat; ἰὸς enim Graeci venenum dicunt: et inde aspis,
and sprinkles ios for the-Greeks poison call and thence aspis
quod morsu venenato interimat. Huius diversa genera et
because by-bite poisoned it-kills of-this diverse kinds and
species, et dispares effectus ad nocendum. Fertur autem
species and unequal effects for harming it-is-said moreover
aspis, cum coeperit pati incantatorem, qui eam quibusdam
the-asp when it-has-begun to-suffer the-enchanter who it with-certain
carminibus propriis evocat ut eam de caverna producat:
spells proper calls-forth that it from the-cave he-may-bring-forth
illa, cum exire noluerit, unam aurem in terram
it when to-go-out it-shall-not-have-wished one ear to the-ground
premit, alteram cauda obturat et operit, atque [ita]
presses the-other with-the-tail stops and covers and so
voces illas magicas non audiens non exit ad incantantem.
voices those magic not hearing not goes-out to the-enchanter
Dipsas, genus aspidis, qui Latine situla dicitur, quia quem
dipsas a-kind of-asp which in-Latin situla is-called because whom
momorderit siti perit. Hypnalis, genus aspidis, dicta quod
it-shall-have-bitten of-thirst perishes hypnalis a-kind of-asp called because
somno necat. Hanc sibi Cleopatra adposuit, et ita morte
by-sleep it-kills this to-herself Cleopatra applied and so by-death
quasi somno soluta est. Haemorrhois aspis nuncupatus
as-if by-sleep freed was haemorrhois asp named
quod sanguinem sudet qui ab eo morsus fuerit, ita ut
because blood sweats who by it bitten shall-have-been so that
dissolutis venis, quidquid vitae est, per sanguinem evocet.
with-dissolved veins whatever of-life is through blood it-calls-forth

Graece enim sanguis αἷμα dicitur. Prester aspis semper
in-Greek for blood haima is-called prester the-asp always
ore patenti et vaporanti currit. Cuius poeta sic meminit:
with-mouth open and steaming runs of-which the-poet so is-mindful

Oraque distendens avidus fumantia prester.
and-the-mouth stretching greedy smoking the-prester

Hic quem percusserit distenditur, enormique corpulentia
this whom it-shall-have-struck is-distended and-by-enormous bulk
necatur; extuberatum enim putredo sequitur. Seps, tabificus
is-killed the-swollen for putrefaction follows seps the-wasting
aspis, qui dum momorderit hominem, statim eum consumit,
asp which when it-shall-have-bitten a-man at-once him consumes
ita ut liquefiat totus in ore serpentis. Cerastes serpens
so that he-is-melted whole in the-mouth of-the-serpent cerastes the-serpent
dictus, eo quod in capite cornua habeat similia arietum;
called for-this that on the-head horns it-has like of-rams
κέρατα enim Graeci cornua vocant: sunt autem illi
kerata for the-Greeks horns call there-are moreover to-it
quadrigemina cornicula, quorum ostentatione, veluti esca,
fourfold little-horns whose by-display as-if by-bait
inlice sollicitata animalia perimit. Totum enim corpus tegit
enticing stirred animals it-kills the-whole for body it-covers
arenis, nec ullum indicium sui praebet, nisi ex ea parte
with-sands nor any sign of-itself it-offers except from that part
qua invitatas aves vel animalia capit. Est autem flexuosus
by-which the-invited birds or animals it-catches it-is moreover flexible
plus quam alii serpentes, ita ut spinam non habere videatur.
more than other serpents so that a-spine not to-have it-seems
Scytale serpens vocata, quod tanta praefulget tergi
scytale the-serpent called because with-such it-shines of-the-back

varietate ut notarum gratia aspicientes retardet; et quia
variety that of-the-markings for-the-sake those-looking it-delays and because
reptando pigrior est, quos adsequi non valet, miraculo sui
by-crawling slower it-is whom to-overtake not it-is-able by-the-marvel of-itself
stupentes capit. Tanti autem fervoris est ut etiam hiemis
stupefied it-catches of-so-much moreover of-heat it-is that even of-winter
tempore exuvias corporis ferventis exponat. De quo Lucanus:
in-the-time the-sloughs of-its-body hot it-sets-out about which Lucan

Et scytale sparsis etiam nunc sola pruinis
and the-scytale with-scattered even now alone frosts
exuvias positura suas.
sloughs about-to-lay-down its

Amphisbaena dicta, eo quod duo capita habeat, unum
amphisbaena called for-this that two heads it-has one
in loco suo, alterum in cauda, currens ex utroque capite,
in place its the-other in the-tail running from each head
tractu corporis circulato. Haec sola serpentium frigori se
with-the-course of-body circled this alone of-serpents to-cold itself
committit, prima omnium procedens. De qua idem Lucanus:
commits first of-all going-forth about which the-same Lucan

Et gravis in geminum vergens caput amphisbaena.
and heavy into twin turning head the-amphisbaena

Cuius oculi lucent veluti lucernae. Enhydris colubra in aqua
whose eyes shine like lamps enhydris a-snake in water
vivens; Graeci enim aquam ὕδωρ vocant. Hydros aquatilis
living the-Greeks for water hydor call hydros a-water
serpens, a quo icti obturgescunt; cuius quidam morbum
serpent by which struck-ones swell whose some disease

boam dicunt, eo quod fimo bovis remedietur. Hydra
boa call for-this that by-the-dung of-the-ox it-is-remedied hydra
draco multorum capitum, qualis fuit in Lerna palude
a-dragon of-many heads such-as was in the-Lerna marsh
provinciae Arcadiae. Haec Latine excetra dicitur, quod uno
of-the-province of-Arcadia this in-Latin excetra is-called because with-one
caeso tria capita excrescebant. Sed hoc fabulosum est; nam
cut three heads grew-out but this fabulous is for
constat Hydram locum fuisse evomentem aquas, vastantes
it-is-agreed the-Hydra a-place to-have-been vomiting-forth waters laying-waste
vicinam civitatem, in quo, uno meatu clauso, multi
a-neighboring city in which with-one passage closed many
erumpebant: quod Hercules videns loca ipsa exussit,
burst-out which Hercules seeing the-places themselves burned
et sic aquae clausit meatus. Nam Hydra ab aqua dicta
and so of-the-water closed the-passages for Hydra from water called
est. Chelydros serpens, qui et chersydros, quasi †cerim†,
is chelydros a-serpent which also chersydros as-if cerim
quia et in aquis et in terris moratur; nam χέρσον dicunt
because both in waters and on lands it-dwells for cherson call
Graeci terram, ὕδωρ aquam. Hic per quam labitur terram,
the-Greeks earth hydor water this through which it-glides the-earth
fumare facit: quam sic Macer describit:
to-smoke makes which so Macer describes

Seu terga expirant spumantia virus,
whether the-backs breathe-out foaming poison
seu terra fumat, qua teter labitur anguis.
or the-earth smokes where foul glides the-snake

Et Lucanus:
and Lucan

Tractique via fumante chelydri.
and-of-the-drawn on-the-way smoking of-the-chelydrus

Semper autem directus ambulat; nam si torserit se,
always moreover straight it-walks for if it-shall-have-twisted itself
dum currit, statim crepat. Natrix serpens aquam veneno
while it-runs at-once it-bursts natrix a-serpent water with-poison
inficiens; in quocumque enim fonte fuerit, eum veneno
infecting in whatever for spring it-shall-have-been it with-poison
inmiscit. De quo Lucanus:
it-mingles about which Lucan

Natrix violator aquae.
the-natrix violator of-water

Cenchris serpens inflexuosa, quae semper rectum iter efficit.
cenchris a-serpent unbending which always a-straight way makes
De qua Lucanus:
about which Lucan

Et semper recto lapsurus limite cenchris.
and always by-straight about-to-glide path the-cenchris

Parias serpens quae semper in cauda ambulat et sulcum
parias a-serpent which always on the-tail walks and a-furrow
facere videtur. De quo idem Lucanus:
to-make seems about which the-same Lucan

Quo contentus iter cauda sulcare parias.
by-which content the-way with-the-tail to-furrow the-parias

Boas, anguis Italiae inmensa mole, persequitur greges
the-boa a-snake of-Italy of-immense bulk pursues the-flocks
armentorum et bubalos, et plurimo lacte riguis se uberibus
of-herds and buffaloes and with-very-much milk watered itself to-udders
innectit et sugens interimit, atque inde a boum depopulatione
it-entwines and sucking kills and thence from of-oxen the-depopulation
boas nomen accepit. Iaculus serpens volans. De quo Lucanus:
boa the-name it-received the-iaculus a-serpent flying about which Lucan

Iaculique volucres.
and-the-iaculi winged

Exiliunt enim in arboribus, et dum aliquod animal obvium
they-leap-out for into trees and when some animal in-the-way
fuerit, iactant se super eum et perimunt; unde
shall-have-been they-hurl themselves upon it and kill whence
et iaculi dicti sunt. In Arabia autem sunt serpentes cum
also iaculi called are in Arabia moreover are serpents with
alis, quae sirenae vocantur, quae plus currunt ab equis, sed
wings which sirens are-called which more run than horses but
etiam et volare dicuntur; quorum tantum virus est ut
also also to-fly are-said of-which so-great the-poison is that

morsum ante mors insequatur quam dolor. Ophites dicta,
the-bite before death follows than pain ophites called
quod colorem arenae habeat. De qua poeta:
because the-color of-sand it-has about which the-poet

Quam parvis pictus maculis Thebanus ophites
how with-small painted spots the-Theban ophites
concolor exustis atque indiscretus arenis
of-like-color to-the-scorched and indistinguishable sands
ammodytes.
the-ammodytes

Seps exiguus serpens, qui non solum corpus sed et ossa
seps a-tiny serpent which not only the-body but also the-bones
veneno consumit. Cuius poeta sic meminit:
with-poison consumes of-which the-poet so is-mindful

Ossaque dissolvens cum corpore tabificus seps.
and-the-bones dissolving with the-body the-wasting seps

Dipsas serpens tantae exiguitatis fertur ut cum calcatur, non
dipsas a-serpent of-such smallness is-said that when it-is-trodden not
videatur. Cuius venenum ante extinguit quam sentiatur, ut
it-is-seen whose poison before extinguishes than it-be-felt so-that
facies praeventa morte nec tristitiam induat morituri.
the-face forestalled by-death not-even the-sadness puts-on of-one-about-to-die
De quo poeta:
about which the-poet

Signiferum iuvenem Tyrrheni sanguinis Aulum
the-standard-bearing youth of-Tyrrhenian blood Aulus
torto capite retro dipsas calcata momordit:
with-twisted head backward the-dipsas trodden bit
vix dolor aut sensus dentis fuit.
scarcely pain or sense of-the-tooth there-was

Salpuga serpens est quae non videtur. Caecula dicta, propter
salpuga a-serpent is which not is-seen caecula called on-account-of
quod parva sit et non habeat oculos. Centupeda a
that small it-be and not it-have eyes centipede from
multitudine pedum dicta. Lacertus reptile genus est, vocatus
the-multitude of-feet called lizard reptile a-kind is called
ita quod brachia habeat. Genera lacertorum plura: ut botrax,
so because arms it-has the-kinds of-lizards several as the-botrax
salamandra, saura, stellio. Botrax dicta, quod ranae habeat
the-salamander the-saura the-stellio botrax called because of-a-frog it-has
faciem; nam Graeci ranam βάτραχον vocant. Salamandra
the-face for the-Greeks the-frog batrachon call salamander
vocata, quod contra incendia valeat. Cuius inter omnia
called because against fires it-prevails whose among all
venenata vis maxima est; cetera enim singulos feriunt,
poisonous-things the-force greatest is the-others for single-ones strike
haec plurimos pariter interimit. Nam si arbori inrepserit,
this very-many equally kills for if onto-a-tree it-shall-have-crept
omnia poma inficit veneno, et eos qui ederint occidit;
all fruits it-infects with-poison and those who shall-have-eaten it-kills
qui etiam vel si in puteum cadat, vis veneni eius
which also even if into a-well it-fall the-force of-poison its
potantes interficit. Ista contra incendia repugnans, ignes sola
those-drinking kills this against fires fighting fires alone

animalium extinguit; vivit enim in mediis flammis sine
of-animals extinguishes it-lives for in the-midst-of flames without
dolore et consummatione, et non solum quia non uritur,
pain and consumption and not only because not it-is-burned
sed extinguit incendium. Saura lacertus, qui quando senescit,
but it-extinguishes the-fire saura a-lizard which when it-grows-old
caecantur oculi eius, et intrat in foramen parietis aspicientis
are-blinded the-eyes its and it-enters into a-hole of-a-wall facing
contra Orientem, et orto sole intendit et inluminatur.
toward the-East and with-risen sun it-gazes and is-illuminated
Stellio de colore inditum nomen habet; est enim tergore
stellio from color given the-name has it-is for in-back
pictus lucentibus guttis in modum stellarum. De quo Ovidius:
painted with-shining drops in the-manner of-stars about which Ovid

aptumque colori
and-fit to-its-color
Nomen habet, variis stellatus corpore guttis.
a-name it-has with-various starred on-body drops

Hic autem scorpionibus adeo contrarius traditur ut viso eo
this moreover to-scorpions so contrary is-handed-down that with-seen it
pavorem his adferat et torporem. Sunt et alia serpentium
fear to-them it-brings and torpor there-are also other of-serpents
genera; ut ammodytae, elephantiae, chamaedracontes. Postremo
kinds as ammodytes elephantiae chamaedracontes finally
quantus nominum, tantus mortium numerus. Omnes autem
as-great-as of-names so-great of-deaths the-number all moreover
serpentes natura sua frigidae sunt; nec percutiunt nisi quando
serpents by-nature their cold are nor strike except when
calescunt. Nam quando sunt frigidae, nullum tangunt; unde
they-grow-warm for when they-are cold none they-touch whence

et venena eorum plus die quam nocte nocent. Torpent
also the-poisons their more by-day than by-night harm they-are-torpid
enim noctis algore, et merito, quia frigidae sunt nocturno
for of-night by-the-cold and deservedly because cold they-are with-nocturnal
rore. In se enim adducunt vaporem corporis gelidi pestes
dew into themselves for they-draw the-heat of-body cold the-pests
et natura frigidae; unde et hieme in nodos torpent,
and by-nature cold whence also in-winter into knots they-are-torpid
aestate solvuntur. Inde est quod dum quicumque serpentium
in-summer are-loosed thence it-is that when whoever of-serpents
veneno percutitur, primum obstupescit, et postea, ubi
by-the-poison is-struck first is-numbed and afterward when
in illo calefactum ipsum virus exarserit, statim hominem
in him warmed the-very poison shall-have-blazed at-once the-man
extinguit. Venenum autem dictum, eo quod per venas
it-extinguishes poison moreover called for-this that through the-veins
vadit; infusa enim pestis eius per venas vegetatione corporis
it-goes poured-in for the-pest its through the-veins with-the-vigor of-the-body
aucta discurrit et animam exigit. Unde non posse venenum
increased runs-through and the-soul drives-out whence not to-be-able poison
nocere, nisi hominis tetigerit sanguinem. Lucanus:
to-harm unless of-a-man it-shall-have-touched the-blood Lucan

Noxia serpentium est admixto sanguine pestis.
harmful of-serpents is with-mixed blood the-pest

Omne autem venenum frigidum est, et ideo anima, quae
all moreover poison cold is and therefore the-soul which
ignea est, fugit venenum frigidum. In naturalibus bonis, quae
fiery is flees the-poison cold in the-natural goods which
nobis et inrationabilibus animantibus videmus esse communia,
to-us and to-irrational living-things we-see to-be common

vivacitate quadam sensus serpens excellit. Unde et legitur
by-a-liveliness certain of-sense the-serpent excels whence also is-read
in Genesi: ‘Serpens autem erat sapientior omnibus pecoribus
in Genesis the-serpent moreover was wiser than-all the-cattle
terrae.’ Dicit autem Plinius, si creditur, quod serpentis
of-the-earth says moreover Pliny if it-is-believed that of-the-serpent
caput etiam si cum duobus evaserit digitis, nihilominus
the-head even if with two it-shall-have-escaped fingers nevertheless
vivit. Unde et totum corpus obicit pro capite ferientibus.
lives whence also the-whole body it-sets-against for the-head to-those-striking
Anguibus universis hebes visus est. Raro in adversum
to-snakes all dull the-sight is rarely into the-opposite
contuentur, nec frustra, cum oculos non in fronte habeant,
they-gaze nor in-vain since the-eyes not in the-forehead they-have
sed in temporibus; adeo ut citius audiant quam aspiciant.
but in the-temples so that sooner they-hear than they-see
Nullum autem animal in tanta celeritate linguam movet ut
no moreover animal with so-great speed the-tongue moves as
serpens, adeo ut triplicem linguam habere videatur, cum una
the-serpent so that a-triple tongue to-have it-seems though one
sit. Serpentium humida sunt corpora, adeo ut quaque eunt,
it-be of-serpents moist are the-bodies so that wherever they-go
viam humore designent. Vestigia serpentium talia sunt ut,
the-way with-moisture they-mark the-footprints of-serpents such are that
cum pedibus carere videantur, costis tamen et squamarum
though feet to-lack they-seem with-ribs yet and of-scales
nisibus repant, quas a summo gutture usque ad imam
by-the-efforts they-crawl which from the-top throat all-the-way to the-lowest
alvum parili modo dispositas habent. Squamis enim quasi
belly with-equal manner arranged they-have on-scales for as-if
unguibus, costis quasi cruribus innituntur. Unde si in qualibet
on-claws on-ribs as-if on-legs they-lean whence if in whatever

corporis parte ab alvo usque ad caput ictu aliquo
of-the-body part from the-belly all-the-way to the-head by-a-blow some
conlidatur, debilis reddita cursum habere non possit; quia
it-be-crushed weak made a-course to-have not it-can because
ubicumque ille ictus inciderit, spinam solvit, per quam
wherever that blow shall-have-fallen the-spine it-loosens through which
costarum pedes et motus corporis agebantur. Serpentes
of-the-ribs the-feet and the-motions of-the-body were-driven serpents
autem diu vivere dicuntur, adeo ut deposita vetere tunica
moreover long to-live are-said so that with-laid-down old tunic
senectutem deponere atque in iuventam redire perhibeantur.
old-age to-lay-down and into youth to-return they-are-held
Tunicae serpentium exuviae nuncupantur, eo quod his,
the-tunics of-serpents sloughs are-named for-this that from-these
quando senescunt, sese exuunt, quibus exuti in iuventam
when they-grow-old themselves they-strip of-which stripped into youth
redeunt. Dicuntur enim exuviae et induviae, quia exuuntur
they-return are-called for exuviae and induviae because they-are-taken-off
et induuntur. Pythagoras dicit de medulla hominis mortui,
and are-put-on Pythagoras says from the-marrow of-a-man dead
quae in spina est, serpentem creari; quod etiam Ovidius
which in the-spine is a-serpent to-be-created which also Ovid
in Metamorphoseorum libris commemorat dicens:
in of-the-Metamorphoses the-books records saying

Sunt qui cum clauso putrefacta est spina sepulchro
there-are who when in-closed putrefied is the-spine the-sepulcher
mutari credunt humanas angue medullas.
to-be-changed believe the-human into-a-snake marrows

Quod si creditur, merito evenit ut sicut per serpentem
which if it-is-believed deservedly it-happens that as through the-serpent
mors hominis, ita et hominis morte serpens. Fertur autem
the-death of-man so also of-man by-the-death the-serpent it-is-said moreover
quod serpens hominem nudum non sit ausus contingere.
that the-serpent a-man naked not has dared to-touch

De vermibus

V · WORMS

A worm is born of flesh, wood, or earth without coupling. Isidore names the worms of the air, water, earth, flesh, leaves, wood, and garments: the spider, the leech, the scorpion, the cantharis, the slug, the silkworm, the caterpillar, the moth, lice, fleas, and the rest, and how a worm moves without a spine.

Vermis est animal quod plerumque de carne, vel de ligno,
worm is an-animal which mostly from flesh or from wood
vel de quacumque re terrena sine ullo concubitu gignitur;
or from whatever thing earthly without any coupling is-begotten
licet nonnumquam et de ovis nascuntur, sicut scorpio.
although sometimes also from eggs they-are-born as the-scorpion
Sunt autem vermes aut terrae, aut aquae, aut aeris, aut
there-are moreover worms either of-the-earth or of-water or of-air or
carnium, aut frondium, aut lignorum, aut vestimentorum.
of-flesh or of-leaves or of-woods or of-garments
Aranea vermis aeris, ab aeris nutrimento cognominata;
the-spider a-worm of-the-air from of-the-air the-nourishment surnamed
quae exiguo corpore longa fila deducit, et telae semper
which with-tiny body long threads draws-out and to-the-web always
intenta numquam desinit laborare, perpetuum sustinens in
intent never ceases to-labor perpetual sustaining in

sua arte suspendium. Sanguisuga vermis aquatilis, dicta quod
its-own art suspension the-leech a-worm aquatic called because
sanguinem sugit. Potantibus enim insidiatur, cumque labitur
blood it-sucks those-drinking for it-lies-in-wait-for and-when it-glides
faucibus vel ubi uspiam adhaerescit, sanguinem haurit; et
into-the-throat or where anywhere it-clings blood it-drains and
cum nimio cruore maduerit, evomit quod hausit,
when with-excessive gore it-shall-have-been-soaked it-vomits what it-drained
ut recentiorem denuo sugat. Scorpio vermis terrenus, qui
that fresher again it-may-suck the-scorpion a-worm earthly which
potius vermibus adscribitur, non serpentibus; animal armatum
rather to-worms is-assigned not to-serpents an-animal armed
aculeo, et ex eo Graece vocatum quod cauda figat
with-a-sting and from that in-Greek called because with-the-tail it-pierces
et arcuato vulnere venena diffundat. Proprium est autem
and with-an-arched wound poisons pours proper it-is moreover
scorpionis quod manus palmam non feriat. Cantharida vermis
of-the-scorpion that of-the-hand the-palm not it-strikes the-cantharis a-worm
terrenus [qui humano corpori statim fuerit applicatus,
earthly which to-the-human body as-soon-as it-shall-have-been applied
sui adustione vesicas efficit plenas humore]. Multipes vermis
its by-burning blisters makes full of-humor the-multipes a-worm
terrenus, ex multitudine pedum vocatus, qui contactus in
earthly from the-multitude of-feet called which touched into
globum conplicatur. Nascitur sub petris ex humore et
a-ball is-rolled-up it-is-born under rocks from moisture and
terra. Limax vermis limi, dictus quod in limo vel de
earth the-slug a-worm of-slime called because in slime or from
limo nascatur; unde et sordida semper et inmunda habetur.
slime it-is-born whence also filthy always and unclean it-is-held
Bombyx frondium vermis, ex cuius textura bombycinum
the-silkworm of-leaves a-worm from whose weaving silk

conficitur. Appellatus autem hoc nomine ab eo quod
is-made called moreover by-this name from that that
evacuetur dum fila generat, et aer solus in eo remaneat.
it-is-emptied while threads it-generates and air alone in it remains
Eruca frondium vermis in holus, vel [in] pampino
the-caterpillar of-leaves a-worm into vegetable or into vine-leaf
involuta, ab erodendo dicta. De qua meminit Plautus:
wrapped from eroding called about which is-mindful Plautus

Imitatus nequam bestiam et maleficam involutam
imitating a-worthless beast and harmful wrapped
in pampino inplicat se.
in a-vine-leaf it-entwines itself

Idem nec advolat, ut locusta, ut huc illucque discurrens
the-same not flies-off as the-locust that hither and-thither running-about
semipasta dimittat, sed permanet perituris frugibus et
half-eaten-things it-may-leave but it-remains on-perishing crops and
tardo lapsu pigrisque morsibus universa consumit. Teredonas
by-slow gliding and-by-sluggish bites all-things consumes teredones
Graeci vocant lignorum vermes, quod terendo edant. Hos
the-Greeks call of-woods the-worms because by-rubbing they-eat these
nos termites dicimus. Ita enim apud Latinos ligni vermes
we termites call so for among the-Latins of-wood worms
vocantur, quos tempore inoportuno caesae arbores gignunt.
are-called which at-time unseasonable cut trees beget
Tinea vestimentorum vermis, dicta quod teneat, et eo usque
the-moth of-garments a-worm called because it-holds and so far
insedat quo erodat. Inde et pertinax, quod in eandem rem
sits-on until it-eat-away thence also pertinacious because on the-same thing
identidem urgeat. Vermes carnium: hemicranius, lumbricus,
again-and-again it-presses worms of-flesh the-hemicranius the-earthworm

ascaridae, costi, peduculi, pulices, lendes, tarmus, ricinus, usia,
the-ascarides the-costi lice fleas nits the-tarmus the-tick the-usia
cimex. Hemicranius vermis capitis vocatus. Lumbricus vermis
the-bedbug hemicranius a-worm of-the-head called lumbricus a-worm
intestinarum, dictus quasi lumbicus, quia labitur, vel quod
of-the-intestines called as-if lumbicus because it-glides or because
in lumbis sit. Ascaridae *** Costi *** Peduculi vermes
in the-loins it-be ascarides (lacuna) costi (lacuna) lice worms
cutis a pedibus dicti. Unde et peducosi dicuntur quibus
of-the-skin from feet called whence also lousy are-called in-whom
peduculi in corpore effervescunt. Pulices vero vocati sunt quod
lice in the-body swarm fleas but called are because
ex pulvere magis nutriantur. Lendes *** Tarmus vermis
from dust rather they-are-nourished nits (lacuna) the-tarmus a-worm
est lardi. Ricinus vermis est canis, vocatus eo quod haeret
is of-lard the-tick a-worm is of-the-dog called for-this that it-clings
in auribus canum; κύων enim Graece canis est. Usia est
in the-ears of-dogs kyon for in-Greek dog is the-usia is
vermis porci, appellata quia urit; nam ubi momorderit, adeo
a-worm of-the-pig called because it-burns for where it-shall-have-bitten so
locus ardet ut ibi vesicae fiant. Cimex de similitudine
the-place burns that there blisters are-made the-bedbug from the-likeness
cuiusdam herbae vocatus, cuius foetorem habet. Proprie autem
of-a-certain herb called whose stench it-has properly moreover
vermis in carne putre nascitur; tinea in vestimentis; eruca
the-worm in flesh putrid is-born the-moth in garments the-caterpillar
in holere; teredo in ligno; tarmus in lardo. Vermis non ut
in vegetable the-teredo in wood the-tarmus in lard the-worm not as
serpens apertis passibus vel squamarum nisibus repit, quia non
the-serpent with-open steps or of-scales by-efforts crawls because not
est illi spinae rigor, ut colubri, sed in directum corpusculi
is to-it of-spine stiffness as of-the-snake but in a-straight-line of-little-body

sui partes gradatim porrigendo contractas, contrahendo
its the-parts gradually by-extending the-contracted by-contracting
porrectas motum explicat, sicque agitatus perlabitur.
the-extended motion it-unfolds and-so moved it-glides-along

De piscibus

VI · FISHES

Fishes are named after land animals, or from their habits, color, shape, or sex. Isidore describes the whale, the dolphin, the swordfish, the crocodile, the hippopotamus, the mullet, the echeneis that holds back ships, the eel, the moray, the torpedo, the cuttlefish, the shells and pearls, the murex, crabs and oysters, the tortoise, frogs, and sponges, and ends with Pliny's 144 kinds of water creature and how fish conceive.

Pisces dicti unde et pecus, a pascendo scilicet. Reptilia
fishes called whence also cattle from feeding namely reptiles
ideo dicuntur haec quae natant, eo quod reptandi habeant
therefore are-called these which swim for-this that of-creeping they-have
speciem et naturam; quamvis se in profundum
the-appearance and nature although themselves into the-deep
inmergant, tamen in natando repunt. Unde et David ait:
they-plunge yet in swimming they-creep whence also David says
'Hoc mare magnum et spatiosum: illic reptilia, quorum non
this sea great and wide there reptiles of-which not
est numerus.' Amphibia sunt quaedam genera piscium, dicta
is number amphibia are certain kinds of-fishes called
eo quod ambulandi in terris usum et natandi in aquis
for-this that of-walking on lands the-use and of-swimming in waters
officium habeant. Ἀμφὶ enim Graece utrumque dicitur, id est
the-office they-have amphi for in-Greek both is-called that is
quia et in aquis et in terris vivunt: ut phocae, corcodilli,
because both in waters and on lands they-live as seals crocodiles

hippopotami, hoc est equi fluviales. Pecoribus autem et
hippopotami that is horses of-the-river to-cattle moreover and
bestiis et volatilibus antea homines nomina inposuerunt
to-beasts and to-flying-things before men names imposed
quam piscibus, quia prius visa et cognita sunt. Piscium
than to-fishes because earlier seen and known they-were of-fishes
vero postea paulatim cognitis generibus nomina instituta
but afterward little-by-little with-known kinds names established
sunt aut ex similitudine terrestrium animalium, aut ex
were either from the-likeness of-land animals or from
specie propria sive moribus [seu colore, vel figura, aut
appearance own or manners or color or figure or
sexu]. Ex similitudine terrestrium: ut ranae et vituli et
sex from the-likeness of-land-ones as frogs and calves and
leones et nigri meruli et pavi diverso colore, dorso et
lions and black blackbirds and peacocks with-diverse color in-back and
collo picti, et turdi albo varii, et cetera quae sibi
neck painted and thrushes with-white varied and the-others which for-themselves
iuxta species terrestrium animalium nomina vindicaverunt.
according-to the-species of-land animals names have-claimed
Ex moribus terrestrium: ut canes in mari a terrenis
from the-manners of-land-ones as dogs in the-sea from earthly
canibus nuncupati, quod mordeant; et lupi, quod inproba
dogs named because they-bite and wolves because with-shameless
voracitate alios persequantur. A colore: ut umbrae, quia
voracity others they-pursue from color as umbrae because
colore umbrae sunt; et auratae, quia in capite auri colorem
in-color shadows they-are and auratae because on the-head of-gold the-color
habent; et varii a varietate, quos vulgo tructas vocant.
they-have and varii from variety whom commonly trout they-call
A figura: ut orbis, quia rotundus est totusque in capite
from figure as the-orbis because round it-is and-whole in head

constat; ut solea, quod sit instar calciamentorum soleis.
consists as the-sole because it-be like of-shoes to-the-soles
A sexu: ut musculus, quod sit ballenae masculus; eius
from sex as the-musculus because it-be of-the-whale the-male its
enim coitu concipere haec bellua perhibetur. Hinc et
for by-coupling to-conceive this monster is-held hence also
musculi coclearum, quorum lacte concipiunt ostreae. Ballenae
musculi of-shellfish whose by-milk conceive oysters whales
autem sunt inmensae magnitudinis bestiae, ab emittendo et
moreover are of-immense size beasts from emitting and
fundendo aquas vocatae; ceteris enim bestiis maris altius
pouring waters called than-the-other for beasts of-the-sea higher
iaciunt undas; βάλλειν enim Graece emittere dicitur. Cete
they-throw waves ballein for in-Greek to-emit is-called cete
dicta τὸ κῆτος καὶ τὰ κήτη, hoc est ob inmanitatem.
called to ketos kai ta kete that is on-account-of hugeness
Sunt enim ingentia genera beluarum et aequalia montium
they-are for huge kinds of-monsters and equal of-mountains
corpora; qualis cetus excepit Ionam, cuius alvus tantae
bodies such-as the-whale received Jonah whose belly of-such
magnitudinis fuit ut instar obtineret inferni, dicente
size was that the-likeness it-held of-hell with-saying
Propheta: ‘Exaudivit me de ventre inferni.’ Equi marini, quod
the-Prophet he-heard me from the-belly of-hell horses of-the-sea because
prima parte equi sunt, postrema solvuntur in piscem.
in-the-first part horses they-are in-the-hindmost they-are-loosed into a-fish
Bocas dicunt esse boves marinos, quasi boacas. Caerulei a
bocas they-say to-be oxen of-the-sea as-if boacas caerulei from
colore appellati; nam caeruleum est viride cum nigro, ut
color called for blue is green with black as
est mare. Delphines certum habent vocabulum, quod voces
is the-sea dolphins a-fixed have name because the-voices

hominum sequantur, vel quod ad symphoniam gregatim
of-men they-follow or because to music in-herds
conveniunt. Nihil in mare velocius istis; nam plerumque
they-come-together nothing in the-sea swifter than-these for mostly
salientes naves transvolant. Quando autem praeludunt in
leaping ships they-fly-over when moreover they-play in
fluctibus et undarum se molibus saltu praecipiti
the-waves and of-the-waves themselves against-the-masses by-a-leap headlong
feriunt, tempestates significare videntur. Hi proprie simones
they-strike tempests to-signify they-seem these properly simones
nominantur. Est et delphinum genus in Nilo dorso serrato,
are-named there-is also of-dolphins a-kind in the-Nile with-back serrated
qui crocodillos tenera ventrium secantes interimunt.
which crocodiles the-tender-parts of-the-bellies cutting kill
Porci marini, qui vulgo vocantur suilli, quia dum escam
pigs of-the-sea which commonly are-called suilli because while food
quaerunt, more suis terram sub aquis fodiunt. Circa
they-seek in-the-manner of-the-sow the-earth under the-waters they-dig around
guttur enim habent oris officium, et nisi rostrum
the-throat for they-have of-the-mouth the-office and unless the-snout
arenis inmergunt, pastum non colligunt. Corvi a cordis
into-the-sands they-plunge food not they-gather corvi from of-the-heart
voce dicti, quia grunniunt pectore, suaque voce proditi
the-voice called because they-grunt from-the-breast and-by-their voice betrayed
capiuntur. Thynni Graecum nomen habent. Hi ingrediuntur
are-caught tunnies a-Greek name have these enter
veris tempore, intrant dextro latere, laevo exeunt.
of-spring in-the-time they-come-in by-the-right side by-the-left they-go-out
Hoc inde creduntur quod dextris oculis acutius videant
this thence is-believed because with-right eyes more-sharply they-see
quam sinistris. Gladius dicitur eo quod rostro mucronato
than with-left swordfish it-is-called for-this that with-snout pointed

sit: ob hoc naves perfossas mergit. Serra nuncupata,
it-be on-account-of this ships pierced it-sinks sawfish named
quia serratam cristam habet, et subternatans navem secat.
because a-serrated crest it-has and swimming-beneath a-ship cuts
Scorpio dictus, quia laedit dum manu tollitur. Tradunt
scorpion called because it-hurts while by-hand it-is-lifted they-hand-down
decem cancris cum ocimi manipulo alligatis omnes qui ibi
with-ten crabs with of-basil a-handful bound all who there
sunt scorpiones ad eum locum congregari. Aranea genus
are scorpions to that place to-be-gathered spider a-kind
piscis, dictus quod aure feriat; habet enim stimulos
of-fish called because with-the-ear it-strikes it-has for stings
e quibus percutit. Crocodillus, a croceo colore dictus,
from which it-strikes the-crocodile from saffron color called
gignitur in Nilo, animal quadrupes in terra et aquis
is-begotten in the-Nile an-animal four-footed on land and in-waters
valens, longitudine plerumque viginti cubitorum, dentium
strong in-length mostly of-twenty cubits of-teeth
et unguium inmanitate armatum, tantaque cutis duritia
and of-claws with-hugeness armed and-with-such of-skin hardness
ut quamvis fortium ictus lapidum tergo repercutiat.
that although of-strong the-blows of-stones with-the-back it-strikes-back
Nocte in aquis, die humi quiescit. Ova in terra fovet:
by-night in waters by-day on-the-ground it-rests eggs on land warms
masculus et femina vices servant. Hunc pisces quidam
the-male and the-female turns they-keep this fishes certain
serratam habentes cristam tenera ventrium desecantes
serrated having a-crest the-tender-parts of-the-bellies cutting
interimunt. [Solus ex animalibus superiorem maxillam movere
kill alone of animals the-upper jaw to-move
dicitur.] Hippopotamus vocatus, quod sit equo similis
it-is-said hippopotamus called because it-be to-a-horse like

dorso, iuba et hinnitu, rostro resupinato, aprinis dentibus,
in-back mane and neighing with-snout upturned with-boarish teeth
cauda tortuosa. Die in aquis commoratur, nocte segetes
with-tail twisted by-day in the-waters it-lingers by-night the-crops
depascitur: et hunc Nilus gignit. Pagrum, quem Graeci
it-grazes and this the-Nile begets the-pagrus which the-Greeks
φάγρον ideo nuncupant quod duros dentes habeat, ita
phagron therefore name because hard teeth it-has so
ut ostreis in mari alatur. Dentix pro multitudine et
that on-oysters in the-sea it-is-fed dentex for the-multitude and
granditate dentium dictus. Lepus a similitudine capitis
size of-teeth called the-hare from the-likeness of-the-head
nuncupatus. Lupum, ut dictum est, aviditas appellavit,
named the-wolf as said it-has-been greed called
piscem in captura ingeniosum: denique rete circumdatus
a-fish in capture ingenious finally by-a-net surrounded
fertur arenas arare cauda, atque ita conditus transire rete.
it-is-said the-sands to-plow with-the-tail and so hidden to-pass the-net
Mullus vocatus, quod mollis sit atque tenerrimus. Cuius
the-mullet called because soft it-be and most-tender whose
cibo tradunt libidinem inhibere, oculorum autem aciem
by-food they-relate lust to-check of-the-eyes moreover the-keenness
hebetari: homines vero, quibus saepe pastus, piscem olent.
to-be-dulled men but who often fed-on-it of-fish smell
Mullus in vino necatus, hi, qui inde biberint, taedium
the-mullet in wine killed those who thence shall-have-drunk a-loathing
vini habent. Mugilis nomen habet quod sit multum
of-wine have the-mugil the-name has because it-be much
agilis. Nam ubi dispositas senserit piscatorum insidias,
agile for where set it-shall-have-perceived of-fishermen the-snares
confestim retrorsum rediens ita transilit rete ut volare
at-once backward returning so it-leaps-over the-net that to-fly

piscem videas. Melanurus, eo quod nigram caudam
the-fish you-may-see melanurus for-this that a-black tail
habeat et pinnas nigras et in corpore lineas nigras; μέλαν
it-has and fins black and on the-body lines black melan
enim Graeci nigrum vocant. Glaucus a colore dictus,
for the-Greeks black call glaucus from color called
quod albus sit; Graeci enim album γλαυκὸν dicunt. Hic
because white it-be the-Greeks for white glaukon call this
aestate raro apparet, nisi tantum in nubilo. Thymallus
in-summer rarely appears except only in cloudy-weather the-grayling
ex flore nomen accepit: thymum quippe flos appellatur:
from a-flower the-name received thyme indeed a-flower is-called
nam dum sit specie gratus et sapore iucundus, tamen
for though it-be in-appearance pleasing and in-flavor pleasant yet
sicut flos fraglat et corpore odores aspirat. Escarus
as a-flower it-smells and from-its-body odors breathes the-scarus
dictus, eo quod solus escam ruminare perhibetur: denique
called for-this that alone food to-ruminate it-is-held finally
alii pisces non ruminant. Tradunt autem hunc ingeniosum
other fishes not ruminate they-relate moreover this ingenious
esse; namque inclusum nassis non fronte erumpere nec
to-be for shut-in in-weels not by-the-front to-burst-out nor
infestis viminibus caput inserere, sed aversum caudae
into-the-hostile osiers the-head to-insert but turned-away of-the-tail
ictibus crebris laxare fores atque ita retrorsum redire;
with-blows frequent to-loosen the-doors and so backward to-return
quem luctatum eius si forte alius escarus extrinsecus videat,
which struggling its if perhaps another scarus from-outside see
adprehensa mordicus cauda adiuvare nisus erumpentis.
with-seized with-the-teeth tail to-help the-efforts of-the-one-bursting-out
Sparus a lancea missile nomen traxit, quod eiusdem
the-sparus from the-lance missile the-name drew because of-the-same

figurae sit. Terrestria enim prius inventa sunt quam marina.
figure it-be land-things for earlier found were than sea-things
Nam sparus est telum rusticanum missile, ab spargendo
for sparus is a-weapon rustic missile from scattering
dictum. Australis piscis, sive quia aquarum undam ore
called the-southern fish either because of-waters the-wave with-mouth
suscipit, sive quia tunc [hic] piscis oritur quo tempore
it-receives or because then this fish arises at-which time
tendere in occasum Pleiades coeperint. Hamio saxatilis
to-tend into the-setting the-Pleiades shall-have-begun hamio of-the-rocks
dextra sinistraque lateribus virgis puniceis perpetuis aliisque
on-right and-left sides with-stripes crimson continuous and-other
discoloribus designatur; dictus hamio quia non capitur
of-diverse-colors is-marked called hamio because not it-is-caught
nisi hamo. Echenais, parvus et semipedalis pisciculus,
except by-the-hook echeneis a-small and half-a-foot-long little-fish
nomen sumpsit quod navem adhaerendo retineat. Ruant
the-name took because a-ship by-clinging it-holds-back may-rush
licet venti, saeviant procellae, navis tamen quasi radicata
though the-winds rage the-storms the-ship yet as-if rooted
in mari stare videtur nec moveri, non retinendo, sed
in the-sea to-stand seems nor to-be-moved not by-holding but
tantummodo adhaerendo. Hunc Latini moram appellaverunt,
only by-clinging this the-Latins mora called
eo quod cogat stare navigia. Uranoscopus vocatur ab
for-this that it-compels to-stand ships uranoscopus is-called from
oculo, quem in capite habet, a quo semper supra intendit.
the-eye which on the-head it-has from which always above it-gazes
Millago nominatus, quia evolat super aquam. Quoties
millago named because it-flies-out above the-water as-often-as
autem cernitur extra aquam volitans, tempestates mutari.
moreover it-is-seen outside the-water flying tempests to-be-changed

Squatus dictus, quod sit squamis acutus. Unde et eius
squatus called because it-be with-scales sharp whence also its
cute lignum politur. Civitas Syriae, quae nunc Tyrus
with-the-skin wood is-polished the-city of-Syria which now Tyre
dicitur, olim Sarra vocabatur a pisce quodam qui illic
is-called once Sarra was-called from a-fish certain which there
abundat, quem lingua sua 'sar' appellant; ex quo derivatum
abounds which in-tongue their sar they-call from which derived
est huius similitudinis pisciculos sardas sardinasque vocari.
it-is of-this likeness little-fishes sardae and-sardines to-be-called
Allec pisciculus ad liquorem salsamentorum idoneus; unde et
allec a-little-fish for the-liquor of-salted-fish suitable whence also
nuncupatus. Aphorus pisciculus, qui propter exiguitatem
named aphorus a-little-fish which on-account-of smallness
hamo capi non potest. Anguillae similitudo anguis
by-hook to-be-caught not can of-the-eel the-likeness of-the-snake
nomen dedit. Origo huius ex limo; unde et quando
the-name gave the-origin of-this from slime whence also when
capitur, adeo lenis est ut quanto fortius presseris,
it-is-caught so smooth it-is that by-how-much more-strongly you-shall-have-pressed
tanto citius elabitur. Ferunt autem Orientis fluvium
by-so-much more-quickly it-slips-away they-say moreover of-the-East the-river
Gangen anguillas tricenis pedibus gignere. Anguillae vino
Ganges eels of-thirty-each feet to-beget eels by-wine
necatae, qui ex eo biberint taedium vini habent. Draco
killed who from it shall-have-drunk a-loathing of-wine have the-dragon
marinus aculeos in branchiis habet ad caudam spectantes,
of-the-sea stings on the-gills has toward the-tail looking
qui dum percusserit, quaqua ferit, venenum fundit [unde
which when it-shall-have-struck wherever it-strikes poison it-pours whence
et vocatus]. Muraenam Graeci μύραιναν vocant, eo quod
also called the-moray the-Greeks myrainan call for-this that

conplicet se in circulos. Hanc feminini tantum sexus esse
it-folds itself into circles this of-feminine only sex to-be
tradunt et concipere a serpente: ob id a piscatoribus
they-relate and to-conceive from a-serpent for this by fishermen
tamquam a serpente sibilo evocatur et capitur. Ictu
as-if by a-serpent by-hissing it-is-called-forth and is-caught by-the-blow
autem fustis difficulter interimitur, ferula protinus.
moreover of-a-club with-difficulty it-is-killed by-a-fennel-stalk at-once
Animam in cauda habere certum est; nam capite percusso
the-soul in the-tail to-have certain it-is for with-the-head struck
vix eam interimi, cauda statim exanimari. Congrus
scarcely it to-be-killed with-the-tail at-once to-be-deprived-of-life the-conger
∗∗∗ Polypus, id est multipes; plurimos enim nexus habet.
(lacuna) the-polyp that is many-footed very-many for joints it-has
Iste ingeniosus hamum appetens brachiis conplectit, non
this ingenious the-hook seeking with-arms embraces not
morsu, nec prius dimittit quam escam circumroserit.
by-bite nor before lets-go than the-bait it-shall-have-gnawed-around
Torpedo vocata, eo quod corpus torpescere faciat, si eam
the-torpedo called for-this that the-body to-be-numbed it-makes if it
quisque viventem tangat. Narrat Plinius Secundus: ‘Ex Indico
anyone living touch relates Pliny the-Second from the-Indian
mare torpedo etiam procul et e longinquo, vel si hasta
sea the-torpedo even far-off and from a-distance even if with-a-spear
virgaque adtingatur, quamvis praevalidos lacertos torpescere,
or-rod it-be-touched however very-strong arms to-be-numbed
quamlibet ad cursum veloces alligare pedes.’ Tanta enim vis
however for running swift to-bind feet such for force
eius est ut etiam aura corporis sui adficiat membra.
its is that even by-the-breath of-body its it-affects the-limbs
Sepia dicitur, quia sepibus interclusa facilius capitur: in
the-cuttlefish is-called because by-hedges shut-in more-easily it-is-caught in

coeundo obscenum genus; ore enim concipit sicut vipera.
coupling an-obscene kind by-the-mouth for it-conceives as the-viper
Cuius atramento tanta vis est ut lucernae addito Aethiopas
whose ink such force has that to-a-lamp added Ethiopians
videri ablato priori lumine quidam tradant. Lulligo.
to-be-seen with-taken-away the-former light some relate the-squid
Tradunt in Oceano Mauretaniae, non procul a Lixo
they-relate in the-Ocean of-Mauretania not far from the-Lixus
flumine, tantam multitudinem lulliginum evolare ex aqua
river so-great a-multitude of-squids to-fly-out from the-water
ut etiam naves demergere possint. Conchae et cochleae hac
that even ships to-sink they-can shells and snails this
ex causa vocatae, quia deficiente luna cavantur, id est
from cause called because with-failing moon they-are-hollowed that is
evacuantur. Omnium enim clausorum maris animalium atque
are-emptied of-all for shut of-the-sea animals and
concharum incremento lunae membra turgescunt, defectu
of-shells with-the-increase of-the-moon the-limbs swell with-the-wane
evacuantur. Luna enim cum in augmento fuerit, auget
are-emptied the-moon for when in increase it-shall-have-been increases
humorem; cum vero in defectum venerit, humores
the-moisture when but into wane it-shall-have-come the-moistures
minuuntur; hoc enim Physici dicunt. Conchae autem
are-diminished this for the-natural-philosophers say conchae moreover
primae positionis nomen, cochleae vero per diminutionem,
of-first position a-name cochleae but through diminution
quasi conchleae. Concharum multa genera sunt; inter quas
as-if conchleae of-shells many kinds are among which
et margaritiferae, quae †oceloe† dicuntur, in quarum carne
also the-pearl-bearing which oceloe are-called in whose flesh
pretiosus calculus solidatur. De quibus tradunt hi qui
a-precious pebble is-solidified about which relate those who

de animantium scripsere naturis [eo] quod nocturno
about of-living-things have-written the-natures for-this that in-nocturnal
tempore litora appetant, et ex caelesti rore margaritum
time the-shores they-seek and from heavenly dew the-pearl
concipiunt; unde et †oceloe† nominantur. Murex cochlea
conceive whence also oceloe they-are-named murex a-snail
est maris, dicta ab acumine et asperitate, quae alio
is of-the-sea called from sharpness and roughness which by-another
nomine conchilium nominatur, propter quod circumcisa
name conchylium is-named on-account-of that cut-around
ferro lacrimas purpurei coloris emittat, ex quibus purpura
with-iron tears of-purple color it-emits from which purple
tingitur: et inde ostrum appellatum quod haec tinctura
is-dyed and thence ostrum called because this dye
ex testae humore elicitur. Cancros vocari, quia conchae
from of-the-shell the-moisture is-drawn-out crabs to-be-called because shells
sunt crura habentes: inimica ostreis animalia. Eorum enim
they-are legs having hostile to-oysters animals their for
carnibus vivunt miro ingenio; nam quia valida testa
on-the-flesh they-live with-marvelous wit for because the-strong shell
eius aperiri non potest, explorat quando ostrea claustra
its to-be-opened not can it-watches when the-oyster the-bars
testarum aperiat, tunc cancer latenter lapillum inicit atque
of-the-shells opens then the-crab secretly a-pebble throws-in and
inpedita conclusione ostreae carnes erodit. Tradunt quidam
with-hindered closing of-the-oyster the-flesh gnaws some relate
decem cancris cum ocimi manipulo alligatis omnes qui ibi
with-ten crabs with of-basil a-handful bound all who there
sunt scorpiones ad eum locum coituros. Duo sunt autem
are scorpions to that place about-to-gather two are moreover
genera cancrorum: fluviales et marini. Ostrea dicta est a
kinds of-crabs river-ones and sea-ones the-oyster called is from

testa, quibus mollities interior carnis munitur; Graeci enim
the-shell by-which the-softness inner of-the-flesh is-fortified the-Greeks for
testam ὀστρα vocant. Ostrea autem neutrum, carnes eius
shell ostra call ostrea moreover as-neuter flesh its
feminino dicunt. Musculi sunt, ut praediximus, cochleae
as-feminine they-say musculi are as we-have-said-before shellfish
a quorum lacte concipiunt ostreae; et dicti musculi
from whose milk conceive oysters and called musculi
quasi masculi. Pelorides a Peloro promontorio Siciliae, ubi
as-if masculi pelorides from Pelorus the-promontory of-Sicily where
abundant, cognominatae sunt:
they-abound surnamed are

Ecce autem Boreas angusta ab sede Pelori.
behold moreover Boreas narrow from the-seat of-Pelorus

Ungues a similitudine humanarum unguium dictae. Testudo
ungues from the-likeness of-human nails called the-tortoise
dictus, eo quod tegmine testae sit adopertus in camerae
called for-this that with-the-covering of-a-shell it-be covered in of-a-vault
modum. Sunt autem quattuor genera: terrestres, maritimae,
the-manner there-are moreover four kinds land-ones sea-ones
lutariae, id est in caeno et paludibus viventes; quartum
mud-ones that is in mire and marshes living the-fourth
genus fluviales, quae in dulci aqua vivunt. Tradunt aliqui,
kind river-ones which in sweet water live relate some
quod incredibile est, tardius ire navigia testudinis pedem
which incredible is more-slowly to-go ships of-a-tortoise the-foot
dextrum vehentia. Echinus a terrestre echino nomen traxit,
right carrying the-echinus from the-land hedgehog the-name drew
quem vulgus iricium vocant; cuius testula duplex, spinis
which the-crowd iricius calls whose little-shell double with-spines

aculeata in modum castanearum, quando adhuc coopertae de
pricked in the-manner of-chestnuts when still covered from
arboribus cadunt. Caro eius mollis et minio similis, †uris†
trees they-fall the-flesh its soft and to-vermilion like uris
tribus modis: ut testudo ac peloris et cochlea. Nam et quod
in-three ways as the-tortoise and the-peloris and the-snail for both what
edimus et ubi caro inest utrumque dicitur peloris. Ranae
we-eat and where the-flesh is-in each is-called peloris frogs
a garrulitate vocatae, eo quod circa genitales strepunt
from garrulity called for-this that around their-native they-clamor
paludes, et sonos vocis inportunis clamoribus reddunt.
marshes and sounds of-voice with-importunate cries render
Ex his quaedam aquaticae dicuntur, quaedam palustres,
of these some aquatic are-called some marsh-ones
quaedam rubetae, ob id, quia in vepribus vivunt, grandiores
some rubetae for this because in brambles they-live larger
cunctarum. Aliae calamites vocantur, quoniam inter arundines
of-all others calamites are-called since among reeds
fruticesque vivunt, minimae omnium et viridissimae; mutae
and-shrubs they-live smallest of-all and greenest mute
et sine voce sunt. Agredulae ranae parvae in sicco vel
and without voice they-are agredulae frogs small on dry-ground or
agris morantes; unde et nuncupatae. Negant quidam canes
in-fields lingering whence also named deny some dogs
latrare, quibus in offa rana viva fuerit data. Sfungia
to-bark to-whom in a-morsel a-frog living shall-have-been given the-sponge
a fingere, id est nitidare et extergere, dicta. Afranius:
from fingere that is to-polish and to-wipe called Afranius

Accedo ad te, ut tibi cervicem fingam linteo,
I-come to you that for-you the-neck I-may-wipe with-a-linen

id est extergam. Cicero: 'Effingebatur sfungiis sanguis,' id
that is I-may-wipe-off Cicero was-wiped with-sponges the-blood that
est extergebatur. Animal autem esse docetur cruore inhaerente
is was-wiped-off an-animal moreover to-be it-is-shown with-gore clinging
petris. Unde et dum absciditur sanguinem remittit. Nam
to-the-rocks whence also while it-is-cut-off blood it-sends-back for
alia sunt viventia in aquis et discurrunt, ut pisces; alia,
some are living-things in waters and run-about as fishes others
quae stant fixa, ut ostreae, echini, sfungiae. Ex his alias
which stand fixed as oysters sea-urchins sponges of these some
mares dici, eo quod tenues sint fistulae spissioresque;
males to-be-called for-this that thin they-be the-tubes and-denser
alias feminas, quae maioribus fistulis sunt ac perpetuis; alias
others females which with-larger tubes are and continuous others
duriores, quas Graeci appellant τράγους, et nos hircosas
harder which the-Greeks call tragous and we hircosae
dicere possumus ob asperitatem sui. Mollissimum genus earum
to-call can for roughness their the-softest kind of-them
penicilli vocantur, eo quod aptae sint ad oculorum tumores,
penicilli are-called for-this that apt they-be for of-the-eyes swellings
et ad extergendas lippitudines utiles. Candidae sfungiae cura
and for wiping-away inflammations useful white sponges by-care
fiunt; per aestatem enim ad solem sternuntur, et sicut
are-made through summer for to the-sun they-are-spread and as
cera Punica candorem bibunt. Animalium omnium in aquis
wax Punic whiteness drink of-animals all in waters
viventium nomina centum quadraginta quattuor Plinius ait,
living the-names a-hundred forty four Pliny says
divisa in generibus beluarum, serpentium communium terrae
divided into kinds of-monsters of-serpents common of-land
et aquae, cancrorum, concharum, lucustarum, peloridum,
and of-water of-crabs of-shells of-lobsters of-pelorides

polyporum, solearum, lacertorum, et lulliginum, et huic
of-polyps of-soles of-lizards and of-squids and to-this
similia; ex quibus multa quodam naturae intellectu ordinem
like-things of which many by-a-certain of-nature understanding the-order
temporum suorum agnoscunt, quaedam vero [in suis locis
of-times their recognize some but in their-own places
sine mutatione vagantur]. In piscibus autem feminis aliae
without change wander among fishes moreover females some
commixtione masculi concipiunt et pariunt catulos; aliae
by-mingling of-the-male conceive and bear young others
ponunt ova sine masculi susceptione concepta, qui idem
lay eggs without of-the-male reception conceived which the-same
insequens, sui seminis iactu perfunduntur; et quae
following of-his seed with-the-cast are-suffused and which
hoc munere fuerint afflata generabilia fiunt, quae vero
by-this gift shall-have-been breathed-on fertile become which but
perfusa non fuerint sterilia perseverant aut putrescunt.
suffused not shall-have-been sterile remain or rot

De avibus

VII · BIRDS

Birds are of one name but many kinds and natures. Isidore names the eagle, the vulture, the crane, the stork, the swan, the ostrich, the phoenix, the parrot, the halcyon, the pelican, the owls, the raven and the crow, the peacock, the domestic fowl, the hawk, the dove, the partridge, the quail, the swallow, and many more, and ends with augury and eggs.

Unum nomen avium, sed genus diversum. Nam sicut
one name of-birds but the-kind diverse for as
specie sibi differunt, ita et naturae diversitate.
in-appearance from-each-other they-differ so also of-nature in-diversity
Nam aliae simplices sunt, ut columbae; aliae astutae, ut
for some simple are as doves others cunning as
perdix; aliae ad manum se subiciunt, ut accipiter; aliae
the-partridge others to the-hand themselves submit as the-hawk others
reformidant, ut garamantes; aliae hominum conversatione
dread as the-garamantes others of-men in-the-company
delectantur, ut hirundo; aliae in desertis secretam vitam
delight as the-swallow others in deserts a-secret life
diligunt, ut turtur; aliae solo semine reperto pascuntur,
love as the-turtledove others with-only seed found feed
ut anser; aliae carnes edunt et rapinis intendunt, ut milvus;
as the-goose others flesh eat and to-plunders attend as the-kite
aliae enchoriae, quae manent in locis semper, ut [struthio];
others native which remain in places always as the-ostrich
aliae adventiciae, quae propriis temporibus revertuntur,
others adventitious which at-their-own times return
ut ciconiae, hirundines; aliae congregae, id est gregatim
as storks swallows others gregarious that is in-flocks

volantes, ut sturni et coturnices; aliae solivagae, id est
flying as starlings and quails others solitary that is
solitariae propter insidias depraedandi, ut aquila; accipiter
alone on-account-of the-ambushes of-plundering as the-eagle the-hawk
et quaecumque ita sunt; aliae vocibus strepunt, ut hirundo;
and whatever so are others with-voices clamor as the-swallow
aliae cantus edunt dulcissimos, ut cygnus et merula; aliae
others songs utter most-sweet as the-swan and the-blackbird others
verba et voces hominum imitantur, ut psittacus et pica.
the-words and voices of-men imitate as the-parrot and the-magpie
Sed alia sicut genere, ita et moribus innumerabilia; nam
but others as in-kind so also in-manners innumerable for
volucrum quot genera sint invenire quemque non posse.
of-birds how-many the-kinds be to-find anyone not to-be-able
Neque enim omnis Indiae et Aethiopiae aut Scythiae deserta
nor for all of-India and of-Ethiopia or of-Scythia the-deserts
quis penetrare potuit, qui earum genus vel differentias
anyone to-penetrate could who their kind or differences
nosset. Aves dictae, eo quod vias certas non habeant, sed
might-know birds called for-this that ways fixed not they-have but
per avia quaque discurrunt. Alites, quod alis alta
through pathless-places everywhere they-run-about alites because with-wings to-heights
intendant, et ad sublimia remigio alarum conscendant.
they-tend and to lofty-places by-the-rowing of-wings they-ascend
Volucres a volando. Nam unde volare, inde et ambulare
volucres from flying for whence volare thence also ambulare
dicimus. Vola enim dicitur media pars pedis sive manus;
we-say vola for is-called the-middle part of-the-foot or of-the-hand
et in avibus vola pars media alarum, quarum motu
and in birds vola the-part middle of-the-wings whose by-motion
pinnae agitantur; inde volucres. Pulli dicuntur omnium
the-feathers are-stirred thence volucres chicks are-called of-all

avium nati; sed et animalium quadrupedum nati pulli
birds the-born but also of-animals four-footed the-born chicks
dicuntur, et homo parvus pullus. Recentes igitur nati
are-called and man small pullus the-recent therefore born
pulli, eo quod polluti sint. Unde et vestis nigra pulla
pulli for-this that soiled they-be whence also a-garment black pulla
dicta est. Alae sunt, in quibus pinnae per ordinem fixae
called is wings are in which feathers in order fixed
volandi exhibent usum. Vocatae autem alae quod his
of-flying show the-use called moreover alae because with-these
aves conplexos alant ac foveant pullos. Pinna a pendendo,
birds the-embraced nourish and warm chicks pinna from hanging
id est a volando, dicta; unde et pendere. Volucres enim
that is from flying called whence also pendere birds for
pinnarum auxilio moventur, quando se aeri mandant.
of-feathers by-the-help are-moved when themselves to-the-air they-commit
Pluma quasi piluma; nam sicut pili in quadrupedum corpore,
pluma as-if piluma for as hairs in of-quadrupeds the-body
ita pluma in avibus. Avium nomina multa a sono vocis
so plume in birds of-birds the-names many from the-sound of-the-voice
constat esse conposita: ut grus, corvus, cygnus, pavo, milvus,
it-is-agreed to-be composed as crane raven swan peacock kite
ulula, cuculus, graculus et cetera. Varietas enim vocis eorum
owl cuckoo jackdaw and the-rest the-variety for of-voice their
docuit homines quid nominarentur. Aquila ab acumine
taught men what they-should-be-named eagle from the-sharpness
oculorum vocata. Tanti enim contuitus esse dicitur, ut cum
of-the-eyes called of-such for gaze to-be it-is-said that when
super maria inmobili pinna feratur nec humanis pateat
over the-seas with-motionless wing it-is-borne nor to-human lies-open
obtutibus, de tanta sublimitate pisciculos natare videat,
gazes from such height little-fishes to-swim it-sees

ac tormenti instar descendens raptam praedam pinnis
and of-an-engine like descending the-seized prey with-feathers
ad litus pertrahat. Nam et contra radium solis fertur
to the-shore drags for also against the-ray of-the-sun it-is-said
obtutum non flectere; unde et pullos suos ungue suspensos
the-gaze not to-bend whence also chicks its by-the-claw suspended
radiis solis obicit, et quos viderit inmobilem tenere
to-the-rays of-the-sun it-exposes and whom it-shall-have-seen motionless to-hold
aciem, ut dignos genere conservat; si quos vero inflectere
the-gaze as worthy of-the-race it-preserves if any but to-bend
obtutum, quasi degeneres abicit. Vultur a volatu tardo
the-gaze as-if degenerate it-casts-away vulture from flight slow
nominata putatur: magnitudine quippe corporis praepetes
named is-thought by-size indeed of-body swift
volatus non habet. Harum quasdam dicunt concubitu non
flights not it-has of-these some they-say by-coupling not
misceri, et sine copula concipere et generare; natosque
to-be-mingled and without union to-conceive and to-generate and-the-born
earum paene usque ad centum annos procedere. Vultures
their nearly all-the-way to a-hundred years to-proceed vultures
autem, sicut et aquilae, etiam ultra maria cadavera sentiunt;
moreover as also eagles even beyond seas corpses sense
altius quippe volantes multa, quae montium obscuritate
higher indeed flying many-things which of-mountains by-the-obscurity
celantur, ex alto illae conspiciunt. Gradipes apud Graecos
are-hidden from on-high they behold gradipes among the-Greeks
vocatur avis apud nos tarda, eo quod gravi volatu
is-called the-bird among us tarda for-this that by-heavy flight
detenta nequaquam, ut ceterae volucres, adtollitur velocitate
held-back by-no-means as the-other birds it-is-raised by-the-swiftness
pinnarum. Grues nomen de propria voce sumpserunt; tali
of-feathers cranes the-name from their-own voice took with-such

enim sono susurrant. Haec autem dum properant, unam
for sound they-whisper these moreover while they-hasten one
sequuntur ordine litterato. De quibus Lucanus:
they-follow in-order lettered about which Lucan

Et turbata perit dispersis littera pinnis.
and disturbed perishes with-scattered the-letter feathers

Excelsa autem petunt, quo facilius videant quas petant
lofty-places moreover they-seek by-which more-easily they-may-see which they-seek
terras. Castigat autem voce quae cogit agmen: at ubi
lands chastises moreover with-the-voice the-one-which drives the-column but when
raucescit, succedit alia: nocte autem excubias dividunt, et
it-grows-hoarse succeeds another by-night moreover the-watches they-divide and
ordinem vigiliarum per vices faciunt, tenentes lapillos suspensis
the-order of-vigils by turns they-make holding pebbles with-suspended
digitis, quibus somnos arguant: quod cavendum erit,
toes by-which sleep they-may-expose what to-be-guarded-against shall-be
clamor indicat. Aetatem in illis color prodit; nam senectute
a-cry shows the-age in them color betrays for in-old-age
nigrescunt. Ciconiae vocatae a sono quo crepitant, quasi
they-grow-black storks called from the-sound with-which they-rattle as-if
cicaniae: quem sonum oris potius esse quam vocis, quia
cicaniae which sound of-the-mouth rather to-be than of-the-voice because
eum quatiente rostro faciunt. Hae veris nuntiae, societatis
it with-shaking beak they-make these of-spring the-messengers of-fellowship
comites, serpentium hostes, maria transvolant, in Asiam
companions of-serpents enemies seas fly-across into Asia
collecto agmine pergunt. Cornices duces eas praecedunt, et
with-gathered column they-proceed crows as-leaders them precede and
ipsae quasi exercitus prosequuntur. Eximia illis circa filios
they as-if an-army follow remarkable to-them toward offspring

pietas; nam adeo nidos inpensius fovent ut assiduo incubitu
devotion for so the-nests more-zealously they-warm that by-constant brooding
plumas exuant. Quantum autem tempus inpenderint in
feathers they-shed as-much moreover time they-shall-have-spent in
fetibus educandis, tantum et ipsae invicem a pullis suis
young to-be-reared so-much also they in-turn by chicks their
aluntur. Olor avis est quem Graeci κύκνον appellant.
are-nourished olor a-bird is which the-Greeks kyknon call
Olor autem dictus quod sit totus plumis albus: nullus
olor moreover called because it-be wholly with-feathers white no-one
enim meminit cygnum nigrum; ὅλον enim Graece totum
for remembers a-swan black holon for in-Greek whole
dicitur. Cygnus autem a canendo est appellatus, eo quod
is-called cygnus moreover from singing is called for-this that
carminis dulcedinem modulatis vocibus fundit. Ideo autem
of-song the-sweetness with-modulated voices it-pours therefore moreover
suaviter eum canere, quia collum longum et inflexum habet,
sweetly it to-sing because a-neck long and bent it-has
et necesse est eluctantem vocem per longum et flexuosum
and necessary it-is the-struggling voice through a-long and winding
iter varias reddere modulationes. Ferunt in Hyperboreis
way various to-render modulations they-say in the-Hyperborean
partibus praecinentibus citharoedis olores plurimos advolare,
parts with-singing-before lyre-players swans very-many to-fly-to
apteque admodum concinere. Olores autem Latinum nomen
and-fittingly exceedingly to-sing-in-concert olores moreover a-Latin name
est; nam Graece κύκνοι dicuntur. Nautae vero sibi
is for in-Greek kyknoi they-are-called sailors but for-themselves
hunc bonam prognosim facere dicunt, sicut Aemilius ait:
this a-good prognosis to-make say as Aemilius says

Cygnus in auspiciis semper laetissimus ales:
the-swan in auspices always most-joyful bird
hunc optant nautae, quia se non mergit in undas.
this-one wish-for sailors because itself not it-plunges into the-waves

Struthio Graeco nomine dicitur, quod animal in similitudine
ostrich by-a-Greek name is-called because the-animal in the-likeness
avis pinnas habere videtur; tamen de terra altius non
of-a-bird feathers to-have seems yet from the-earth higher not
elevatur. Ova sua fovere neglegit; sed proiecta tantummodo
it-is-raised eggs its to-warm it-neglects but cast-forth only
fotu pulveris animantur. Ardea vocata quasi ardua,
by-the-warmth of-dust they-are-quickened heron called as-if ardua
id est propter altos volatus. Lucanus:
that is on-account-of high flights Lucan

Quodque ausa volare Ardea.
and-that having-dared to-fly the-heron

Formidat enim imbres, et supra nubes evolat, ut procellas
it-dreads for rains and above the-clouds flies-out that the-storms
nubium sentire non possit. Cum autem altius volaverit,
of-the-clouds to-feel not it-may-be-able when moreover higher it-shall-have-flown
significat tempestatem. Hanc multi Tantalum nominant.
it-signifies a-tempest this many Tantalus name
Phoenix Arabiae avis, dicta quod colorem phoeniceum habeat,
the-phoenix of-Arabia a-bird called because the-color phoenician it-has
vel quod sit in toto orbe singularis et unica. Nam Arabes
or because it-be in the-whole world single and unique for the-Arabs
singularem ‘phoenicem’ vocant. Haec quingentis ultra annis
single phoenix call this five-hundred beyond years

vivens, dum se viderit senuisse, collectis aromatum
living when itself it-shall-have-seen to-have-grown-old with-gathered of-spices
virgulis, rogum sibi instruit, et conversa ad radium solis
twigs a-pyre for-itself builds and turned to the-ray of-the-sun
alarum plausu voluntarium sibi incendium nutrit, sicque
by-the-clapping of-wings a-voluntary for-itself burning nourishes and-so
iterum de cineribus suis resurgit. Cinnamolgus et ipsa
again from ashes its rises-again the-cinnamolgus also itself
Arabiae avis, proinde ita vocata quod in excelsis nemoribus
of-Arabia a-bird therefore so called because in lofty groves
texit nidos ex fruticibus cinnami: et quoniam non possunt
it-weaves nests from the-shrubs of-cinnamon and since not can
ibi homines conscendere propter ramorum altitudinem et
there men to-climb on-account-of of-the-branches the-height and
fragilitatem, eosdem nidos plumbatis appetunt iaculis, ac sic
fragility the-same nests with-leaded they-attack javelins and so
cinnama illa deponunt, et pretiis amplioribus vendunt; [eo]
cinnamons those they-bring-down and at-prices greater sell for-this
quod cinnamum magis quam alia mercatores probent.
that cinnamon more than other-things merchants approve
Psittacus Indiae litoribus gignitur, colore viridi, torque puniceo,
the-parrot of-India on-the-shores is-begotten in-color green with-collar crimson
grandi lingua et ceteris avibus latiore. Unde et articulata
with-large tongue and than-the-other birds broader whence also articulated
verba exprimit, ita ut si eam non videris, hominem
words it-expresses so that if it not you-shall-have-seen a-man
loqui putes. Ex natura autem salutat dicens: 'have,'
to-speak you-would-think from nature moreover it-greets saying hail
vel χαῖρε. Cetera nomina institutione discit. Hinc est illud:
or chaire the-other names by-instruction it-learns hence is that

Psittacus a vobis aliorum nomina discam;
the-parrot from you of-others the-names I-shall-learn
hoc didici per me dicere: 'Caesar have.'
this I-learned by myself to-say Caesar hail

Alcyon pelagi volucris dicta, quasi ales oceanea, eo quod
the-halcyon of-the-sea a-bird called as-if a-bird oceanic for-this that
hieme in stagnis oceani nidos facit pullosque educit:
in-winter in the-pools of-the-ocean nests it-makes and-chicks rears
qua excubante fertur extento aequore pelagus silentibus
while-it watching it-is-said with-stretched surface the-sea with-silent
ventis continua septem dierum tranquillitate mitescere,
winds with-continuous of-seven days calm to-grow-gentle
et eius fetibus educandis obsequium ipsa rerum natura
and its to-young to-be-reared compliance the-very of-things nature
praebere. Pelicanus avis Aegyptia habitans in solitudine
to-furnish the-pelican a-bird Egyptian dwelling in the-solitude
Nili fluminis, unde et nomen sumpsit; nam Canopos
of-the-Nile river whence also the-name it-took for Canopos
Aegyptus dicitur. Fertur, si verum sit, eam occidere natos
Egypt is-called it-is-said if true it-be it to-kill young
suos, eosque per triduum lugere, deinde se ipsam vulnerare
its and-them for three-days to-mourn then it itself to-wound
et aspersione sui sanguinis vivificare filios. Stymphalidae
and by-the-sprinkling of-its blood to-quicken the-children the-Stymphalian
aves ab Stymphadibus insulis appellatae, ubi plurimum
birds from the-Stymphades islands called where most-abundantly
abundant; adversus quas Hercules sagittis est usus. Sunt
they-abound against which Hercules arrows has used they-are
enim pelagi volucres in insulis habitantes. Diomedias aves
for of-the-sea birds on islands dwelling the-Diomedean birds

a sociis Diomedis appellatas, quos ferunt fabulae in
from the-companions of-Diomedes called whom relate the-fables into
easdem volucres fuisse conversos; forma fulicae similes,
the-same birds to-have-been turned in-form to-the-coot like
magnitudine cygnorum, colore candido, duris et grandibus
of-the-size of-swans in-color white with-hard and large
rostris. Sunt autem circa Apuliam in insula Diomedia inter
beaks they-are moreover around Apulia on the-island Diomedia among
scopulos litorum et saxa volitantes; iudicant inter suos et
the-crags of-the-shores and rocks flying they-judge between their-own and
advenas. Nam si Graecus est, propius accedunt et blandiunt;
strangers for if a-Greek it-is nearer they-approach and fawn
si alienigena, morsu inpugnant et vulnerant, lacrimosis quasi
if a-foreigner by-bite they-attack and wound with-tearful as-if
vocibus dolentes vel suam mutationem vel regis interitum.
voices grieving either their change or of-the-king the-death
Nam Diomedes ab Illyriis interemptus est. Haec autem
for Diomedes by the-Illyrians killed was these moreover
aves Latine Diomediae vocantur, Graeci eas ἐρωδιούς dicunt.
birds in-Latin Diomediae are-called the-Greeks them erodious call
Memnonides aves Aegyptiae appellatae a loco, ubi Memnon
Memnonides birds Egyptian called from the-place where Memnon
periit. Nam catervatim advolare dicuntur ex Aegypto ad
perished for in-throngs to-fly-to they-are-said from Egypt to
Ilium iuxta Memnonis sepulchrum, et proinde eas Ilienses
Ilium beside of-Memnon the-tomb and accordingly them the-Ilians
Memnonias vocant. Quinto autem anno ad Ilium veniunt, et
Memnoniae call in-the-fifth moreover year to Ilium they-come and
cum biduo circumvolaverint, tertia die ineuntes pugnam
when for-two-days they-shall-have-flown-around on-the-third day entering battle
vicissim se unguibus rostrisque dilacerant. Hercyniae
in-turn themselves with-claws and-beaks they-tear-apart the-Hercynian

aves dictae ab Hercynio saltu Germaniae, ubi nascuntur,
birds called from the-Hercynian forest of-Germany where they-are-born
quarum pinnae adeo per obscurum emicant ut quamvis
whose feathers so through darkness flash that although
nox obtenta densis tenebris sit, ad praesidium itineris
the-night spread with-thick darkness be for the-protection of-the-journey
dirigendi praeiactae interluceant, cursusque viae pateat
to-be-directed thrown-before they-shine-through and-the-course of-the-way lies-open
indicio plumarum fulgentium. Onocrotalon Graeci vocant
by-the-sign of-the-feathers shining onocrotalon the-Greeks call
rostro longo. [Quorum duo genera sunt: aliud aquatile, aliud
with-beak long of-which two kinds are one aquatic the-other
solitudinis.] Ibis avis Nili fluminis, quae semetipsam
of-the-wilderness the-ibis a-bird of-the-Nile river which itself
purgat, rostro in anum aquam fundens. Haec serpentium
purges with-the-beak into the-anus water pouring this of-serpents
ova vescitur, gratissimam ex eis escam nidis suis
on-the-eggs feeds most-pleasing from them food to-nests its
deportans. Meropes eosdemque et gaulos, qui parentes suos
carrying meropes and-the-same also gauli which parents their
recondere atque alere dicuntur. Coredulus genus volatile,
to-hide and to-nourish are-said coredulus a-kind flying
quasi cor edens. Monedula avis, quasi monetula, quae dum
as-if heart eating monedula a-bird as-if monetula which when
aurum invenit, aufert et occultat. Cicero pro Valerio Flacco:
gold it-finds carries-off and hides Cicero for Valerius Flaccus
‘Non plus aurum tibi quam monedulae committendum.’
not more gold to-you than to-the-jackdaw to-be-entrusted
Vespertilio pro tempore nomen accepit, eo quod lucem
bat for time the-name received for-this that light
fugiens crepusculo vespertino circumvolet praecipiti motu acta,
fleeing at-twilight evening it-flies-around with-headlong motion driven

et tenuissimis brachiorum membris suspensa; animal murium
and by-the-thinnest of-arms members suspended an-animal of-mice
simile, non tam voce resonans quam stridore; specie
like not so-much with-voice resounding as with-a-squeak in-appearance
quoque volatilis simul et quadrupes, quod in aliis avibus
also winged at-once and four-footed which in other birds
reperiri non solet. Luscinia avis inde nomen sumpsit, quia
to-be-found not is-wont the-nightingale a-bird thence the-name took because
cantu suo significare solet diei surgentis exortum, quasi
by-song its to-signify it-is-wont of-the-day rising the-onset as-if
lucinia. Eadem et acredula, de qua Cicero in Prognosticis:
lucinia the-same also acredula about which Cicero in the-Prognostics

Et matutinos exercet acredula cantus.
and morning plies the-acredula songs

Ulula avis ἀπὸ τοῦ ὀλολύζειν, id est a planctu et
the-screech-owl a-bird from the to-howl that is from wailing and
luctu, nominata; cum enim clamat aut fletum imitatur aut
mourning named when for it-cries either weeping it-imitates or
gemitum. Unde et apud augures si lamentetur tristitiam, tacens
groaning whence also among augurs if it-lament sadness silent
ostendere fertur prosperitatem. Bubo a sono vocis
to-show it-is-said prosperity the-horned-owl from the-sound of-the-voice
conpositum nomen habet, avis feralis, onusta quidem plumis,
a-composed name has a-bird funereal laden indeed with-feathers
sed gravi semper detenta pigritia: in sepulcris die noctuque
but by-heavy always held-back sluggishness in tombs by-day and-by-night
versatur, et semper commorans in cavernis. De qua Ovidius:
it-dwells and always lingering in caves about which Ovid

Foedaque fit volucris venturi nuntia luctus,
and-foul becomes a-bird of-coming the-messenger grief
ignavus bubo dirum mortalibus omen.
the-sluggish horned-owl a-dire for-mortals omen

Denique apud augures malum portendere fertur: nam cum
finally among augurs evil to-portend it-is-said for when
in urbe visa fuerit, solitudinem significare dicunt.
in a-city seen it-shall-have-been solitude to-signify they-say
Noctua dicitur pro eo quod nocte circumvolat et per
the-night-owl is-called for that that by-night it-flies-around and by
diem non possit videre; nam exorto splendore solis, visus
day not it-can to-see for with-risen splendor of-the-sun the-sight
illius hebetatur. Hanc autem insula Cretensis non habet;
its is-dulled this moreover the-island Cretan not has
et si veniat aliunde, statim moritur. Noctua autem non
and if it-come from-elsewhere at-once it-dies the-night-owl moreover not
est bubo; nam bubo maior est. Nycticorax ipsa est
is the-horned-owl for the-horned-owl greater is nycticorax it is
noctua, quia noctem amat. Est enim avis lucifuga, et solem
the-night-owl because the-night it-loves it-is for a-bird light-fleeing and the-sun
videre non patitur. Strix nocturna avis, habens nomen de
to-see not it-endures strix a-nocturnal bird having the-name from
sono vocis; quando enim clamat stridet. De qua Lucanus:
the-sound of-voice when for it-cries it-shrieks about which Lucan

Quod trepidus bubo, quod strix nocturna queruntur.
what the-trembling horned-owl what the-strix nocturnal complain

Haec avis vulgo amma dicitur, ab amando parvulos; unde
this bird commonly amma is-called from loving little-ones whence
et lac praebere fertur nascentibus. Corvus, sive corax, nomen
also milk to-offer it-is-said to-the-new-born the-raven or corax the-name
a sono gutturis habet, quod voce coracinet. Fertur
from the-sound of-the-throat has because with-voice it-croaks it-is-said
haec avis quod editis pullis escam plene non praebeat,
this bird that with-hatched chicks food fully not it-offers
priusquam in eis per pinnarum nigredinem similitudinem
before in them through of-the-feathers the-blackness the-likeness
proprii coloris agnoscat; postquam vero eos tetros plumis
of-its-own color it-recognizes after but them dark with-feathers
aspexerit, in toto agnitos abundantius pascit. Hic prior in
it-shall-have-seen in the-whole recognized more-abundantly it-feeds this first on
cadaveribus oculum petit. Cornix, annosa avis, apud Latinos
corpses the-eye seeks the-crow a-long-lived bird among the-Latins
Graeco nomine appellatur; quam aiunt augures hominum
by-a-Greek name is-called which say the-augurs of-men
curas significationibus agere, insidiarum vias monstrare,
the-cares by-significations to-treat of-ambushes the-ways to-show
futura praedicere. Magnum nefas haec credere ut Deus
the-future to-foretell great impiety this to-believe that God
consilia sua cornicibus mandet. Huius inter multa auspicia
counsels his to-crows should-entrust of-this among many auspices
tribuunt etiam pluvias portendere vocibus; unde est illud:
they-attribute also rains to-portend by-voices whence is that

Tunc cornix plena pluviam vocat inproba voce.
then the-crow full rain calls with-wicked voice

Graculus a garrulitate nuncupatus; non, ut quidam volunt,
the-jackdaw from garrulity named not as some want
pro eo ut gregatim volent; cum sit manifestum ex voce
for that that in-flocks they-fly since it-be plain from voice
eos nuncupari. Est enim loquacissimum genus et vocibus
them to-be-named it-is for a-most-loquacious kind and with-voices
inportunum. Picae quasi poeticae, quod verba in discrimine
troublesome magpies as-if poeticae because words with distinction
vocis exprimat, ut homo. Per ramos enim arborum
of-voice they-express as man through the-branches for of-trees
pendulae inportuna garrulitate sonantes, et si linguas in
hanging with-troublesome garrulity sounding and if tongues in
sermone nequeunt explicare, sonum tamen humanae vocis
speech they-cannot to-unfold the-sound yet of-human voice
imitantur. De qua congrue quidam ait:
they-imitate about which fittingly someone says

Pica loquax certa dominum te voce saluto:
the-magpie talkative with-sure master you with-voice I-greet
si me non videas, esse negabis avem.
if me not you-see to-be you-shall-deny a-bird

Picus a Pico Saturni filio nomen sumpsit, eo quod
picus from Picus of-Saturn the-son the-name took for-this that
eam in auspiciis utebatur. Nam ferunt hanc avem quiddam
it in auspices he-used for they-say this bird something
habere divinum, illo indicio quod in quacumque arbore
to-have divine by-that sign that on whatever tree

nidificaverit, clavum, vel quidquid aliud fixum, diu haerere
it-shall-have-nested a-nail or whatever else fixed long to-cling
non potest quin statim excidat, ubi ea insederit. Iste est
not can but at-once it-fall-out where it shall-have-sat this is
picus Martius; nam alia est pica. Pavo nomen de
the-woodpecker of-Mars for another is the-magpie the-peacock the-name from
sono vocis habet; cuius caro tam dura est ut putredinem
the-sound of-voice has whose flesh so hard is that putrefaction
vix sentiat, nec facile coquatur. De quo quidam sic ait:
scarcely it-feels nor easily is-cooked about which someone so says

Miraris, quotiens gemmantes explicat alas,
you-wonder whenever jeweled it-unfolds wings
si potes hunc saevo tradere, dure, coco.
if you-can this-one to-the-cruel to-hand-over hard-one cook

Phasianus a Phaside insula Graeciae, unde primum
the-pheasant from the-Phasis island of-Greece whence first
asportatus est, appellatus. Testatur id vetus distichon
carried-away it-was called bears-witness to-this old distich
illud:
that

Argiva primo sum transportata carina:
in-an-Argive first I-was transported keel
ante mihi notum nil nisi Phasis erat.
before to-me known nothing except Phasis was

Gallus a castratione vocatus; inter ceteras enim aves
gallus from castration called among the-other for birds
huic solo testiculi adimuntur. Veteres enim abscisos gallos
to-this alone the-testicles are-taken-away the-ancients for the-cut galli

vocabant. Sicut autem a leone leaena et a dracone
called as moreover from leo leaena and from draco
dracaena, ita a gallo gallina. Cuius membra, ut ferunt
dracaena so from gallus gallina whose limbs as say
quidam, si auro liquescenti misceantur, consumi. Ans
some if with-gold melting they-be-mixed to-be-consumed the-duck
ab assiduitate natandi aptum nomen accepit. Ex quo
from the-assiduity of-swimming an-apt name received of which
genere quaedam germanae dicuntur, quod plus ceteris
kind some germanae are-called because more than-the-others
nutriant. Anseri nomen ans dedit per derivationem, vel a
they-nourish to-the-goose the-name ans gave through derivation or from
similitudine, vel quod et ipsa natandi frequentiam habeat.
likeness or because also it of-swimming the-frequency has
Iste vigilias noctis assiduitate clangoris testatur. Nullum
this the-watches of-the-night by-the-assiduity of-clamor testifies no
autem animal ita odorem hominis sentit ut anser; unde et
moreover animal so the-smell of-man senses as the-goose whence also
clangore eius Gallorum ascensus in Capitolio deprehensus
by-the-clamor its of-the-Gauls the-ascent on the-Capitol detected
est. Fuliga dicta, quod caro eius leporinam sapiat; λαγώς
was the-coot called because the-flesh its of-hare tastes lagos
enim lepus dicitur, unde et apud Graecos λαγώς vocatur.
for hare is-called whence also among the-Greeks lagos it-is-called
Est autem avis stagnensis, habens nidos in medio aquae,
it-is moreover a-bird of-pools having nests in the-middle of-water
vel in petris quas aquae circumdant, maritimoque semper
or on rocks which waters surround and-in-the-sea always
delectatur profundo. Quae dum tempestatem praesenserit,
it-delights deep which when a-tempest it-shall-have-foreseen
fugiens in vado ludit. Mergis ab assiduitate mergendi
fleeing in the-shallow plays to-the-mergi from the-assiduity of-diving

nomen hoc haesit. Saepe autem demisso in profundum
name this has-clung often moreover with-lowered into the-deep
capite aurarum signa sub fluctibus colligunt, et praevidentes
head of-the-breezes the-signs under the-waves they-gather and foreseeing
aequoris tempestatem cum clamore ad litora tendunt. Nam
of-the-sea the-tempest with clamor to the-shores they-tend for
in pelago iam gravissimam esse tempestatem, cum ad litora
on the-sea already most-severe to-be the-tempest when to the-shores
mergi confugerint. Accipiter avis animo plus armata quam
the-mergi shall-have-fled the-hawk a-bird in-spirit more armed than
ungulis, virtutem maiorem in minori corpore gestans. Hic ab
in-claws virtue greater in a-smaller body bearing this from
accipiendo, id est a capiendo, nomen sumpsit. Est enim
taking that is from catching the-name took it-is for
avis rapiendis aliis avibus avida, ideoque vocatur accipiter,
a-bird for-the-snatching other birds greedy and-therefore it-is-called accipiter
hoc est raptor. Unde et Paulus Apostolus dicit: 'Sustinetis
that is robber whence also Paul the-Apostle says you-bear
enim, si quis accipit'; ut enim diceret 'si quis rapit',
for if anyone takes that for he-might-say if anyone robs
dixit 'si quis accipit'. Fertur autem accipitres circa pullos
he-said if anyone takes it-is-said moreover hawks around chicks
suos inpios esse; nam dum viderint eos posse tentare
their impious to-be for when they-shall-have-seen them to-be-able to-try
volatus, nullas eis praebent escas; sed verberant pinnis
flights no to-them they-offer foods but they-beat with-wings
et a nido praecipitant, atque a tenero conpellunt ad
and from the-nest hurl and from tender-age drive to
praedam, ne forte adulti pigrescant. Capus Itala lingua
prey lest perhaps grown they-grow-lazy capus in-the-Italian tongue
dicitur a capiendo. Hunc nostri falconem vocant, quod
is-called from catching this ours falcon call because

incurvis digitis sit. Milvus mollis et viribus et volatu,
with-curved toes it-be the-kite soft both in-strength and in-flight
quasi mollis avis, unde et nuncupatus; rapacissimus tamen
as-if a-soft bird whence also named most-rapacious yet
et semper domesticis avibus insidiator. Ossifragus vulgo
and always to-domestic birds a-waylayer the-ossifrage commonly
appellatur avis quae ossa ab alto dimittit et frangit.
is-called the-bird which bones from on-high drops and breaks
Unde et a frangendo ossa nomen accepit. Turtur de
whence also from breaking bones the-name it-received the-turtledove from
voce vocatur; avis pudica, et semper in montium iugis et
voice is-called a-bird chaste and always on of-mountains the-ridges and
in desertis solitudinibus commorans. Tecta enim hominum
in deserted solitudes lingering the-roofs for of-men
et conversationem fugit, et commoratur in silvis. [Quae
and company it-flees and lingers in woods which
etiam hieme deplumata in truncis arborum concavis habitare
also in-winter featherless in the-trunks of-trees hollow to-dwell
perhibetur.] Cuius e contrario columba hospitia humana
is-held of-which on the-contrary the-dove the-lodgings human
diligit; domorum blanda semper habitatrix. Columbae dictae,
loves of-houses a-fond always inhabitant doves called
quod earum colla ad singulas conversiones colores mutent;
because their necks at single turns colors change
aves mansuetae, et in hominum multitudine conversantes, ac
birds tame and in of-men the-multitude dwelling and
sine felle; quas antiqui Venerias nuncupabant, eo quod
without gall which the-ancients Venerian named for-this that
nidos frequentant, et osculo amorem concipiant. Palumbes
nests they-frequent and by-a-kiss love they-conceive wood-pigeons
[eo quod sint farsae, a pabulo; quas vulgus titos vocant]
for-this that they-be stuffed from fodder which the-crowd titi calls

avis casta ex moribus appellatur, quod comes sit
a-bird chaste from manners is-called because the-companion it-be
castitatis; nam dicitur quod amisso corporali consortio solitaria
of-chastity for it-is-said that with-lost bodily partnership alone
incedat, nec carnalem copulam ultra requirat. Perdix de
it-goes nor carnal union further seeks the-partridge from
voce nomen habet, avis dolosa atque inmunda; nam masculus
voice the-name has a-bird deceitful and unclean for the-male
in masculum insurgit, et obliviscitur sexum libido praeceps.
upon the-male rises and forgets the-sex lust headlong
Adeo autem fraudulenta, ut alteri ova diripiens foveat;
so moreover fraudulent that from-another the-eggs stealing it-warms
sed fraus fructum non habet: denique dum pulli propriae
but the-fraud fruit not has finally when the-chicks of-their-own
vocem genetricis audierint, naturali quodam instinctu hanc
the-voice of-the-mother shall-have-heard by-a-natural certain instinct her
quae fovit relinquunt, et ad eandem quae genuit revertuntur.
who warmed they-leave and to the-same who begot return
Coturnices a sono vocis dictas, quas Graeci ὄρτυγας
quails from the-sound of-voice called which the-Greeks ortygas
vocant, eo quod visae fuerint primum in Ortygia
call for-this that seen they-shall-have-been first on the-Ortygia
insula. Haec adveniendi habent tempora; nam aestate
island these of-arriving have times for with-summer
depulsa maria transmeant. Ortygometra dicitur quae gregem
driven-away seas they-cross ortygometra is-called which the-flock
ducit. Eam terrae propinquantem accipiter videns rapit; ac
leads it to-the-land approaching the-hawk seeing seizes and
propterea cura est universis ducem sollicitare generis externi,
for-this-reason care it-is to-all a-leader to-solicit of-a-kind foreign
per quam caveant prima discrimina. Cibos gratissimos
through which they-may-beware-of the-first dangers foods most-pleasing

habent semina venenorum; quam ob causam eas veteres
they-have seeds of-poisons which for cause them the-ancients
vesci interdixerunt. Solum enim hoc animal, sicut et
to-be-eaten forbade alone for this animal as also
homo, caducum patitur morbum. Upupam Graeci appellant
man the-falling suffers sickness the-hoopoe the-Greeks call
eo quod stercora humana consideret, et foetenti pascatur
for-this that the-feces human it-sits-on and on-stinking feeds
fimo; avis spurcissima, cristis extantibus galeata, semper
dung a-bird most-foul with-crests standing-out helmeted always
in sepulcris et humano stercore commorans. Cuius sanguine
in tombs and in-human dung lingering whose with-blood
quisquis se inunxerit, dormitum pergens daemones
whoever himself shall-have-anointed to-sleep going demons
suffocantes se videbit. Tucos, quos Hispani ciculos vocant,
suffocating him he-shall-see tuci whom the-Spaniards ciculi call
a voce propria nominatos. Hi veniendi habent tempus,
from voice own named these of-coming have a-time
milvorum scapulis suscepti propter breves et parvos
of-kites on-the-shoulders received on-account-of short and small
volatus, ne per longa aeris spatia fatigati deficiant. Horum
flights lest through long of-air spaces wearied they-fail of-these
salivae cicadas gignunt. Passeres sunt minuta volatilia, a
the-spittles cicadas beget sparrows are tiny flying-things from
parvitate vocata; unde et pusilli parvi. Merula antiquitus
smallness called whence also pusilli small the-blackbird anciently
medula vocabatur, eo quod modulet. Alii merulam aiunt
medula was-called for-this that it-modulates others the-blackbird say
vocatam quia sola volat, quasi mera volans. Haec cum in
called because alone it-flies as-if mere flying this though in
omnibus locis nigra sit, in Achaia autem candida est. Erundo
all places black it-be in Achaia moreover white it-is the-swallow

dicta, quod cibos non sumat residens, sed in aere capiat
called because foods not it-takes sitting but in the-air it-catches
escas et edat; garrula avis, per tortuosos orbes et flexuosos
food and eats a-garrulous bird through winding circles and flexuous
circuitus pervolans, et in nidis construendis educandisque
circuits flying-through and in nests to-be-built and-to-be-reared
fetibus sollertissima; habens etiam quiddam praescium, quod
young most-skillful having also something foreknowing because
lapsura deserat nec appetat culmina. A diris quoque avibus
about-to-fall it-deserts nor seeks roofs by dire also birds
non inpetitur, nec umquam praeda est. Maria transvolat, ibique
not it-is-attacked nor ever prey it-is seas it-flies-across and-there
hieme commoratur. Turdos a tarditate dictos; hiemis enim
in-winter it-lingers thrushes from slowness called of-winter for
confinio se referunt. Turdela quasi maior turdus; cuius
at-the-border themselves they-withdraw the-turdela as-if greater thrush whose
stercore viscum generare putatur. Unde et proverbium apud
by-dung the-mistletoe to-generate is-thought whence also a-proverb among
antiquos erat, 'Malum sibi avem cacare.' Furfurio vocatus,
the-ancients was evil for-itself the-bird to-defecate the-furfurio called
quod prius farre in farinam redacto pasceretur. Ficedulae
because earlier on-spelt into meal reduced it-was-fed figpeckers
dictae, quod ficus magis edant. Panditur versiculo veteri illo:
called because figs more they-eat it-is-set-forth by-the-verselet old that

Cum me ficus alat, cum pascar dulcibus uvis,
when me the-fig may-nourish when I-may-be-fed on-sweet grapes
cur potius nomen non dedit uva mihi?
why rather a-name not gave the-grape to-me

Carduelus, quod spinis et cardibus pascitur; unde etiam
the-goldfinch because on-thorns and thistles it-feeds whence also
apud Graecos acalanthis dicta est, ab ἀκάνθαις, id est spinis,
among the-Greeks acalanthis called is from akanthais that is thorns
quibus alitur. Augures autem dicunt et in gestu et in
on-which it-is-fed the-augurs moreover say both in the-bearing and in
motu et in volatu et in voce avium signa esse constituta.
the-motion and in the-flight and in the-voice of-birds signs to-be established
Oscines aves vocant, quae ore cantuque auspicium faciunt;
oscines birds they-call which with-mouth and-song an-auspice make
ut corvus, cornix, picus. Alites, quae volatu ostendere
as the-raven the-crow the-woodpecker alites which by-flight to-show
futura videntur; quae si adversae sunt, inebrae dicuntur,
future-things seem which if adverse they-are inebrae are-called
quod inhibeant, id est vetent; si prosperae, praepetes;
because they-inhibit that is forbid if prosperous praepetes
et ideo praepetes, quia omnes aves priora petunt
and therefore praepetes because all birds the-things-in-front seek
volantes. Tertiam faciunt speciem auguriorum in avibus, quam
flying a-third they-make species of-auguries in birds which
communem vocant, ex utroque permixtam, id est cum aves ex
common they-call from both mixed that is when birds from
ore et volatu auguriant. Sed fidem non habet. Omnium autem
mouth and flight augur but credence not it-has of-all moreover
genera volucrum bis nascuntur. Primum enim ova gignuntur,
the-kinds of-birds twice are-born first for eggs are-begotten
inde calore materni corporis formantur et animantur.
then by-the-heat of-the-maternal body they-are-formed and are-quickened
Ova autem dicta ab eo quod sint uvida. Unde et uva,
eggs moreover called from that that they-be moist whence also grape
eo quod intrinsecus humore sit plena. Nam humidum est
for-this that within with-moisture it-be full for humid is

quod exterius humorem habet; uvidum, quod interius. Quidam
what outwardly moisture has uvidum what inwardly some
[autem] putant, ovum Graecam habere originem nominis. Illi
moreover think ovum Greek to-have the-origin of-the-name they
autem dicunt ᾠά, V littera ablata. Ova autem quaedam
moreover say oa with-V the-letter taken-away eggs moreover some
inani vento concipiuntur; sed non sunt generabilia, nisi quae
by-empty wind are-conceived but not are fertile except which
fuerint concubitu masculino concepta et seminali spiritu
shall-have-been by-coupling masculine conceived and by-seminal breath
penetrata. Ovorum vim tantam dicunt ut lignum perfusum
penetrated of-eggs the-force so-great they-say that wood smeared
eo non ardeat, ac ne vestis quidem contra aduratur.
with-it not burns and not a-garment even in-turn is-scorched
Admixta quoque calce glutinare fertur vitri fragmenta.
mixed also with-lime to-glue it-is-said of-glass fragments

De minutis volatilibus

VIII · SMALL FLYING CREATURES

Bees are born from the carcasses of oxen and keep kings and camps; Isidore names the drone, the wasp, the hornet, the beetles, the cicindela, the butterflies, the locust, the cicada, the fly, the gnat, and the gadfly.

Apes dictae, vel quod se pedibus invicem alligent,
bees called either because themselves with-feet mutually they-bind
vel pro eo quod sine pedibus nascuntur. Nam postea et
or for that that without feet they-are-born for afterward both
pedes et pinnas accipiunt. Haec sollertes in generandi mellis
feet and wings they-receive these skillful in of-generating honey

officio adsignatas incolunt sedes, domicilia inenarrabili arte
the-office assigned inhabit seats dwellings with-indescribable art
conponunt, ex variis floribus favum condunt, textisque
compose from various flowers the-honeycomb they-build and-with-woven
ceris innumera prole castra replent, exercitum et reges
waxes with-innumerable offspring the-camps they-fill an-army and kings
habent, proelia movent, fumum fugiunt, tumultu exasperantur.
they-have battles they-stir smoke they-flee by-tumult are-exasperated
Has plerique experti sunt de boum cadaveribus nasci. Nam
these most experienced have from of-oxen the-corpses to-be-born for
pro his creandis vitulorum occisorum carnes verberantur,
for these to-be-created of-calves slain the-flesh is-beaten
ut [ex] putrefacto cruore vermes creentur, qui postea
that from the-putrefied gore worms may-be-created which afterward
efficiuntur apes. Proprie tamen apes vocantur ortae de
are-made bees properly yet bees are-called sprung from
bobus, sicuti scabrones de equis, fuci de mulis, vespae de
oxen as hornets from horses drones from mules wasps from
asinis. Costros Graeci appellant, qui in extremis favorum
asses costri the-Greeks call which in the-farthest of-the-combs
partibus maiores creantur: quos aliqui reges putant. Dicti
parts larger are-created whom some kings think called
quod castra ducant. Fugus est maior ape, scabrone
because the-camps they-lead the-drone is greater than-the-bee than-the-hornet
minor. Dictus autem fugus quod alienos labores edat, quasi
smaller called moreover fugus because another's labors it-eats as-if
fagus; depascitur enim quod non laboravit. De quo Vergilius:
fagus it-feeds-on for what not it-labored about which Virgil

Ignavum fucos pecus a praesepibus arcent.
the-lazy drones herd from the-hives they-keep-off

Vespae *** Scabrones vocati a cabo, id est [a] caballo,
wasps (lacuna) hornets called from cabo that is from caballus
quod ex eis creentur. Sicut autem scabrones nascuntur de
because from them they-are-created as moreover hornets are-born from
equorum carnibus putridis, ita ex his iterum saepe nascuntur
of-horses the-flesh putrid so from these again often are-born
scarabaei; unde et cognominati sunt. Tauri vocantur scarabaei
beetles whence also surnamed they-are tauri are-called beetles
terrestres ricino similes. Buprestis animal est parvum in
of-the-earth to-the-tick like the-buprestis an-animal is small in
Italia simillimum scarabaeo, longipedum. Fallit inter herbas
Italy most-like to-a-beetle long-footed it-deceives among herbs
bovem maxime, unde et nomen habet, devoratumque tacto
the-ox most-of-all whence also the-name it-has and-devoured with-touched
felle ita inflammat ut rumpat. Cicindela scarabaeorum genus
gall so inflames that it-bursts the-cicindela of-beetles a-kind
est; eo quod gradiens vel volans lucet. Blattae a colore
is for-this that walking or flying it-shines blattae from color
nuncupatae, siquidem et conprehensae manum tingunt; unde
named since also seized the-hand they-stain whence
et blatteum colorem dicunt. Hoc autem animal lucem videre
also blatteus color they-call this moreover animal light to-see
non patitur, contrarium muscae, nam musca lucipeta, et blatta
not endures the-contrary of-the-fly for the-fly light-seeking and the-blatta
lucifuga est; per noctem enim tantum ambulat. Papiliones
light-fleeing is through the-night for only it-walks butterflies
aviculae sunt quae maxime abundant florentibus malvis,
little-birds are which most abound in-flowering mallows
quique vermiculos [ex] stercore suo faciunt nasci. Locusta,
and-which little-worms from dung their make to-be-born the-locust
quod pedibus sit longis veluti asta; unde et eam Graeci
because with-feet it-be long like a-spear whence also it the-Greeks

tam maritimam quam terrestrem ἀστακὸν appellant. Cicades
as-well the-sea-one as the-land-one astakon call cicadas
ex ciculorum nascuntur sputo. Haec in Italia apud Rheginos
from of-cuckoos are-born the-spittle these in Italy among the-Rhegians
mutae sunt, nec usquam alibi. Musca ex Graeco venit, sicut
mute are nor anywhere elsewhere fly from Greek comes as
et mus. Haec, sicut et apes, necatae in aqua aliquotiens post
also mouse this as also bees killed in water sometimes after
unius horae spatium reviviscunt. Cynomya Graece vocatur,
of-one hour the-space revive cynomya in-Greek is-called
id est musca canina; nam κύων Graece canis vocatur. Culex
that is fly canine for kyon in-Greek dog is-called the-gnat
ab aculeo dictus, quod sanguinem sugit. Habet enim in
from sting called because blood it-sucks it-has for in
ore fistulam in modum stimuli, qua carnem terebrat
the-mouth a-pipe in the-manner of-a-goad with-which the-flesh it-bores
ut sanguinem bibat. Sciniphes muscae minutissimae sunt,
that blood it-may-drink sciniphes flies most-tiny are
aculeis permolestae. Qua tertia plaga superbus Aegyptiorum
with-stings very-troublesome by-which the-third plague the-proud of-the-Egyptians
populus caesus est. Oestrus animal armentorum, aculeis
people struck was oestrus an-animal of-herds with-stings
permolestum. Oestrus autem Graecum est, qui Latine asilus,
very-troublesome oestrus moreover Greek is which in-Latin asilus
vulgo tabanus vocatur. Bibiones sunt qui in vino nascuntur,
commonly tabanus is-called bibiones are which in wine are-born
quos vulgo mustiones a musto appellant. Unde et Afranius:
which commonly mustiones from must they-call whence also Afranius

Cum ad me spectas et fabulare incipis,
when at me you-look and to-talk you-begin
ex ore in oculis tuis bibiones involant.
from the-mouth into eyes your bibiones fly

Gurgulio dicitur, quia pene nihil est aliud nisi guttur.
gurgulio is-called because almost nothing it-is else except throat

PREFACE

In this little book Isidore sets down, as on a short tablet, some causes of the heavens, the sites of the lands, and the spaces of the sea, so that the reader may run through their etymologies and causes in brief.

In hoc vero libello quasi in quadam brevi tabella
in this but little-book as-if on a-certain short tablet
quasdam caeli causas situsque terrarum et maris spatia
certain of-heaven causes and-the-sites of-the-lands and of-the-sea the-spaces
adnotavimus, ut in modico lector ea percurrat, et
we-have-noted that in brief the-reader them may-run-through and
conpendiosa brevitate etymologias eorum causasque cognoscat.
with-compendious brevity the-etymologies their and-causes may-know

De mundo

I · THE WORLD

The world is heaven, earth, and sea and the works of God in them; the Latins call it mundus because it is always in motion, the Greeks kosmos, ornament. It has four regions, east, west, north, and south, two gates, east and west, and two hinges, north and south.

Mundus est caelum et terra, mare et quae in eis opera Dei.
the-world is heaven and earth the-sea and which in them the-works of-God
De quo dicitur: 'Et mundus per eum factus est.' Mundus
about which it-is-said and the-world through him made was mundus
Latine a philosophis dictus, quod in sempiterno motu sit,
in-Latin by the-philosophers called because in everlasting motion it-be

ut caelum, sol, luna, aer, maria. Nulla enim requies eius
as heaven the-sun the-moon the-air the-seas no for rest its
elementis concessa est, ideoque semper in motu est. Unde et
to-elements granted is and-therefore always in motion it-is whence also
animalia Varroni videntur elementa. ‘Quoniam per semetipsa,’
animals to-Varro seem the-elements since through themselves
inquit, ‘moventur.’ Graeci vero nomen mundo de ornamento
he-says they-are-moved the-Greeks but the-name to-the-world from adornment
adcommodaverunt, propter diversitatem elementorum et
fitted on-account-of the-diversity of-the-elements and
pulchritudinem siderum. Appellatur enim apud eos κόσμος, quod
the-beauty of-the-stars it-is-called for among them kosmos which
significat ornamentum. Nihil enim mundo pulchrius oculis
signifies adornment nothing for than-the-world more-beautiful with-the-eyes
carnis aspicimus. Quattuor autem esse climata mundi, id est
of-the-flesh we-behold four moreover to-be the-climes of-the-world that is
plagas: Orientem et Occidentem, Septentrionem et Meridiem.
the-regions East and West North and South
Oriens ab exortu solis est nuncupatus. Occidens, quod diem
the-east from the-rising of-the-sun is named the-west because the-day
faciat occidere atque interire. Abscondit enim lumen mundo
it-makes to-set and to-perish it-hides for the-light from-the-world
et tenebras superinducit. Septentrio autem a septem stellis
and darkness brings-over the-north moreover from the-seven stars
axis vocatur, quae in ipso revolutae rotantur. Hic proprie
of-the-axis is-called which on it revolved are-turned this properly
et vertex dicitur, eo quod vertitur, sicut poeta ait:
also the-vertex is-called for-this that it-is-turned as the-poet says

Vertitur interea caelum.
is-turned meanwhile the-heaven

Meridies, vel quia ibi sol faciat medium diem, quasi
the-south either because there the-sun makes the-middle day as-if
medidies, vel quia tunc purius micat aether. Merum enim
medidies or because then more-purely glitters the-ether merum for
purum dicitur. Ianuae caeli duae sunt, Oriens et Occasus;
pure is-called the-doors of-heaven two are the-East and the-West
nam una porta sol procedit, alia se recipit. Cardines
for by-one gate the-sun proceeds by-the-other itself it-withdraws the-hinges
autem mundi duo, Septentrio et Meridies: in ipsis enim
moreover of-the-world two the-North and the-South on them for
volvitur caelum.
is-turned the-heaven

De atomis

II · ATOMS

Atoms are parts of bodies too small to be seen or cut, which some philosophers thought the world was made of. There are atoms in bodies, in time, and in number, and the letter is an atom of speech.

Atomos philosophi vocant quasdam in mundo corporum partes
atoms the-philosophers call certain in the-world of-bodies parts
tam minutissimas ut nec visui pateant nec τομήν, id est
so very-tiny that neither to-sight they-lie-open nor tomen that is
sectionem, recipiant; unde et ἄτομοι dicti sunt. Hi per
cutting receive whence also atomoi called they-are these through
inane totius mundi inrequietis motibus volitare et huc
the-void of-the-whole world with-restless motions to-flit and hither
atque illuc ferri dicuntur, sicut tenuissimi pulveres qui
and thither to-be-borne are-said as the-finest dusts which

infusi per fenestras radiis solis videntur. Ex his arbores
poured-in through windows by-the-rays of-the-sun are-seen from these trees
et herbas et fruges omnes oriri, ex his ignem et aquam et
and herbs and crops all to-arise from these fire and water and
universa gigni atque constare quidam philosophi gentium
all-things to-be-begotten and to-consist some philosophers of-the-gentiles
putaverunt. Sunt autem atomi aut in corpore, aut in
have-thought there-are moreover atoms either in body or in
tempore, aut in numero. In corpore, ut lapis. Dividis eum in
time or in number in body as a-stone you-divide it into
partes et partes ipsas dividis in grana, veluti sunt harenae;
parts and the-parts themselves you-divide into grains as are sands
rursumque ipsa harenae grana divide in minutissimum
and-again the-very of-sand grains divide into the-tiniest
pulverem, donec, si possis, pervenias ad aliquam minutiam,
dust until if you-can you-come to some minuteness
quae iam non sit quae dividi vel secari possit. Haec est
which now not be which to-be-divided or to-be-cut can this is
atomus in corporibus. In tempore vero sic intellegitur atomus.
the-atom in bodies in time but so is-understood the-atom
Annum, verbi gratia, dividis in menses, menses in dies,
the-year of-example for-the-sake you-divide into months the-months into days
dies in horas; adhuc partes horarum admittunt divisionem,
the-days into hours still the-parts of-hours admit division
quousque venias ad tantum temporis punctum et quandam
until you-come to such of-time a-point and a-certain
momenti stillam, ut per nullam morulam produci possit;
of-a-moment drop that through no little-delay to-be-prolonged it-can
et ideo iam dividi non potest. Haec est atomus temporis.
and therefore now to-be-divided not it-can this is the-atom of-time
In numeris, ut puta octo dividuntur in quattuor, rursus
in numbers as for-example eight are-divided into four again

quattuor in duo, deinde duo in unum. Unus autem atomus
four into two then two into one one moreover an-atom
est, quia insecabilis est. Sic et littera: nam orationem
is because uncuttable it-is so also the-letter for speech
dividis in verba, verba in syllabas, syllabam in litteras.
you-divide into words words into syllables a-syllable into letters
Littera, pars minima, atomus est, nec dividi potest.
the-letter the-part least an-atom is nor to-be-divided can
Atomus ergo est quod dividi non potest, ut in geometria
the-atom therefore is what to-be-divided not can as in geometry
punctus. Nam τόμος divisio dicitur Graece, ἄτομος indivisio.
the-point for tomos division is-called in-Greek atomos indivision

De elementis

III · THE ELEMENTS

Hyle is the first matter of things, formless but able to take every form; the Greeks call the elements stoicheia, since they agree in fellowship and pass into one another in turn. God has filled each with its own living things.

῞Υλην Graeci rerum quandam primam materiam dicunt, nullo
hylen the-Greeks of-things a-certain first matter call in-no
prorsus modo formatam, sed omnium corporalium formarum
at-all way formed but of-all bodily forms
capacem, ex qua visibilia haec elementa formata sunt; unde et
capable from which visible these elements formed are whence also
ex eius derivatione vocabulum acceperunt. Hanc ὕλην Latini
from its derivation the-name they-received this hylen the-Latins
materiam appellaverunt, ideo quia omne informe, unde
matter called therefore because all formless whence

aliquid faciendum est, semper materia nuncupatur. Proinde et
something to-be-made is always matter is-named accordingly also
eam poetae silvam nominaverunt, nec incongrue, quia materiae
it the-poets silva named nor unfittingly because the-materials
silvarum sunt. Graeci autem elementa στοιχεῖα nuncupant,
of-woods they-are the-Greeks moreover the-elements stoicheia name
eo quod sibi societatis concordia et communione
for-this that with-each-other of-fellowship by-the-concord and by-communion
quadam conveniant. Nam sic ea inter se naturali quadam
a-certain they-agree for so they among themselves by-natural a-certain
ratione iuncta dicuntur, [ut] modo originem ab igni repetentes
reason joined are-said that now the-origin from fire seeking
usque ad terram, modo a terra usque ad ignem, ut
all-the-way to earth now from earth all-the-way to fire that
ignis quidem in aera desinat, aer in aquam densetur, aqua
fire indeed into air may-end air into water may-be-thickened water
in terram crassescat; rursusque terra diluatur in aquam,
into earth may-grow-dense and-again earth may-be-dissolved into water
aqua rarescat in aera, aer in ignem extenuetur. Quapropter
water may-be-rarefied into air air into fire may-be-thinned wherefore
omnia elementa omnibus inesse, sed unumquodque eorum
all elements in-all to-be-in but each of-them
ex eo quod amplius habet accepisse vocabulum. Sunt
from that which more it-has to-have-received the-name they-are
autem divina providentia propriis animantibus distributa:
moreover by-divine providence to-their-own living-things distributed
nam caelum angelis, aerem volucribus, mare piscibus, terram
for heaven with-angels the-air with-birds the-sea with-fishes the-earth
hominibus ceterisque animantibus Creator ipse inplevit.
with-men and-the-other living-things the-Creator himself filled

De caelo

IV · HEAVEN

Heaven is named as if engraved with the stars; the Greeks call it ouranos, from seeing, and Scripture the firmament. Sometimes heaven means the air, as in the birds of heaven.

Caelum vocatum eo quod, tamquam caelatum vas, inpressa
heaven called for-this that like an-engraved vessel impressed
lumina habeat stellarum veluti signa. Nam caelatum dicitur
the-lights it-has of-the-stars as signs for engraved is-called
vas quod signis eminentioribus refulget. Distinxit enim
a-vessel which with-signs more-prominent shines marked-out for
eum Deus claris luminibus, et inplevit; sole scilicet et
it God with-bright lights and filled with-the-sun namely and
lunae orbe fulgenti et astrorum micantium splendentibus
of-the-moon with-the-orb shining and of-the-stars glittering with-splendid
signis adornavit. [Alias autem a superiora caelando.] Hic
signs adorned otherwise moreover from the-upper-things concealing this
autem Graece οὐρανὸς dicitur ἀπὸ τοῦ ὁρᾶσθαι, id est a
moreover in-Greek ouranos is-called from the to-be-seen that is from
videndo, eo quod aer perspicuus sit et ad speculandum
seeing for-this that the-air transparent it-be and for gazing
purior. Caelum autem in Scripturis sanctis ideo firmamentum
purer heaven moreover in the-Scriptures holy therefore firmament
vocatur, quod sit cursu siderum et ratis legibus fixisque
is-called because it-be by-the-course of-the-stars and by-fixed laws and-set
firmatum. Interdum et caelum pro aere accipitur, ubi venti
made-firm sometimes also heaven for the-air is-taken where winds
et nubes et procellae et turbines fiunt. Lucretius:
and clouds and storms and whirlwinds are-made Lucretius

Caelum, quod dicitur aer.
the-sky which is-called the-air

Et Psalmus: 'Volucres caeli' appellat, cum manifestum sit
and the-Psalm the-birds of-heaven calls since plain it-be
aves in aere volare; et nos in consuetudine hunc aerem
birds in the-air to-fly and we in custom this air
caelum appellamus. Nam cum de sereno vel nubilo
sky call for when about fair or cloudy-weather
quaerimus, aliquando dicimus, 'qualis est aer?', aliquando,
we-ask sometimes we-say what-sort is the-air sometimes
'quale est caelum?'
what-sort is the-sky

De partibus caeli

V · THE PARTS OF HEAVEN

The ether is the place of the stars; the sphere of heaven turns about the earth on its axis between the poles, the northern always seen and the southern never. Isidore names the hinges, the convexities, and the Milky Way.

Aether locus est in quo sidera sunt, et significat eum
the-ether the-place is in which the-stars are and it-signifies that
ignem qui a toto mundo in altum separatus est. Sane
fire which from the-whole world on high separated is certainly
aether est ipsud elementum, aethra vero splendor aetheris,
aether is the-very element aethra but the-splendor of-the-ether
et est sermo Graecus. Sphaera caeli dicta eo quod
and it-is a-word Greek the-sphere of-heaven called for-this that

species eius in rotundum formata est. Sed et quidquid
the-appearance its into a-round formed is but also whatever
tale est, a volubilitate sphaera a Graecis dicitur, sicut
such is from rollingness sphere by the-Greeks is-called as
[et] pilae quibus ludunt infantes. Nam philosophi dicunt
also the-balls with-which play children for the-philosophers say
caelum in sphaerae figuram undique esse convexum, omnibus
heaven in of-a-sphere the-figure on-all-sides to-be convex in-all
partibus aequalem, concludentem terram in media mundi
parts equal enclosing the-earth in the-middle of-the-world
mole libratam. Hunc moveri dicunt, et cum motu eius
mass poised this to-be-moved they-say and with the-motion its
sidera in eo fixa ab oriente usque ad occidentem circumire,
the-stars in it fixed from the-east all-the-way to the-west to-go-around
septentrionibus breviores gyros iuxta cardinem peragentibus.
with-the-northern-stars shorter circuits beside the-hinge completing
Axis est Septentrionis linea recta, quae per mediam pilam
the-axis is of-the-North the-line straight which through the-middle ball
sphaerae tendit; et dicta axis quod in ea sphaera ut rota
of-the-sphere stretches and called axis because on it the-sphere as a-wheel
volvitur, vel quia ibi plaustrum est. Cardines extremae
is-rolled or because there the-Wain is the-hinges the-extreme
partes sunt axis; et dictae cardines eo quod per eos
parts are of-the-axis and called cardines for-this that through them
vertitur caelum. Poli sunt circuli qui currunt per axem.
is-turned the-heaven the-poles are circles which run through the-axis
Horum alter est Septentrionalis, qui numquam occidit,
of-these the-one is the-Northern which never sets
appellaturque Boreus; alter Australis, qui numquam videtur,
and-is-called Boreus the-other the-Southern which never is-seen
et Austronotius dicitur. Et dicti poli quod sint axium
and Austronotius is-called and called poles because they-be of-axles

cycli, ex usu plaustrorum, a poliendo scilicet nominati.
cycles from the-use of-wagons from polishing namely named
Sed polus Boreus semper videtur, Austronotius numquam;
but the-pole Boreus always is-seen Austronotius never
quia dextra caeli altiora sunt, pressa austri. Convexa
because the-right of-heaven higher are pressed-down of-the-south the-convexities
extrema caeli sunt, a curvitate dicta. Nam convexum
the-extremes of-heaven are from curvature called for convex
curvum est et inclinatum, et in modum circuli flexum.
curved is and inclined and in the-manner of-a-circle bent
Lacteus circulus via est quae in sphaera videtur, a candore
the-milky circle a-way is which in the-sphere is-seen from whiteness
dicta, quia alba est. Quam aliqui dicunt viam esse qua
called because white it-is which some say the-way to-be by-which
circuit sol, et ex splendoris ipsius transitu ita lucere.
goes-around the-sun and from of-the-splendor of-itself the-passage so to-shine

De circulis caeli

VI · THE CIRCLES OF HEAVEN

The circles divide heaven into zones, some temperate enough to live in and some too cold or hot: the arctic, where the Bears are seen; the summer tropic, where the sun turns back; the equinoctial; the antarctic, contrary to the arctic; and the winter tropic. The zodiac breaks off in a lacuna.

Habitatio ista caeli circulorum distincta zonis quasdam
the-habitation that of-heaven of-circles distinguished by-zones certain
partes temperie sua incolere permisit, quasdam negavit
parts by-temperance its to-inhabit allowed certain it-denied
enormitate frigoris aut caloris. Zonae autem ipsae quinque
by-the-excess of-cold or of-heat the-zones moreover themselves five

sunt, quae ideo zonae vel circuli appellantur eo quod in
are which therefore zones or circles are-called for-this that in
circumductione sphaerae existunt. Quorum primus circulus
the-circumduction of-the-sphere they-exist of-which the-first circle
ideo ἀρκτικὸς appellatur eo quod intra eum Arctorum signa
therefore arktikos is-called for-this that within it of-the-Bears the-signs
inclusa prospiciuntur, quae a nostris in ursarum speciem
enclosed are-seen which by ours in of-bears the-appearance
ficta Septentriones appellantur. Secundus circulus ex eo
fashioned Septentriones are-called the-second circle from this
θερινὸς τροπικὸς dicitur quia in eo circulo sol Aquilonis
therinos tropikos is-called because in that circle the-sun of-the-North
finibus aestatem faciens ultra eum circulum non transit, sed
at-the-borders summer making beyond that circle not passes but
statim revertitur; et inde τροπικὸς appellatur. Tertius circulus
at-once returns and thence tropikos is-called the-third circle
ἡμερινὸς, qui a Latinis ideo aequinoctialis appellatur eo
hemerinos which by the-Latins therefore equinoctial is-called for-this
quod sol, cum ad eum orbem pervenerit, aequinoctium facit.
that the-sun when to that circle it-shall-have-come the-equinox makes
Ἡμερινὸς enim Latine dies dicitur atque nox, quo circulo
hemerinos for in-Latin day is-called and night by-which circle
dimidia sphaerae pars constituta respicitur. Quartus circulus
the-half of-the-sphere part set is-viewed the-fourth circle
ἀνταρκτικὸς vocatur eo quod contrarius sit circulo quem
antarktikos is-called for-this that contrary it-be to-the-circle which
ἀρκτικὸν nominamus. Quintus circulus χειμερινὸς τροπικὸς, qui
arktikon we-name the-fifth circle cheimerinos tropikos which
a Latinis hiemalis sive brumalis appellatur, ideo quia sol
by the-Latins wintry or of-the-solstice is-called therefore because the-sun
cum ad eum circulum pervenerit, hiemem his, qui ad
when to that circle it-shall-have-come winter for-those who toward

Aquilonem sunt, facit, aestatem autem his, qui Austri
the-North are makes summer moreover for-those who of-the-South
partibus commorantur. Zodiacus [autem] circulus est ***
in-the-parts dwell the-zodiac moreover circle is (lacuna)

De aere et nube

VII · AIR AND CLOUDS

Air is named from lifting or from being borne; part of it belongs to heaven, the turbulent part to the earth, and from it come winds, fire and thunder, clouds, rain, snow, and hail. Clouds are named from covering the sky.

Aer est inanitas plurimum habens admixtum raritatis quam
air is an-emptiness most having mixed of-thinness than
cetera elementa. De quo Vergilius:
the-other elements about which Virgil

Longum per inane secutus.
long through the-void following

Aer dictus ἀπὸ τοῦ ἀΐρειν, ab eo quod ferat terram,
air called from the to-lift from that that it-bears the-earth
vel ab eo quod feratur. Hic autem partim ad terrenam,
or from that that it-is-borne this moreover partly to earthly
partim ad caelestem materiam pertinet; nam ille subtilis,
partly to heavenly matter pertains for that subtle
ubi ventosi ac procellosi motus non possunt existere,
where windy and stormy motions not can to-exist
ad caelestem pertinet partem; iste vero turbulentior, qui
to the-heavenly pertains part this but more-turbulent which

exhalationibus humidis corporescit, terrae deputatur; quique
by-exhalations moist becomes-bodily to-the-earth is-assigned and-which
ex se multas species reddit. Nam commotus ventos facit;
from itself many species renders for moved winds it-makes
vehementius concitatus ignes et tonitrua; contractus nubila;
more-vehemently roused fires and thunders contracted clouds
conspissatus pluviam; congelantibus nubilis nivem; turbulentius
thickened rain with-freezing clouds snow more-turbulently
congelantibus densioribus nubilis grandinem; distentus serenum
with-freezing denser clouds hail stretched serenity
efficit. Nam aerem densum nubem esse, nubem rarefactam
it-produces for air dense cloud to-be cloud rarefied
et solutam aerem. Nubes dictae ab obnubendo, id est
and loosened air clouds called from beclouding that is
operiendo, caelum; unde et nuptae, quod vultus suos velent;
covering the-sky whence also brides because faces their they-veil
unde et Neptunus, quod nubat, id est mare et terram
whence also Neptune because he-veils that is the-sea and the-earth
tegat. Nubes autem aeris densitas facit. Venti enim aerem
he-covers clouds moreover of-the-air the-density makes winds for the-air
conglobant nubemque faciunt; unde est illud:
gather-into-a-ball and-a-cloud make whence is that

Atque in nubem cogitur aer.
and into a-cloud is-driven the-air

De tonitruo

VIII · THUNDER

Thunder is the noise of wind breaking a cloud it has hollowed, like a bladder bursting; lightning is struck out with it but seen first, because light is quicker than sound.

Tonitruum dictum quod sonus eius terreat; nam tonus sonus.
thunder called because the-sound its terrifies for tonus sound
Qui ideo interdum tam graviter concutit omnia ita ut caelum
which therefore sometimes so heavily shakes all-things so that the-sky
discississe videatur quia, cum procella vehementissimi venti
to-have-split-apart seems because when the-storm of-a-most-vehement wind
nubibus se repente inmiserit, turbine invalescente
into-the-clouds itself suddenly shall-have-sent with-the-whirlwind growing-strong
exitumque quaerente, nubem, quam excavavit, impetu magno
and-an-exit seeking the-cloud which it-has-hollowed with-impetus great
perscindit, ac sic cum horrendo fragore defertur ad aures.
it-tears-through and so with horrendous crash it-is-brought to the-ears
Quod mirari quis non debeat, cum vesicula quamvis
which to-wonder-at anyone not ought since a-little-bladder although
parva magnum tamen sonitum displosa emittit. Cum tonitruo
small great yet sound burst emits with thunder
autem simul et fulgura exprimi: sed illud celerius
moreover at-once also lightning to-be-pressed-out but that more-quickly
videtur, quia clarum est; hoc autem ad aures tardius
is-seen because bright it-is this moreover to the-ears more-slowly
pervenire. Lux autem quae apparet ante tonitruum fulgetra
to-come the-light moreover which appears before the-thunder fulgetra

vocatur. Quae, ut diximus, ideo ante videtur quia clarum
is-called which as we-have-said therefore before is-seen because bright
est lumen; tonitruum autem ad aures tardius pervenit.
is the-light the-thunder moreover to the-ears more-slowly comes

De fulminibus

IX · THUNDERBOLTS

The thunderbolt is made by clouds clashing and is driven by winds; its fire is finer than ours and pierces more. Its three names are fulgus, fulgor, and fulmen, and so it is shown with three rays.

Fulgur et fulmen, ictus caelestis iaculi, a feriendo dicti;
fulgur and fulmen the-strokes of-the-heavenly javelin from striking called
fulgere enim ferire est atque percutere. Fulmen autem conlisa
fulgere for to-strike is and to-hit the-thunderbolt moreover clashed
nubila faciunt. Nam omnium rerum conlisio ignem creat, ut
clouds make for of-all things the-clashing fire creates as
in lapidibus cernimus, vel attritu rotarum, vel in silvis
in stones we-see or by-the-rubbing of-wheels or in forests
arborum: simili modo in nubibus ignis, unde et prius nubila
of-trees in-like manner in clouds fire whence also earlier clouds
sunt, deinde ignes. Vento autem et igni fulmina in nubibus
are then fires by-wind moreover and fire thunderbolts in clouds
fieri et inpulsu ventorum emitti. Ideo autem
to-be-made and by-the-impulse of-winds to-be-sent-forth therefore moreover
fulminis ignem vim habere maiorem ad penetrandum, quia
of-the-thunderbolt the-fire force to-have greater for penetrating because
subtilioribus elementis factus est quam noster, id est qui
from-subtler elements made it-is than ours that is which

nobis in usu est. Tria sunt autem eius nomina, fulgus, fulgor
to-us in use is three are moreover its names fulgus fulgor
et fulmen: fulgus, quia tangit; fulgor, quia incendit et urit;
and fulmen fulgus because it-touches fulgor because it-kindles and burns
fulmen, quia findit; ideo et cum ternis radiis finguntur.
fulmen because it-splits therefore also with three-each rays they-are-fashioned

De arcu et nubium effectibus

X · THE RAINBOW AND THE EFFECTS OF CLOUDS

Isidore explains the rainbow, rains, the nimbus, showers, hail, snow, ice, frost, and dew, then mist, gloom, darkness as the mere absence of light, shadow, and light.

Arcus caelestis dictus a similitudine curvati arcus. Iris huic
the-bow heavenly called from the-likeness of-a-curved bow Iris to-this
nomen proprium est. Et dicitur iris quasi aeris, id est quod
the-name proper is and is-called iris as-if aeris that is because
per aera ad terras descendat. Hic autem a sole resplendet,
through the-air to the-lands it-descends this moreover from the-sun shines-back
dum cavae nubes ex adverso radium solis accipiunt et
while hollow clouds from opposite the-ray of-the-sun receive and
arcus speciem fingunt; cui varios colores illa dat res,
of-a-bow the-appearance fashion to-which various colors that thing gives
quia aqua tenuis, aer lucidus, et nubes caligantes, inradiata
because water thin air bright and clouds dark irradiated
ista varios creant colores. Pluviae dictae quod fluant, quasi
these various create colors rains called because they-flow as-if
fluviae; nascuntur enim de terrae et maris anhelitu. Quae
fluviae they-are-born for from of-the-earth and of-the-sea the-breath which
cum altius elevatae fuerint, aut solis calore resolutae,
when higher raised they-shall-have-been either of-the-sun by-the-heat loosened

aut vi ventorum conpressae, stillantur in terris. Nimbus
or by-the-force of-winds pressed are-dripped onto the-lands nimbus
est densitas nubis intempesta et obscura; et inde nimbus a
is a-density of-cloud untimely and dark and thence nimbus from
nube. Sunt autem nimbi repentinae et praecipites pluviae.
cloud there-are moreover nimbi sudden and headlong rains
Nam pluvias vocamus lentas et iuges, quasi fluvias, quasi
for rains we-call slow and continual as-if fluviae as-if
fluentes. Imbres autem et ad nubes et ad pluvias pertinent,
flowing showers moreover both to clouds and to rains pertain
dictae a Graeco vocabulo quod terram inebrient ad
called from a-Greek word because the-earth they-make-drunk for
germinandum. Ex his enim cuncta creantur, unde et Lucretius:
sprouting from these for all-things are-created whence also Lucretius

Ex igni, terra atque anima nascuntur et imbri.
from fire earth and breath are-born and rain

Est autem nomen Graecum. Grando appellata quod forma
it-is moreover a-name Greek hail called because the-form
eius granorum similitudinem habeat. Haec autem ventorum
its of-grains the-likeness has this moreover of-winds
rigore durantur in nube, ac solidantur in nivem,
by-the-stiffness is-hardened in the-cloud and is-solidified into snow
ruptoque aere solvuntur. Nix a nube, unde venit; et
and-with-broken air is-loosened snow from cloud whence it-comes and
glacies a gelu et aqua, quasi gelaquies, id est gelata
ice from frost and water as-if gelaquies that is frozen
aqua. Gelus autem quod eo stringatur tellus; γῆ quippe
water frost moreover because by-it is-bound the-earth ge indeed
terra dicitur. Tunc autem maiori gelu stringitur terra, cum
earth is-called then moreover by-greater frost is-bound the-earth when

fuerit nox serena. Pruina est matutini temporis frigus,
shall-have-been the-night clear hoarfrost is of-morning time the-cold
quae inde pruina nomen accepit quia sicut ignis urit; πῦρ
which thence pruina the-name received because like fire it-burns pyr
enim ignis. Urere enim et ad frigus et ad solem pertinet;
for fire to-burn for both to cold and to the-sun pertains
nam uno sermone duo diversa significantur, pro eo quod
for by-one word two diverse-things are-signified for that that
unum effectum habent. Similis enim vis est et caloris et
one effect they-have like for the-force is both of-heat and
frigoris, unde et utraque saxa rumpunt. Nam calor urit, ut est:
of-cold whence also both rocks burst for heat burns as is

Uritur infelix Dido.
is-burned unhappy Dido

Item frigus urit, ut est:
likewise cold burns as is

Aut boreae penetrabile frigus adurat.
or of-Boreas the-penetrating cold may-scorch

Ros Graecum est, quod illi δρόσος dicunt. Alii putant ros
dew Greek it-is which they drosos call others think ros
dictum quia rarus est, et non spissus ut pluvia. Nebula
called because thin it-is and not dense as rain mist
inde dicta, unde et nubila, ab obnubendo scilicet, hoc est
thence called whence also clouds from beclouding namely that is
operiendo, terram, sive quod nubes volans faciat. Exhalant
covering the-earth or because a-cloud flying it-makes they-exhale
enim valles humidae nebulas et fiunt nubes; inde nubilum,
for valleys moist mists and are-made clouds thence cloudiness

inde nives. Nebulae autem ima petunt cum serenitas
thence snows mists moreover the-lowest-places seek when serenity
est; summa, cum nubilum. Caligo umbra est de spissitudine
it-is the-highest when cloudiness gloom a-shadow is from the-density
aeris effecta. Et dicta caligo quod maxime aeris calore
of-the-air produced and called caligo because most of-the-air by-the-heat
gignatur. Tenebrae dicuntur quod teneant umbras. Nihil
it-is-begotten darkness is-called because it-holds shadows nothing
autem sunt tenebrae, sed ipsa lucis absentia tenebrae
moreover is darkness but the-very of-light absence darkness
dicuntur; sicut silentium non aliqua res est, sed ubi sonus
is-called as silence not some thing is but where sound
non est, silentium dicitur; sic tenebrae non aliquid sunt, sed
not is silence is-called so darkness not something is but
ubi lux non est, tenebrae dicuntur. Umbra est aer carens
where light not is darkness is-called shadow is air lacking
solem. Dicta autem quod fiat cum solis obicimur
the-sun called moreover because it-is-made when of-the-sun we-are-set-against
radiis. Est autem mobilis et incerta, et ex solis circuitu
to-the-rays it-is moreover mobile and uncertain both from of-the-sun the-circuit
et ex motu ventorum. Namque quotiens movetur in
and from the-motion of-winds for whenever it-is-moved in
sole, nobiscum movere videtur; quia ubi quoque loco a
the-sun with-us to-move it-seems because wherever in-whatever place from
radiis solis obstitimus, perinde lumen illi auferimus.
the-rays of-the-sun we-have-stood-against thereby the-light from-it we-take-away
Sic et ingredi nobiscum umbra et gestus nostros videtur
so also to-walk with-us the-shadow and gestures our seems
imitari. Lux, ipsa substantia; lumen, quod a luce manat,
to-imitate light itself the-substance radiance what from light flows
id est candor lucis: sed hoc confundunt auctores.
that is the-brightness of-light but this confuse the-authors

De ventis

XI · THE WINDS

Wind is air in motion, named for its violence. There are four principal winds, Subsolanus, Auster, Favonius, and Septentrio, each with a wind on either side, twelve in all; Isidore names each, with the Etesian winds, the breeze, the whirlwind, the tempest, and the storm.

Ventus [est] aer commotus et agitatus, et pro diversis partibus
wind is air moved and stirred and for diverse parts
caeli nomina diversa sortitus. Dictus autem ventus quod sit
of-heaven names diverse obtained called moreover ventus because it-be
vehemens et violentus. Vis enim eius tanta est ut non solum
vehement and violent the-force for its so-great is that not only
saxa et arbores evellat, sed etiam caelum terramque conturbet,
rocks and trees it-tears-up but also heaven and-earth it-disturbs
maria commoveat. Ventorum quattuor principales spiritus sunt.
the-seas it-stirs of-winds four principal blasts are
Quorum primus ab oriente Subsolanus, a meridie Auster, ab
of-which the-first from the-east Subsolanus from the-south Auster from
occidente Favonius, a septentrione eiusdem nominis ventus
the-west Favonius from the-north of-the-same name a-wind
adspirat; habentes geminos hinc inde ventorum spiritus.
breathes having twin on-this-side on-that of-winds blasts
Subsolanus a latere dextro Vulturnum habet, a laevo Eurum:
Subsolanus on the-side right Vulturnus has on the-left Eurus
Auster a dextris Euroaustrum, a sinistris Austroafricum:
Auster on the-right Euroauster on the-left Austroafricus
Favonius a parte dextra Africum, a laeva Corum: porro
Favonius on the-side right Africus on the-left Corus further
Septentrio a dextris Circium, a sinistris Aquilonem. Hi
Septentrio on the-right Circius on the-left Aquilo these

duodecim venti mundi globum flatibus circumagunt. Quorum
twelve winds of-the-world the-globe with-blasts drive-around whose
nomina propriis causis signata sunt: nam Subsolanus vocatus
names by-their-own causes marked are for Subsolanus called
eo quod sub ortu solis nascatur; Eurus eo quod
for-this that under the-rising of-the-sun it-is-born Eurus for-this that
ab ἠῶ fluat, id est ab oriente; est enim coniunctus
from eo it-flows that is from the-east it-is for joined
Subsolano; Vulturnus, quod alte tonat. De quo Lucretius:
to-Subsolanus Vulturnus because on-high it-thunders about which Lucretius

Altitonans Vulturnus et Auster fulmine pollens;
high-thundering Vulturnus and Auster with-the-thunderbolt powerful

Auster ab auriendo aquas vocatus, unde et crassum
Auster from drawing waters called whence also thick
aerem facit et nubila nutrit. Hic Graece νότος appellatur,
air it-makes and clouds nourishes this in-Greek notos is-called
propter quod interdum corrumpat aerem. Nam pestilentiam,
on-account-of that sometimes it-corrupts the-air for the-pestilence
quae ex corrupto aere nascitur, Auster flans in reliquas
which from corrupted air is-born Auster blowing into the-remaining
regiones transmittit; sed sicut Auster pestilentiam gignit, sic
regions transmits but as Auster pestilence begets so
Aquilo repellit. Euroauster dictus quod ex una parte habeat
Aquilo repels Euroauster called because on one side it-has
Eurum, ex altera Austrum. Austroafricus, quod iunctus sit
Eurus on the-other Auster Austroafricus because joined it-be
hinc et inde Austro et Africo. Ipse et Libonotus,
on-this-side and on-that to-Auster and to-Africus he also Libonotus
quod sit ei Libs hinc et inde Notus. [Favonius
because there-be to-him Libs on-this-side and on-that Notus Favonius

nuncupatus eo quod foveat fruges ac flores. Hic Graece
named for-this that it-cherishes crops and flowers this in-Greek
Zephyrus, quia plerumque vere flat; unde est illud:
Zephyrus because mostly in-spring it-blows whence is that

Et Zephyro putris se gleba resolvit.]
and by-Zephyr the-crumbling itself clod loosens

Zephyrus Graeco nomine appellatus eo quod flores et
Zephyrus by-a-Greek name called for-this that flowers and
germina eius flatu vivificentur. Hic Latine Favonius dicitur
buds its by-breath are-quickened this in-Latin Favonius is-called
propter quod foveat quae nascuntur. Austro autem flores
on-account-of that it-cherishes what are-born by-Auster moreover flowers
solvuntur, a Zephyro fiunt. Africus a propria regione
are-loosened by Zephyr they-are-made Africus from its-own region
vocatus; in Africa enim initium flandi sumit. Corus est
called in Africa for the-beginning of-blowing it-takes Corus is
qui ab occidente aestivo flat. Et vocatus Corus quod ipse
which from the-west summer blows and called Corus because it
ventorum circulum claudat, et quasi chorum faciat. Hic
of-the-winds the-circle closes and as-if a-chorus makes this
antea Caurus dictus, quem plerique Argesten dicunt, non
before Caurus called which most Argestes call not
ut inprudens vulgus Agrestem. Septentrio dictus eo quod
as the-imprudent crowd Agrestis Septentrio called for-this that
circulo septem stellarum consurgit, quae vertente se
with-the-circle of-seven stars it-rises which with-turning itself
mundo resupinato capite ferri videntur. Circius dictus
the-world with-head thrown-back to-be-borne seem Circius called
eo quod Coro sit iunctus. Hunc Hispani Gallicum
for-this that to-Corus it-be joined this the-Spaniards Gallicus

vocant, propter quod eis a parte Galliciae flat. Aquilo
call on-account-of that to-them from the-side of-Gallicia it-blows Aquilo
dictus eo quod aquas stringat et nubes dissipet; est
called for-this that the-waters it-binds and the-clouds dissipates it-is
enim gelidus ventus et siccus. Idem et Boreas, quia
for a-cold wind and dry the-same also Boreas because
ab Hyperboreis montibus flat; inde enim origo eiusdem
from the-Hyperborean mountains it-blows thence for the-origin of-the-same
venti est; unde et frigidus est. Natura enim omnium
wind is whence also cold it-is the-nature for of-all
septentrionalium ventorum frigida et sicca est, australium
northern winds cold and dry is of-the-southern
humida et calida. Ex omnibus autem ventis duo cardinales
moist and warm of all moreover winds two cardinal
sunt: Septentrio et Auster. Etesiae autem flabra Aquilonis
are Septentrio and Auster the-Etesian moreover blasts of-Aquilo
sunt, quibus nomen inditum est quod certo anni tempore
are to-which the-name given is because at-a-fixed of-the-year time
flatus agere incipiunt; ἐνιαυτὸς enim Graece, annus Latine
blasts to-drive they-begin eniautos for in-Greek year in-Latin
dicitur. Haec autem cursum rectum a Borea in Aegyptum
is-called these moreover a-course straight from Boreas into Egypt
ferunt, quibus Auster contrarius est. Duo sunt autem extra
bear to-which Auster contrary is two are moreover outside
hos ubique spiritus magis quam venti: aura et altanus.
these everywhere breaths rather than winds the-breeze and the-altanus

Aura ab aere dicta, quasi aeria, quod lenis sit motus
aura from air called as-if aeria because gentle it-be the-motion
aeris. Agitatus enim aer auram facit; unde et Lucretius:
of-the-air stirred for air a-breeze makes whence also Lucretius

Aerias auras.
airy breezes

Altanus, qui in pelago est, per derivationem ab alto, id est
altanus which on the-sea is through derivation from the-deep that is
mari, vocatus. Nam alter est flatus in ripis quem diximus
the-sea called for another is the-blowing on banks which we-have-called
auram; nam aura terrae est. Turbo est volubilitas
aura for aura of-the-land is the-whirlwind is the-rollingness
ventorum; et turbo dictus a terra, quotiens ventus consurgit
of-winds and turbo called from the-earth whenever the-wind rises
et terram in circuitum mittit. Tempestas aut pro tempore
and the-earth into a-circuit sends tempest either for time
dicitur, sicut ubique historiographi solent, dum dicunt, ‘ea
is-said as everywhere the-historiographers are-wont when they-say at-that
tempestate’; aut ab statu caeli, quia magnitudine sui multis
time or from the-state of-the-sky because by-the-greatness its for-many
diebus oritur. Verno autem et autumnali tempore quam
days it-arises in-spring moreover and autumnal time as
maximae fiunt tempestates, quando nec plena est aestas, nec
greatest are-made tempests when neither full is summer nor
plena hiems; unde et medium et confine utriusque temporis
full winter whence also in-the-middle and border of-each time
ex coniunctione aerum contrariorum efficiuntur tempestates.
from the-conjunction of-airs contrary are-produced tempests
Fragor a fractarum rerum nominatus est sonitu, quia
crash from of-broken things named is by-the-sound because

sicca quaeque et arida facile frangit. Procella ab eo quod
dry all and arid easily it-breaks storm from that that
percellat, id est percutiat et evellat; est enim vis venti
it-strikes-down that is strikes and tears-up it-is for the-force of-wind
cum pluvia. Procellae enim aut de fulminibus, aut de
with rain storms for either from thunderbolts or from
ventis fiunt. Nihil autem velocius ventis; unde et propter
winds are-made nothing moreover swifter than-winds whence also on-account-of
celeritatem tam ventos quam fulmina alata fingunt poetae, ut:
swiftness as-well winds as thunderbolts winged feign the-poets as

Alitis Austri.
of-the-winged Auster

De aquis

XII · WATERS

Water is named from its level surface; with fire it is the strongest element of human life. It tempers the sky, fertilizes the earth, rises to the heavens, washes away sins, and gives drink to all.

Aqua dicta quod superficies eius aequalis sit; hinc et aequor
water called because the-surface its level it-be hence also aequor
appellatum, quia aequaliter sursum est. Duo autem validissima
called because evenly upward it-is two moreover the-strongest
vitae humanae elementa ignis et aqua; unde graviter damnantur
of-life human elements fire and water whence heavily are-condemned
quibus ignis et aqua interdicitur. Aquarum elementum
to-whom fire and water is-interdicted of-waters the-element

ceteris omnibus imperat. Aquae enim caelum temperant,
over-the-others all rules waters for the-sky temper
terram fecundant, aerem exhalationibus suis incorporant,
the-earth fertilize the-air with-exhalations their embody
scandunt in sublime et caelum sibi vindicant. Quid enim
they-climb into high and the-sky to-themselves claim what for
mirabilius aquis in caelo stantibus? Parum sit in tantam
more-marvelous than-waters in the-sky standing little be-it into such
pervenisse altitudinem; rapiunt et secum piscium examina;
to-have-come height they-snatch also with-themselves of-fishes swarms
effusae omnium in terra nascentium causa fiunt. Fruges
poured-out of-all on earth being-born the-cause they-become crops
gignunt, arbores, frutices herbasque produnt, sordes detergunt,
they-beget trees shrubs and-herbs they-bring-forth filth they-wipe-away
peccata abluunt, potum cunctis animantibus tribuunt.
sins they-wash-away drink to-all living-things they-assign

De diversitate aquarum

XIII · THE DIVERSITY OF WATERS

Waters differ in nature: some heal wounds and eyes, some make the voice clear or take away the taste for wine, some bring memory or forgetfulness, some sink nothing and some float nothing, and some are hot, since they pass through veins of sulfur and alum.

Aquarum naturae diversitas multa est: aliae enim salis, aliae
of-waters of-the-nature the-diversity great is some for of-salt others
nitri, aliae aluminis, aliae sulphuris, aliae bituminis, aliae
of-niter others of-alum others of-sulfur others of-bitumen others
curam morborum adhibentes. Nam iuxta Romam Albulae
the-cure of-diseases applying for near Rome the-Albula

aquae vulneribus medentur. In Italia fons Ciceronis oculorum
waters wounds heal in Italy the-spring of-Cicero of-the-eyes
vulnera curat. In Aethiopia lacus est quo perfusa corpora
wounds cures in Ethiopia a-lake there-is with-which suffused bodies
velut oleo nitescunt. Zamae fons in Africa canoras voces
as-if with-oil shine of-Zama the-spring in Africa melodious voices
facit. Ex Clitorio lacu Italiae qui biberint vini taedium
makes from the-Clitorian lake of-Italy who shall-have-drunk of-wine a-loathing
habent. In Chio insula fontem esse quo hebetes fiant. In
have on Chios the-island a-spring to-be by-which dull they-become in
Boeotia duo fontes; alter memoriam, alter oblivionem adfert.
Boeotia two springs the-one memory the-other forgetfulness brings
Cyzici fons amorem Veneris tollit. Boeotiae lacus furialis
of-Cyzicus the-spring the-love of-Venus takes-away of-Boeotia a-lake frenzied
est, de quo qui biberit ardore libidinis exardescit. In
is from which who shall-have-drunk with-the-ardor of-lust blazes in
Campania sunt aquae quae sterilitatem feminarum et virorum
Campania are waters which the-sterility of-women and of-men
insaniam abolere dicuntur. In Aethiopiae fonte Rubro qui
the-madness to-abolish are-said in of-Ethiopia the-spring Red who
biberit lymphaticus fit. Leinus fons Arcadiae abortus
shall-have-drunk frenzied becomes the-Leinus spring of-Arcadia abortions
fieri non patitur. In Sicilia fontes sunt duo, quorum unus
to-be-made not allows in Sicily springs are two of-which one
sterilem fecundat, alter fecundam sterilem facit. In Thessalia
the-sterile makes-fruitful the-other the-fruitful sterile makes in Thessaly
duo sunt flumina: ex uno bibentes oves nigras fieri, ex
two are rivers from one drinking sheep black to-become from
altero albas, ex utroque varias. Clitumnus lacus in Umbria
the-other white from both varied the-Clitumnus lake in Umbria
maximos boves gignit. Reatinis paludis aquis iumentorum
the-greatest oxen begets by-the-Reatine of-marsh waters of-draft-animals

ungulas indurari. In Asphaltite lacu Iudaeae nihil mergi
the-hooves to-be-hardened in the-Asphaltite lake of-Judea nothing to-be-sunk
potest, quidquid animam habet. In Indis Siden vocari
can whatever soul has among the-Indians Side to-be-called
stagnum, in quo nihil innatat, sed omnia merguntur. At
a-pool in which nothing floats but all-things are-sunk but
contra in Africae lacu Apuscidamo omnia fluitant, nihil
on-the-contrary in of-Africa the-lake Apuscidamus all-things float nothing
mergitur. Marsidae fons in Phrygia saxa egerit. In Achaia
is-sunk of-Marsida the-spring in Phrygia rocks casts-out in Achaia
aqua profluit e saxis Styx appellata, quae ilico potata
water flows-forth from rocks Styx called which on-the-spot drunk
interficit. Gelonium stagnum Siciliae tetro odore abigit
kills the-Gelonian pool of-Sicily by-foul smell drives-away
proximantes. Fons est in Africa circa templum Ammonis,
those-approaching a-spring there-is in Africa around the-temple of-Ammon
qui humoris nexibus humum stringit: favillas etiam in
which of-moisture by-the-bonds the-soil binds ashes even into
cespitem solidat. Fons Iob in Idumaea quater in anno
turf solidifies the-spring of-Job in Idumaea four-times in the-year
colorem mutare dicitur: id est pulverulentum, sanguineum,
the-color to-change is-said that is dusty bloody
viridem et limpidum; ternis mensibus in anno tenens
green and clear for-three-each months in the-year holding
ex his unum colorem. In Trogodytis lacus est; ter [in]
of these one color among the-Troglodytes a-lake there-is thrice in
die fit amarus et deinde totiens dulcis. Fons Siloa
the-day it-becomes bitter and then as-often sweet the-spring Siloam
ad radicem montis Sion non iugibus aquis, sed in
at the-root of-the-mountain Sion not with-continual waters but at
certis horis diebusque ebullit. In Iudaea quondam rivus
fixed hours and-days bubbles-up in Judea once a-stream

sabbatis omnibus siccabatur. In Sardinia fontes calidi oculis
on-sabbaths all was-dried in Sardinia springs hot the-eyes
medentur, fures arguunt; nam caecitate detegitur eorum
heal thieves convict for by-blindness is-uncovered their
facinus. In Epiro esse fontem in quo faces extinguntur
crime in Epirus to-be a-spring in which torches are-extinguished
accensae et accenduntur extinctae. Apud Garamantes fontem
kindled and are-kindled extinguished among the-Garamantes a-spring
esse ita algentem die ut non bibatur, ita ardentem
to-be so cold by-day that not it-may-be-drunk so burning
nocte ut non tangatur. Iam vero in multis locis aquae
by-night that not it-may-be-touched now but in many places waters
manant perpetim ferventes, tanta vi ut balnea calefaciant.
flow perpetually boiling with-such force that baths they-heat
Quaedam enim terrae sunt quae multum sulphuris et
certain for lands there-are which much of-sulfur and
aluminis habent. Itaque cum per venas calentes aqua frigida
of-alum have and-so when through veins hot water cold
venit, vicino sulphuris calore contacta excandescit, nec
comes by-the-neighboring of-sulfur heat touched it-grows-hot nor
talis ab origine effluit, sed permutatur dum venit. Sulphur
such from the-origin flows-out but is-changed while it-comes sulfur
enim alumenque secum ferunt aquae; utramque materiam
for and-alum with-themselves carry waters each matter
igne plenam minimisque motibus incalescentem.
of-fire full and-by-the-least motions growing-hot

De mari

XIV · THE SEA

The sea is the gathering of the waters, named from its bitterness. It does not grow with all the rivers it receives, for several reasons, and its color changes with the winds.

Mare est aquarum generalis collectio. Omnis enim congregatio
sea is of-waters the-general collection every for gathering
aquarum, sive salsae sint sive dulces, abusive maria
of-waters whether salt they-be or sweet loosely seas
nuncupantur, iuxta illud: 'Et congregationes aquarum vocavit
are-named according-to that and the-gatherings of-waters he-called
maria.' Proprie autem mare appellatum eo quod aquae eius
seas properly moreover mare called for-this that the-waters its
amarae sint. Aequor autem vocatum quia aequaliter sursum est;
bitter be aequor moreover called because evenly upward it-is
et quamvis aquae fluctuantes velut montes erigantur, sedatis
and although the-waters fluctuating like mountains be-raised with-calmed
rursus tempestatibus adaequantur. Altitudo enim maris
again tempests they-are-leveled the-depth for of-the-sea
diversa est, indiscreta tamen dorsi eius aequalitas. Ideo
diverse is undistinguished yet of-the-back its the-evenness therefore
autem mare incrementum non capere, cum omnia flumina,
moreover the-sea increase not to-take though all rivers
omnes fontes recipiat, haec causa est: partim quod influentes
all springs it-receive this the-cause is partly because the-flowing-in
undas ipsa magnitudo eius non sentiat: deinde, quod
waves the-very size its not feels then because
amara aqua dulce fluentum consumat; vel quod ipsae nubes
the-bitter water the-sweet stream consumes or because the-very clouds
multum aquarum ad se attrahant; sive quod illum partim
much of-waters to themselves draw or because it partly

auferant venti, partim sol exsiccet; postremum, quod per
carry-off the-winds partly the-sun dries-up last because through
occulta quaedam terrae foramina percolatus, et ad caput
hidden certain of-the-earth openings filtered and to the-head
amnium fontesque revolutus recurrat. Maris autem certum
of-rivers and-springs rolled-back it-runs-back of-the-sea moreover fixed
⟨non⟩ esse colorem, sed pro qualitate ventorum mutari;
not to-be the-color but according-to the-quality of-the-winds to-be-changed
nam modo flavum est, modo lutulentum, modo atrum.
for now yellow it-is now muddy now black

De oceano

XV · THE OCEAN

The Ocean circles the world, flowing in and out with the tides, and takes its names from the lands it touches; at Gades it opens into the Great Sea, where Hercules set his columns.

Oceanum Graeci et Latini ideo nominant eo quod in
Ocean the-Greeks and Latins therefore name for-this that in
circuli modum ambiat orbem. [Sive a celeritate, eo
of-a-circle the-manner it-goes-around the-world or from swiftness for-this
quod ocius currat.] Item quia ut caelum purpureo colore
that more-swiftly it-runs likewise because as the-sky with-purple color
nitet: oceanus quasi κυάνεος. Iste est qui oras terrarum
it-shines ocean as-if kyaneos this is which the-shores of-the-lands
amplectitur, alternisque aestibus accedit atque recedit;
embraces and-by-alternate tides approaches and recedes
respirantibus enim in profundum ventis aut revomit
with-breathing for into the-deep winds either it-vomits-back

maria, aut resorbet. Quique a proximis regionibus diversa
seas or sucks-back and-which from the-nearest regions diverse
vocabula sumpsit: ut Gallicus, Germanicus, Scythicus, Caspius,
names took as Gallic German Scythian Caspian
Hyrcanus, Athlanticus, Gaditanus. Nam Gaditanum fretum
Hyrcanian Atlantic Gaditan for the-Gaditan strait
a Gadibus dictum, ubi primum ab Oceano maris Magni
from Gades called where first from the-Ocean of-the-sea Great
limen aperitur; unde et Hercules cum Gadibus pervenisset,
the-threshold is-opened whence also Hercules when to-Gades he-had-come
columnas ibi posuit, sperans illic esse orbis terrarum finem.
columns there placed hoping there to-be of-the-circle of-lands the-end

De mediterraneo mari

XVI · THE MEDITERRANEAN SEA

The Great Sea flows from the Ocean in the west and divides Europe, Africa, and Asia. Isidore names its gulfs in order to the Black Sea, then the names it takes from provinces, islands, peoples, towns, kings, and men who fell into it: the Aegean from a rock like a goat, the Icarian and the Hellespont from Icarus and Helle.

Mare Magnum est quod ab occasu ex Oceano fluit et in
the-Sea Great is which from the-setting from the-Ocean flows and toward
meridiem vergit, deinde ad septentrionem tendit; quod inde
the-south turns then to the-north stretches which thence
magnum appellatur quia cetera maria in conparatione eius
great is-called because the-other seas in comparison of-it
minora sunt. Iste est et Mediterraneus, quia per mediam
smaller are this is also the-Mediterranean because through the-middle
terram usque ad orientem perfunditur, Europam et Africam
land all-the-way to the-east it-is-poured Europe and Africa

Asiamque disterminans. Cuius primae partis sinus, qui
and-Asia dividing whose of-the-first part the-gulf which
in Hispaniis perfunditur, Ibericus et Balearicus appellatur.
into the-Spains is-poured Iberian and Balearic is-called
Deinde Gallicus, qui Narbonensem provinciam adluit. Mox
then the-Gallic which the-Narbonese province washes soon
Ligusticus, qui iuxta Genuam urbem est proximus. Post
the-Ligurian which beside Genoa the-city is next after
haec Tyrrhenus, qui Italiam adtingit; quem Graeci Ionium,
these the-Tyrrhenian which Italy touches which the-Greeks Ionian
Itali Inferum vocant. Inde Siculus, qui a Sicilia usque
the-Italians Lower call thence the-Sicilian which from Sicily all-the-way
ad Cretam vadit. Deinde Creticus, qui in Pamphyliam
to Crete goes then the-Cretan which into Pamphylia
et Aegyptum pertendit. Deinde Hellespontus, qui in
and Egypt extends then the-Hellespont which into
septentrionem retorquens, anfractibus magnis iuxta Graecias
the-north twisting with-windings great beside the-Greeces
et Illyricum in angustias septem stadiorum stringitur; quo
and Illyricum into narrows of-seven stades is-drawn-tight where
Xerses ponte navibus facto in Graeciam commeavit:
Xerxes with-a-bridge of-ships made into Greece crossed
ibi est Abydos. Inde diffusus aequore patenti rursus
there is Abydos thence spread with-a-surface open again
stringitur et facit Propontidem; qui mox in quingentos
it-is-drawn-tight and makes the-Propontis which soon into five-hundred
passus coartatur, fitque Bosphorus Thracius, quo Darius
paces is-narrowed and-becomes the-Bosporus Thracian where Darius
copias transportavit. Inde Ponticus sinus amplissimus a tergo
forces transported thence the-Pontic gulf most-ample at the-back
Maeotidis paludibus; quod mare ex multitudine fluminum
of-Maeotis with-marshes which sea from the-multitude of-rivers

dulcius quam cetera, nebulosumque et brevius. Unde et
sweeter than the-others and-misty and shorter whence also
Pontum vocatum, quod sit pervius; atque eo praeter
Pontus called because it-be passable and on-it except
phocas et thynnos atque delphinos, alias beluas maiores
seals and tunnies and dolphins other monsters greater
non patitur. Sicut autem terra dum una sit, pro diversis
not it-allows as moreover the-earth though one it-be for diverse
locis variis appellatur vocabulis, ita et pro regionibus hoc
places by-various is-called names so also for regions this
mare magnum diversis nominibus nuncupatur: nam Ibericum
sea great by-diverse names is-named for the-Iberian
et Asiaticum a provinciis dictum; ab insulis Balearicum,
and Asiatic from provinces called from islands the-Balearic
Siculum, Creticum, Cyprium, Aegeum, Carpatium. Nam
Sicilian Cretan Cyprian Aegean Carpathian for
inter Tenedum et Chium saxum est in mare potius
between Tenedos and Chios a-rock there-is in the-sea rather
quam insula, quod visentibus procul caprae simile creditur,
than an-island which to-those-seeing far-off to-a-she-goat like is-believed
quam Graeci αἶγα nuncupant, unde et Aegeum mare est
which the-Greeks aiga name whence also the-Aegean sea is
dictum; sic et Carpatium mare inter Aegyptum et Rhodum
called so also the-Carpathian sea between Egypt and Rhodes
ab insula Carpato illic posita. A gentibus Gallicum,
from the-island Carpathos there placed from nations the-Gallic
Ausonium, Dalmatium, Ligusticum. Ab oppidis Argolicum,
Ausonian Dalmatian Ligurian from towns the-Argolic
Corinthium, Tyrium, Adriaticum. Nam Adria quaedam civitas
Corinthian Tyrian Adriatic for Adria a-certain city
Illyrico mari proxima fuit, quae Adriatico mari nomen
to-the-Illyrian sea nearest was which to-the-Adriatic sea the-name

dedit. A positione caeli, ut Superum et Inferum; quod
gave from the-position of-the-sky as the-Upper and Lower because
sit oriens superior, occidens inferior; est autem Tuscum
be the-east higher the-west lower it-is moreover the-Tuscan
et Adriaticum. A memoria regis, ut Ionium. Io quippe
and Adriatic from the-memory of-a-king as the-Ionian Io indeed
rex fuit Graeciae, unde [et] Iones Athenienses. Hoc mare
king was of-Greece whence also Ionians the-Athenians this sea
et Tyrrhenum dictum, sive quod Tusciam adluit, id est
also Tyrrhenian called either because Tuscia it-washes that is
Tyrrheniam, sive a Tyrrhenis nautis, qui se in hoc
Tyrrhenia or from the-Tyrrhenian sailors who themselves into this
mare praecipitaverunt. Et sciendum Ionium sinum esse
sea threw and to-be-known the-Ionian gulf to-be
inmensum, ab Ionia usque ad Siciliam, et huius partes esse
immense from Ionia all-the-way to Sicily and of-this the-parts to-be
Adriaticum, Achaicum et Epiroticum. A moribus accolarum
the-Adriatic Achaean and Epirote from the-manners of-the-dwellers
Euxinus, Axenus ante appellatus. A casibus hominum qui
the-Euxine Axenus before called from the-mishaps of-men who
deciderunt in mare, ut Hellespontum, Icarium, Myrteum.
fell into the-sea as the-Hellespont Icarian Myrtoan
Nam Myrteum mare dictum a Myrtili lapsu, quod illic
for the-Myrtoan sea called from of-Myrtilus the-fall because there
ab Oenomao praecipitatus sit. Icarus vero Cretensis, ut
by Oenomaus hurled he-was Icarus but the-Cretan as
fabulae ferunt, altiora petens, pinnis solis calore solutis
the-fables relate higher-places seeking with-wings of-the-sun by-the-heat loosened
mari, in quo cecidit, nomen inposuit. Phrixus quoque
on-the-sea in which he-fell the-name imposed Phrixus also
cum Helle sorore sua fugiens insidias novercales conscendit
with Helle sister his fleeing the-ambushes stepmotherly boarded

navem signum arietis habentem, qua liberatus est. Helles
a-ship the-sign of-a-ram having by-which freed he-was Helle
autem soror eius perpessa naufragium decidit in mare, et
moreover sister his having-suffered shipwreck fell into the-sea and
mortua Hellesponti mari nomen dedit. Ab ordine fluenti
dead of-the-Hellespont to-the-sea the-name gave from the-order of-the-flow
Propontis. Nam dictum Propontum quia Pontum praevenit.
the-Propontis for called Propontus because the-Pontus it-precedes
Item et a transitu vel angustis meatibus boum Bosphorus.
likewise also from the-passage or narrow passages of-oxen the-Bosporus
Aegyptius autem pelagus Asiae datur, Gallicus Europae,
the-Egyptian moreover sea to-Asia is-given the-Gallic to-Europe
Africus Libyae: his ut quaeque proxima sunt, venerunt
the-African to-Libya to-these as each nearest are they-have-come
in partes. Pelagus autem est latitudo maris sine litore
into parts pelagus moreover is the-breadth of-the-sea without shore
et portu, Graeco nomine ἀπὸ τοῦ πλαγίου, hoc est a
and harbor by-Greek name from the oblique that is from
latitudine, dictus; unde et plagia, eo quod sint inportuosa.
breadth called whence also plagia for-this that they-be harborless

De sinibus maris

XVII · GULFS OF THE SEA

Gulfs are the greater recesses of the sea. The Red Sea is colored by its red shores, and divides into the Persian and Arabian gulfs.

Sinus dicuntur maiores recessus maris, ut in mari Magno
gulfs are-called the-greater recesses of-the-sea as in the-sea Great
Ionius, in Oceano Caspius, Indicus, Persicus, Arabicus, qui et
the-Ionian in the-Ocean the-Caspian Indian Persian Arabian which also
mare Rubrum, qui Oceano adscribitur. Rubrum autem mare
the-sea Red which to-the-Ocean is-assigned Red moreover sea
vocatum eo quod sit roseis undis infectum; non tamen
called for-this that it-be with-rosy waves dyed not yet
talem naturam habet qualem videtur ostendere, sed vicinis
such nature it-has as it-seems to-show but by-the-neighboring
litoribus vitiatur gurges atque inficitur; quia omnis terra, quae
shores is-vitiated the-flood and is-dyed because all land which
circumstat pelago, rubra est et sanguineo colori proxima.
surrounds the-sea red is and to-blood color nearest
Ideoque inde minium acutissimum excernitur, et alii colores
and-therefore thence vermilion sharpest is-sifted and other colors
quibus pictura variatur. Ergo cum terra hanc habeat naturam,
by-which painting is-varied therefore since the-land this has nature
fluctibus subinde diluitur, et quidquid adesum est, in
by-the-waves continually it-is-washed and whatever eaten-away is into
colorem cadit. Ob hoc etiam in his litoribus gemmae rubrae
color falls for this also on these shores gems red
inveniuntur. Lapillus enim eiusmodi humo involutus cum
are-found a-pebble for of-this-kind by-soil wrapped when
inter arenas attritus est, et terrae colorem habet et maris.
among sands rubbed it-is both of-the-land the-color has and of-the-sea

Hoc mare in duos sinus scinditur. Ex his, qui ab oriente
this sea into two gulfs is-split of these which on the-east
est, Persicus appellatur, quia ora illius Persae inhabitant.
is Persian is-called because the-shores of-it the-Persians inhabit
Alter vero Arabicus dicitur, quod sit circa Arabiam.
the-other but Arabian is-called because it-be around Arabia

De aestibus et fretis

XVIII · TIDES AND STRAITS

A tide belongs to the Ocean, a strait to either sea. Isidore explains the strait of Rhegium and its Scylla and Charybdis, the Syrtes, and the shoals.

Aestus ad Oceanum pertinet, fretus ad utrumque mare. Nam
tide to the-Ocean pertains strait to each sea for
aestus est maris accessus vel recessus, id est inquietudo;
tide is of-the-sea the-approach or recess that is restlessness
unde et aestuaria, per qua mare vicissim tam accedit
whence also estuaries through which the-sea in-turn as-much approaches
quam recedit. Fretum autem appellatum quod ibi semper
as recedes strait moreover called because there always
mare ferveat; nam fretum est angustum et quasi fervens
the-sea boils for strait is a-narrow and as-if boiling
mare, ab undarum fervore nominatum, ut Gaditanum vel
sea from of-the-waves the-boiling named as the-Gaditan or
Siculum; nam freta dicta Varro ait quasi fervida, id est
Sicilian for freta called Varro says as-if fervida that is
ferventia, et motum fervoris habentia. Fretum Siciliae, quod
boiling and the-motion of-boiling having the-strait of-Sicily which
Rhegium dicitur, Sallustius tali ex causa vocari scribit
Rhegium is-called Sallust such from cause to-be-called writes

dicens Italiae olim Siciliam coniunctam fuisse, et dum esset
saying to-Italy once Sicily joined to-have-been and while it-was
una tellus, medium spatium aut per humilitatem obrutum
one land the-middle space either through lowness overwhelmed
est aquis, aut per angustiam scissum. Et inde Ῥήγιον
was by-waters or through narrowness split and thence Rhegion
nominatum, quia Graece abruptum hoc nomine nuncupatur.
named because in-Greek broken-off by-this name is-named
Est autem artissimum trium milium spatio Siciliam ab
it-is moreover most-narrow of-three of-miles by-a-space Sicily from
Italia dividens, fabulosis infame monstris, cuius hinc
Italy dividing by-fabulous infamous monsters of-which on-this-side
inde Scylla et Charybdis ostenditur. Scyllam accolae saxum
on-that Scylla and Charybdis is-shown Scylla the-dwellers a-rock
mari inminens appellant, simile celebratae formae procul
over-the-sea overhanging call like to-a-celebrated form to-those-seeing
visentibus. Unde et monstruosam speciem fabulae illi
far-off whence also a-monstrous appearance the-fables to-it
dederunt, quasi formam hominis capitibus caninis succinctam,
gave as-if the-form of-a-man with-heads canine girded
quia conlisi ibi fluctus latratus videntur exprimere. Charybdis
because dashed there the-waves barkings seem to-express Charybdis
dicta quod gurgitibus occultis naves obsorbeat; est enim
called because by-whirlpools hidden ships it-sucks-down it-is for
mare verticosum, et inde ibi laniata naufragia profundo
a-sea full-of-eddies and thence there torn wrecks from-the-deep
emergunt. Ter autem in die erigit fluctus, et ter obsorbet;
emerge thrice moreover in the-day it-raises waves and thrice sucks-down
nam accipit aquas ut vomat, vomit ut rursus accipiat.
for it-receives waters that it-may-vomit it-vomits that again it-may-receive
Syrtes sunt harenosa in mari loca. Syrtes autem Sallustius
the-Syrtes are sandy in the-sea places Syrtes moreover Sallust

a tractu vocari dicit, quod omnia ad se trahant, et
from drawing to-be-called says because all-things to themselves they-draw and
adpropinquanti vadoso mari haereant. Haec autem ad mare
to-one-approaching in-shallow sea they-cling these moreover to the-sea
Aegyptium vicinae sunt, et pariter admiscuntur. Vada vero
Egyptian near are and equally are-mixed shoals but
sunt per qua in mari vel in fluminibus homines vel animalia
are through which in the-sea or in rivers men or animals
pedibus vadunt, quae Vergilius brevia appellat, Graeci βραχέα.
on-feet wade which Virgil brevia calls the-Greeks brachea

De lacis et stagnis

XIX · LAKES AND POOLS

A lake holds still water unmixed with the sea. Isidore describes the Dead Sea, where nothing living sinks or lives, the lakes of Tiberias and Genesar, Benacus, and Lucrinus and Avernus, whose fumes once killed birds until Augustus cut down its woods.

Sunt autem et quaedam maria quae non miscuntur Oceani
there-are moreover also certain seas which not are-mixed of-the-Ocean
fluctibus aut mari Magno, et dicuntur lacus et stagna.
with-the-waves or with-the-sea Great and are-called lakes and pools
Lacus est receptaculum in quo aqua retinetur nec miscetur
lake is a-receptacle in which water is-held-back nor is-mixed
fluctibus, ut lacus Asphalti, ut lacus Benacus et Larius, et
with-the-waves as the-lake of-Asphalt as the-lake Benacus and Larius and
ceteri quos Graeci λίμναι, id est stagnos, vocant. Nam fontes
the-rest which the-Greeks limnai that is pools call for springs
labuntur in fluviis; flumina in freta discurrunt; lacus stat
glide into rivers rivers into straits run-off the-lake stands

in loco nec profluit. Et dictus lacus quasi aquae locus. Lacus
in place nor flows-forth and called lacus as-if of-water the-place the-lake
Asphalti idem et mare Mortuum vocatum propter quod
of-Asphalt the-same also the-sea Dead called on-account-of that
nihil gignit vivum, nihil recipit ex genere viventium. Nam
nothing it-begets living nothing receives from the-kind of-living-things for
neque pisces habet neque adsuetas aquis et laetas mergendi
neither fishes it-has nor accustomed to-waters and glad of-diving
usu patitur aves, sed et quaecumque viventia mergenda
in-the-use it-endures birds but also whatever living-things to-be-sunk
temtaveris, quacumque arte demersa statim resiliunt, et
you-shall-have-tried by-whatever art plunged at-once spring-back and
quamvis vehementer inlisa confestim excutiuntur; sed neque
although vehemently dashed at-once are-shaken-out but neither
ventis movetur resistente turbinibus bitumine, quo aqua
by-winds it-is-moved with-resisting to-whirlwinds bitumen by-which the-water
omnis stagnatur, neque navigationis patiens est, quia omnia
all is-stagnated nor of-navigation tolerant is because all
vita carentia in profundum merguntur, nec materiam ullam
of-life lacking into the-deep are-sunk nor matter any
sustinet, nisi quae bitumine inlustratur. Lucernam accensam
it-sustains except what with-bitumen is-smeared a-lamp lit
ferunt supernatare, extincto demergi lumine. Hoc et mare
they-say to-float with-extinguished to-be-sunk light this also the-sea
Salinarum dicitur, sive lacus Asphalti, id est bituminis;
of-the-Salt-pans is-called or the-lake of-Asphalt that is of-bitumen
et est in Iudaea inter Iericho et Zoaran. Longitudo
and it-is in Judea between Jericho and Zoara the-length
eius usque ad Zoaras Arabiae dirigitur stadiis septingentis
its all-the-way to Zoara of-Arabia is-directed for-stades seven-hundred
octuaginta; latitudo stadiis centum quinquaginta usque ad
eighty the-breadth for-stades a-hundred fifty all-the-way to

viciniam Sodomorum. Lacus Tiberiadis ab oppido Tiberiade
the-neighborhood of-Sodom the-lake of-Tiberias from the-town Tiberias
vocatus, quod quondam Herodes in honorem Tiberii Caesaris
called which once Herod in honor of-Tiberius Caesar
condidit. Est autem in Iudaea omnibus lacis salubrior, et
founded it-is moreover in Judea than-all lakes more-healthful and
ad sanitatem corporum quodammodo efficacior. Circuit
for the-health of-bodies in-a-way more-efficacious it-goes-around
stadia *** Genesar lacus amplissimus in Iudaea longitudine
stades (lacuna) Genesar a-lake most-ample in Judea in-length
centum quadraginta extenditur stadiis, latitudine quadraginta
a-hundred forty is-extended for-stades in-breadth forty
diffunditur, crispantibus aquis, auram non ventis, sed de
it-spreads with-ruffling waters a-breeze not from-winds but from
se ipso sibi excreans. Unde et Genesar dicitur Graeco
it itself for-itself breathing-forth whence also Genesar it-is-called by-a-Greek
vocabulo, quasi generans sibi auram; denique per diffusiora
word as-if generating for-itself a-breeze finally through more-spread
spatia lacus frequentibus auris spirantibus agitatur; unde
spaces the-lake by-frequent breezes breathing is-stirred whence
et purior haustus eius, et ad potandum dulcis et habilis.
also purer the-draft its and for drinking sweet and fit
Benacus lacus Italiae in Venetia, de quo fluvius nascitur
Benacus a-lake of-Italy in Venetia from which a-river is-born
Mincius; qui lacus magnitudine sui tempestates imitatur
the-Mincius which lake by-the-size its tempests imitates
marinas. Lucrinus et Avernus lacus Campaniae sunt. Lucrinus
of-the-sea Lucrinus and Avernus lakes of-Campania are Lucrinus
autem dictus quia olim propter copiam piscium vectigalia
moreover called because once on-account-of the-abundance of-fishes revenues
magna praestabat. Avernus autem lacus vocatus quod aves
great it-furnished Avernus moreover lake called because birds

ibi supervolare non possent; nam antea silvarum densitate
there to-fly-over not could for before of-woods by-the-density
sic ambiebatur ut exhalantis inde per angustias aquae
so it-was-surrounded that exhaling thence through narrows of-water
sulphureae odor gravissimus supervolantes aves halitu suo
sulfurous the-odor most-heavy the-overflying birds by-breath its
necaret: quam rem Augustus Caesar intellegens, deiectis
killed which thing Augustus Caesar understanding with-thrown-down
silvis ex pestilentibus amoena reddidit loca. Lacus autem
woods from pestilent pleasant he-rendered the-places lake moreover
idem et stagnus, ubi inmensa aqua convenit. Nam dictus
the-same also stagnus where immense water comes-together for called
est stagnus ab eo quod illic aqua stet nec decurrat.
is stagnus from that that there water stands nor runs-down

De abysso

XX · THE ABYSS

The abyss is the unfathomable depth of waters from which springs and rivers come; Isidore distinguishes water, wave, latex, drop, and foam.

Abyssus profunditas est aquarum inpenetrabilis, sive speluncae
abyss the-depth is of-waters impenetrable or caves
aquarum latentium, e quibus fontes et flumina procedunt;
of-waters hidden from which springs and rivers proceed
vel quae occulte subter eunt, unde et abyssus dictus.
or which secretly beneath go whence also abyss called
Nam omnes aquae, sive torrentes, per occultas venas ad
for all waters or torrents through hidden veins to
matricem abyssum revertuntur. Fluctus dicti quod flatibus
the-mother abyss return waves called because by-blasts

fiant. Ventorum enim inpulsu agitatae aquae fluctuant.
they-are-made of-winds for by-the-impulse stirred waters fluctuate
Aqua est stativa et sine motu aequalis. Unda vero, eminens
water is standing and without motion level wave but the-rising
liquor qui semper in motu est. Lucretius:
liquid which always in motion is Lucretius

Aerias undas,
airy waves

id est motus, et corpus illud quod refluctuat. Nam nec
that is the-motion and body that which surges-back for neither
unda per se aqua est, sed aqua in motu quodam et
the-wave by itself water is but water in motion a-certain and
agitatione, quasi ab eundo et redeundo, unda vocata. Latex
agitation as-if from going and returning wave called latex
proprie liquor fontis est; et dicta latex quod in venis
properly the-liquid of-a-spring is and called latex because in the-veins
terrae lateat. Gutta est quae stat, stilla, quae cadit. Hinc
of-the-earth it-lies-hidden gutta is what stands stilla what falls hence
stillicidium, quasi stilla cadens. Stiria enim Graecum est, id est
stillicidium as-if a-drop falling stiria for Greek is that is
gutta: inde fit diminutivum, ut dicamus stilla: dum autem
drop thence is-made the-diminutive that we-say stilla while moreover
stat, aut pendet de tectis vel arboribus, quasi glutinosa gutta
it-stands or hangs from roofs or trees as-if glutinous a-gutta
est; dum ceciderit, stilla est. Spuma dicta [est] ab eo
it-is when it-shall-have-fallen a-stilla it-is foam called is from that
quod spuatur; sordes enim sunt undarum; unde et mustum
that it-is-spat the-filth for they-are of-the-waves whence also must
et ea quae coquuntur spuma purgantur. Hinc et sputum.
and those-things which are-cooked by-foam are-purged hence also spittle

De fluminibus

XXI · RIVERS

Isidore distinguishes river, torrent, stream, and spring, then names the famous rivers: the four of Paradise, the Gihon or Nile, the Ganges, the Tigris, and the Euphrates; then the Indus, the Hydaspes, the Jordan, the rivers of Asia, the Tanais, the Padus, the Tiber, the Danube, the Rhone, the Rhine, and the rivers of Spain.

Fluvius est perennis aquarum decursus, a fluendo perpetim
river is a-perennial of-waters running-down from flowing perpetually
dictus. Proprie autem flumen ipsa aqua, fluvius cursus
called properly moreover flumen the-very water fluvius the-course
aquae. Prius autem flumen quam fluvius, id est prior aqua
of-water earlier moreover flumen than fluvius that is earlier the-water
quam decursus. Duo autem sunt fluminum genera: unum
than the-running-down two moreover are of-rivers kinds one
torrens, alterum vivum. De quo Vergilius:
torrent the-other living about which Virgil

Donec me flumine vivo
until myself in-the-river living
abluero.
I-shall-have-washed

Torrens est aqua veniens cum impetu. Dictus autem torrens
torrent is water coming with impetus called moreover torrens
quia pluvia crescit, siccitate torrescit, id est arescit. De
because by-rain it-grows by-drought it-is-parched that is dries-up about
quo Pacuvius:
which Pacuvius

Flammeo vapore torrens torret.
with-flaming heat the-torrent parches

Cui Graeci ab hieme nomen dederunt, nos ab aestate; illi
to-which the-Greeks from winter the-name gave we from summer they
a tempore quo succrescit, nos a tempore quo siccatur.
from the-time in-which it-grows we from the-time in-which it-is-dried
Amnis fluvius est nemore ac frondibus redimitus, et ex ipsa
amnis a-river is with-grove and leaves crowned and from the-very
amoenitate amnis vocatus. Decursus proprie finis cursus,
pleasantness amnis called decursus properly the-end of-the-course
sive aquarum sit seu quarumlibet rerum. Rivi dicti quod
whether of-waters it-be or of-whatever things streams called because
deriventur ad inrigandum, id est ad inducendum aquas in
they-are-drawn-off for irrigating that is for bringing-in waters into
agris; nam inrigare inducere est. Gurges proprie locus altus in
fields for to-irrigate to-bring-in is gurges properly a-place deep in
flumine. Puteus est locus defossus ex quo hauritur aqua, a
a-river well is a-place dug from which is-drawn water from
potatione dictus. Fons caput est aquae nascentis, quasi aquas
drinking called spring the-head is of-water being-born as-if waters
fundens. Quidam autem fluviorum propriis ex causis nomina
pouring some moreover of-rivers their-own from causes names
acceperunt, ex quibus nonnulli notandi sunt qui in historiis
received of which some to-be-noted are which in histories

celebres memorantur. Geon fluvius de Paradiso exiens atque
celebrated are-recorded Geon a-river from Paradise going-out and
universam Aethiopiam cingens, vocatus hoc nomine quod
the-whole Ethiopia girding called by-this name because
incremento suae exundationis terram Aegypti inriget; γῆ enim
by-the-increase of-its overflowing the-land of-Egypt it-irrigates ge for
Graece, Latine terram significat. Hic apud Aegyptios Nilus
in-Greek in-Latin land signifies this among the-Egyptians Nile
vocatur propter limum quem trahit, qui efficit fecunditatem;
is-called on-account-of the-silt which it-draws which produces fertility
unde et Nilus dictus est, quasi νέαν ἰλύν: nam antea Nilus
whence also Nile called is as-if new silt for before the-Nile
Latine Melo dicebatur. Apparet autem in Nilide lacu, de
in-Latin Melo was-called it-appears moreover in the-Nilides lake from
quo in meridiem versus excipitur Aegypto, ubi Aquilonis
which toward the-south turned it-is-received by-Egypt where of-Aquilo
flatibus repercussus aquis retroluctantibus intumescit, et
by-the-blasts driven-back with-waters struggling-back it-swells and
inundationem Aegypti facit. Ganges fluvius, quem Phison
the-inundation of-Egypt makes the-Ganges a-river which Phison
sancta Scriptura cognominat, exiens de Paradiso pergit
the-holy Scripture surnames going-out from Paradise goes
ad Indiae regiones. Dictus autem Phison, id est caterva,
to of-India the-regions called moreover Phison that is a-troop
quia decem fluminibus magnis sibi adiunctis inpletur et
because with-ten rivers great to-itself joined it-is-filled and
efficitur unus: Ganges autem vocatus a rege Gangaro
is-made one Ganges moreover called from the-king Gangarus
Indiae. Fertur autem Nili modo exaltari, et super
of-India it-is-said moreover of-the-Nile in-the-manner to-be-raised and over
Orientis terras erumpere. Tigris fluvius Mesopotamiae de
of-the-East the-lands to-burst the-Tigris a-river of-Mesopotamia from

Paradiso exoriens et pergens contra Assyrios, et post multos
Paradise rising and going toward the-Assyrians and after many
circuitus in mare Mortuum influens. Vocatus autem hoc
windings into the-sea Dead flowing called moreover by-this
nomine propter velocitatem, instar bestiae tigris nimia
name on-account-of swiftness like the-beast tiger with-excessive
pernicitate currentis. Euphrates fluvius Mesopotamiae de
speed running the-Euphrates a-river of-Mesopotamia from
Paradiso exoriens, copiosissimus gemmis, qui per mediam
Paradise rising most-abundant in-gems which through the-middle
Babyloniam influit. Hic a frugibus, vel ab ubertate
Babylonia flows this from crops or from fertility
nomen accepit, nam Hebraice Ephrata fertilitas interpretatur:
the-name received for in-Hebrew Ephrata fertility is-interpreted
Mesopotamiam enim in quibusdam locis ita inrigat, sicut
Mesopotamia for in certain places so it-irrigates as
Nilus Alexandriam. Sallustius autem, auctor certissimus,
the-Nile Alexandria Sallust moreover an-authority most-certain
asserit Tigrim et Euphraten uno fonte manare in Armenia,
asserts the-Tigris and the-Euphrates from-one source to-flow in Armenia
qui per diversa euntes longius dividuntur spatio
which through diverse-ways going farther are-divided with-a-space
medio relicto multorum milium; quae tamen terra, quae ab
middle left of-many miles which yet land which by
ipsis ambitur, Mesopotamia dicitur. Ex quo Hieronymus
them is-surrounded Mesopotamia is-called from which Jerome
animadvertit aliter de Paradisi fluminibus intellegendum.
observes otherwise about of-Paradise the-rivers to-be-understood
Indus fluvius orientis, qui Rubro mari accipitur. Hystaspes
the-Indus a-river of-the-east which by-the-Red sea is-received Hystaspes
fuit Medorum rex antiquissimus, ex quo amnis orientis
was of-the-Medes king most-ancient from whom a-river of-the-east

nomen accepit, qui nunc Hydaspes dicitur. De quo Lucanus
the-name received which now Hydaspes is-called about which Lucan
∗∗∗ Qui dum sit fluvius Persarum, dicitur tamen contra
(lacuna) which though it-be a-river of-the-Persians is-said yet toward
orientem decurrere. Araris fluvius orientis. De quo Vergilius:
the-east to-run-down the-Arar a-river of-the-east about which Virgil

Aut Ararim Parthus bibet.
or the-Arar the-Parthian shall-drink

Currit enim per Parthiam et Assyriam. Bactrus fluvius
it-runs for through Parthia and Assyria the-Bactrus a-river
orientis a rege Bactro vocatus fertur; a quo et Bactriani
of-the-east from the-king Bactrus called is-said from whom also the-Bactrians
et urbs eorum. Choaspis Persarum fluvius, vocatus eorum
and the-city their the-Choaspes of-the-Persians a-river called their
lingua quod miram aquae dulcedinem habeat, adeo ut
in-tongue because a-marvelous of-water sweetness it-has so that
Persici reges quamdiu inter ripas Persidis fluit, sibi
the-Persian kings as-long-as between the-banks of-Persia it-flows for-themselves
ex eo pocula vindicarunt. Ex hoc amne quidam Cydnum
from it the-cups claimed from this river some the-Cydnus
Ciliciae fluvium derivari existimant. Araxis amnis Armeniae,
of-Cilicia river to-be-derived think the-Araxes a-river of-Armenia
qui ab uno monte cum Euphrate diversis specubus oritur,
which from one mountain with the-Euphrates by-diverse caves rises
dictus quod rapacitate cuncta prosternit. Unde et cum
called because by-rapacity all-things it-lays-low whence also when
Alexander eum transgredi vellet, ponte fabricato, tanta
Alexander it to-cross wished with-a-bridge built with-such
vi inundavit ut pontem dirueret. Hic brevibus intervallis ab
force it-flooded that the-bridge it-destroyed this at-short intervals from

Euphratis ortu caput tollit, ac deinde Caspium fertur in
of-the-Euphrates the-rising the-head lifts and then the-Caspian is-borne into
mare. Fluvius Syriae qui vocatur Orontes iuxta Antiochiae
sea the-river of-Syria which is-called Orontes beside of-Antioch
muros decurrens, qui a solis ortu oriens non longe ab
the-walls running-down which from of-the-sun the-rising arising not far from
urbe mari conditur, quem de originis suae tractu Orontem
the-city in-the-sea is-buried which from of-origin its the-course Orontes
veteres Latine appellavere. Cuius fluentis ex ipso impetu
the-ancients in-Latin called of-which by-the-streams from the-very impetus
frigidioribus, et zephyris assidue ibi spirantibus tota civitas
colder and by-zephyrs constantly there breathing the-whole city
momentis prope omnibus refrigeratur. Iordanis Iudaeae fluvius,
at-moments nearly all is-cooled the-Jordan of-Judea a-river
a duobus fontibus nominatus, quorum alter vocatur Ior,
from two springs named of-which the-one is-called Ior
alter Dan. His igitur procul a se distantibus in
the-other Dan with-these therefore far from each-other distant into
unum alveum foederatis, Iordanis deinceps appellatur. Nascitur
one channel joined Jordan thereafter it-is-called it-is-born
autem sub Libano monte, et dividit Iudaeam et Arabiam;
moreover under Lebanon the-mountain and divides Judea and Arabia
qui per multos circuitus iuxta Iericho in mare Mortuum
which through many windings beside Jericho into the-sea Dead
influit. Eusis Caucaseis montibus fusus cum pluribus
flows the-Eusis from-the-Caucasian mountains poured with many
aliis in Eusinum se praecipitat mare; unde et nuncupatur.
others into the-Euxine itself hurls sea whence also it-is-named
Cydnus amnis Ciliciae e Tauro monte progrediens,
the-Cydnus a-river of-Cilicia from the-Taurus mountain proceeding
miram aquarum habens suavitatem, et quia quidquid
a-marvelous of-waters having sweetness and because whatever

candidum est, ‘cydnum’ gentili lingua Syri dicunt.
white is cydnus in-the-gentile tongue the-Syrians say
Unde et amni huic nomen datum, quia tumet aestate,
whence also to-the-river this the-name given because it-swells in-summer
quando nives solvuntur; reliquis anni temporibus
when the-snows are-melted at-the-remaining of-the-year times
tenuis est et quietus. Hylas fluvius Asiae. Pactolus fluvius
thin it-is and quiet the-Hylas a-river of-Asia the-Pactolus a-river
Asiae, harenas aureas trahens: de quo Vergilius:
of-Asia sands golden drawing about which Virgil

Pactolusque inrigat auro.
and-the-Pactolus irrigates with-gold

Quem pro aurato fluore aliter Chrysorrhoam vocant. Hermus
which for its-golden flow otherwise Chrysorrhoas they-call the-Hermus
fluvius Asiae qui Smyrneos secat campos, et ipse fluctibus
a-river of-Asia which the-Smyrnean cuts plains and itself with-waves
aureis et harenis plenus; a quo et Smyrna vocata
golden and sands full from which also Smyrna named
est. Maeander amnis Asiae flexuosus, qui recurrentibus
is the-Maeander a-river of-Asia winding which with-running-back
ripis inter Cariam et Ioniam praecipitatur in sinum qui
banks between Caria and Ionia is-hurled into the-gulf which
Miletum dividit et Prienen; Maeander autem vocatus quod
Miletus divides and Priene Maeander moreover called because
sit flexuosus et numquam currat rectus. De quo Ovidius:
it-be winding and never runs straight about which Ovid

Curvis ludit Maeander in undis.
curved plays the-Maeander in waves

Tanus fuit rex Scytharum primus, a quo Tanais fertur
Tanus was king of-the-Scythians the-first from whom the-Tanais is-said
fluvius nuncupatus, qui ex Riphaeis silvis veniens dirimit
the-river named which from the-Riphaean forests coming separates
Europam ab Asia, inter duas mundi partes medius currens
Europe from Asia between two of-the-world parts in-the-middle running
atque in Pontum fluens. Inachus Achaiae amnis Argolicos
and into the-Pontus flowing the-Inachus of-Achaea a-river the-Argolic
inrigans campos, quem rex Inachus a se nominavit, qui
irrigating plains which king Inachus from himself named who
exordium Argivae gentis primus dedit. Ibi et Erymanthus
the-beginning of-the-Argive nation first gave there also the-Erymanthus
ab Erymantho monte demissus. Padus Italiae fluvius a
from the-Erymanthus mountain sent-down the-Padus of-Italy a-river from
iugis Alpium fusus ex tribus fontibus oritur; ex quibus
the-ridges of-the-Alps poured from three springs rises of which
uni vocabulum est Padus, qui diffusus in modum stagni
to-one the-name is Padus which spread in the-manner of-a-pool
amnem sinu digerit; a quo et Padus est nuncupatus.
the-river in-a-bay disposes from which also Padus it-is named
Hic a Graecis Eridanus cognominatus, ab Eridano Solis
this by the-Greeks Eridanus surnamed from Eridanus of-the-Sun
filio, quem Phaethontem dicunt; qui fulmine percussus
son whom Phaethon they-call who by-the-thunderbolt struck
in eodem fluvio deiectus est et extinctus. Augetur autem
into the-same river cast was and extinguished it-is-increased moreover
exortu Canis liquescentibus nivibus, et cum accessione
at-the-rising of-the-Dog with-melting snows and with the-accession
triginta fluminum circa Ravennam in Adriaticum mare
of-thirty rivers around Ravenna into the-Adriatic sea
defertur. Tiberis Italiae fluvius a Tiberino rege Albanorum
is-carried the-Tiber of-Italy a-river from Tiberinus king of-the-Albans

dicitur appellatus, qui in hunc fluvium cecidit, et de exitu
is-said called who into this river fell and from death
suo nomen dedit. Nam antea Albula antiquum nomen a
his the-name gave for before Albula as-ancient name from
colore habuit, quod nivibus albus sit. Ipse est autem Tibris,
color it-had because by-snows white it-is it is moreover Tibris
qui et Tiberis; sed Tiberis in cotidiano sermone, Tibris
which also Tiberis but Tiberis in daily speech Tibris
in versu dicitur. Danubius Germaniae fluvius vocari fertur
in verse is-said the-Danube of-Germany a-river to-be-called is-said
a nivium copia quibus magis augetur. Iste est qui
from of-snows the-abundance by-which more it-is-increased this is which
in Europa plus omnibus habet famam. Idem et Ister, quia
in Europe more than-all has fame the-same also Ister because
dum per innumeras vadit gentes, mutat et nomen et
while through innumerable it-goes nations it-changes both name and
maiores sibi ambiendo colligit vires. Oritur a Germanicis
greater for-itself by-going-around gathers strength it-rises from the-Germanic
iugis et occidentalibus partibus barbarorum, pergens contra
ridges and western parts of-the-barbarians going toward
orientem: sexaginta in se fluvios recipit: septem ostiis in
the-east sixty into itself rivers it-receives with-seven mouths into
Pontum influit. Rhodanus Galliae fluvius ab oppido Rhodo
the-Pontus flows the-Rhone of-Gaul a-river from the-town Rhodus
cognominatus, quem coloni Rhodiorum locaverunt; qui
surnamed which the-colonists of-the-Rhodians placed which
rapido concitus cursu, Tyrrheni aequoris freta scindens,
with-rapid roused course of-the-Tyrrhenian sea the-straits cutting
non modicum saepe navigantium facit periculum, dum inter
not small often of-sailors makes danger while among
se maris fluctus et amnis fluenta decertant. Rhenus
themselves of-the-sea the-waves and of-the-river the-streams contend the-Rhine

a Rhodani societate fertur vocatus, quoniam cum eodem
from of-the-Rhone the-fellowship is-said called since with the-same
ex una provincia oritur. Est autem Germaniae fluvius inter
from one province it-rises it-is moreover of-Germany a-river among
tres Europae maximos fluvios conputatus, qui a iugo
the-three of-Europe greatest rivers reckoned which from the-ridge
Alpium usque in Oceani profunda cursus suos dirigit.
of-the-Alps all-the-way into of-the-Ocean the-depths courses its directs
Iberus amnis, qui quondam totius Hispaniae nomen dedit.
the-Iberus a-river which once of-all Spain the-name gave
Mineus fluvius Galliciae nomen a colore pigmenti sumpsit,
the-Mineus a-river of-Gallicia the-name from the-color of-the-pigment took
qui in eo plurimus invenitur. Durius a Graecis, quasi
which in it most-abundant is-found the-Durius by the-Greeks as-if
Doricus. Tagum fluvium Cartago Hispaniae nuncupavit, ex
Doricus the-Tagus river Carthage of-Spain named from
qua ortus procedit; fluvius harenis auriferis copiosus, et ob
which arisen proceeds the-river with-sands gold-bearing abundant and for
hoc ceteris fluviis Hispaniarum praelatus. Baetus fluvius,
this to-the-other rivers of-the-Spains preferred the-Baetis a-river
qui et Baeticae provinciae nomen dedit. De quo Martialis:
which also to-the-Baetic province the-name gave about which Martial

Baetis olivifera crinem redimite corona,
Baetis with-olive-bearing the-hair crowned garland
aurea qui nitidis vellera tingis aquis;
golden who with-shining fleeces you-dye waters

eo quod ibi lanae pulchro colore tinguntur. Baetis autem
for-this that there wools with-beautiful color are-dyed Baetis moreover
dictus eo quod humili solo decurrat: †bitin† enim Graeci
called for-this that on-low ground it-runs-down bitin for the-Greeks
humile vel mersum vocant. Quaedam autem flumina in
low or sunk call certain moreover rivers in
diluvio soluta mole terrarum praeclusa sunt, quaedam vero,
the-flood with-loosened mass of-the-lands closed are certain but
quae non erant, abyssi tunc ruptis meatibus eruperunt.
which not were of-the-abyss then with-broken passages burst-forth

De diluviis

XXII · FLOODS

The first flood came under Noah, as the shells found on mountains still show; the second in Achaea in the time of Ogyges, the third in Thessaly under Deucalion. Rivers that overflow are also called floods, and they signify things to come.

Diluvium dictum quod aquarum clade omnia quae
flood called because of-waters by-the-disaster all-things which
inundaverit deleat. Primum diluvium extitit sub Noe,
it-shall-have-inundated it-destroys the-first flood arose under Noah
quando hominum sceleribus offensus Omnipotens, toto
when of-men by-the-crimes offended the-Almighty with-the-whole

orbe contecto, deletis cunctis, unum spatium caeli fuit ac
world covered with-destroyed all one space of-sky was and
pelagi. Cuius indicium hactenus videmus in lapidibus quos in
of-sea of-which the-sign hitherto we-see in stones which on
remotis montibus conchis et ostreis concretos, saepe etiam
remote mountains with-shells and oysters concreted often also
cavatos aquis visere solemus. Secundum diluvium fuit in
hollowed by-waters to-see we-are-wont the-second flood was in
Achaia Iacob patriarchae et Ogygi temporibus, qui Eleusinae
Achaea of-Jacob the-patriarch and of-Ogyges in-the-times who of-Eleusis
conditor et rex fuit, nomenque loco et tempori dedit.
founder and king was and-the-name to-the-place and to-the-time gave
Tertium diluvium in Thessalia Moysi vel Amphictyonis
the-third flood in Thessaly of-Moses or of-Amphictyon
temporibus fuit, qui tertius post Cecropem regnavit. Cuius
in-the-times was who third after Cecrops reigned whose
temporibus aquarum inluvies maiorem partem populorum
in-times of-waters the-inundation the-greater part of-the-peoples
Thessaliae absumpsit paucis per refugia montium liberatis,
of-Thessaly consumed with-a-few through the-refuges of-mountains freed
maxime in monte Parnaso; in cuius circuitu Deucalion tunc
most in the-mountain Parnassus in whose circuit Deucalion then
regno potiebatur, qui tunc ad se ratibus confugientes
of-the-kingdom was-master who then to himself on-rafts fleeing
susceptos per gemina Parnasi iuga fovit et aluit. A quo
received through the-twin of-Parnassus ridges cherished and nourished by whom
propterea genus hominum Graecorum fabulae ex lapidibus
for-this-reason the-race of-men Greek the-fables from stones
reparatum ferunt ab eo propter hominum insitam cordis
restored relate from him on-account-of of-men the-implanted of-heart
duritiam. Sed et flumina cum insolitis aucta imbribus ultra
hardness but also rivers when by-unusual increased rains beyond

consuetudinem, vel diuturnitatem vel magnitudinem, redundant
custom either in-duration or in-size overflow
multaque prosternunt, et ipsa diluvium dicuntur. Sciendum
and-many-things lay-low also themselves flood are-called to-be-known
autem, flumina cum supra modum crescunt, non tantum ad
moreover rivers when beyond measure they-grow not only for
praesens inferre damna, sed etiam et aliqua significare futura.
the-present to-bring damages but also also some to-signify future-things

De terra

I · THE EARTH

The earth lies at the middle of the world and has many names, terra, humus, tellus, Ops, and arva. Its natural property is dryness, and Isidore gives the philosophers' causes of earthquakes and chasms.

Terra est in media mundi regione posita, omnibus partibus
the-earth is in the-middle of-the-world region placed from-all parts
caeli in modum centri aequali intervallo consistens; quae
of-heaven in the-manner of-a-center at-equal interval standing which
singulari numero totum orbem significat, plurali vero
in-the-singular number the-whole world signifies in-the-plural but
singulas partes. Cuius nomina diversa dat ratio; nam terra
single parts whose names diverse gives reason for terra
dicta a superiori parte, qua teritur; humus ab inferiori
called from the-upper part by-which it-is-trodden humus from the-lower
vel humida terra, ut sub mari; tellus autem, quia fructus eius
or moist earth as under the-sea tellus moreover because the-fruits its
tollimus; haec et Ops dicta, eo quod opem fert frugibus;
we-take-up this also Ops called for-this that help it-brings to-crops
eadem et arva, ab arando et colendo vocata. Proprie autem
the-same also arva from plowing and tilling called properly moreover
terra ad distinctionem aquae arida nuncupatur, sicut Scriptura
earth for the-distinction of-water dry-land is-named as Scripture
ait: 'Quod vocaverit Deus terram aridam.' Naturalis enim
says that may-have-called God the-earth dry-land the-natural for
proprietas siccitas est terris; nam ut humida sit, hoc aquarum
property dryness is to-lands for that moist it-be this of-waters

affinitate sortitur. Cuius motum alii dicunt ventum esse
by-the-affinity it-obtains whose motion some say wind to-be
in concavis eius, qui motus eam movet. Sallustius: ‘Venti
in the-hollows its which motion it moves Sallust winds
per cava terrae citatu rupti aliquot montes tumulique
through the-hollows of-the-earth with-rush burst several mountains and-mounds
sedere.’ Alii aquam dicunt genetalem in terris moveri, et
settled others water say generative in the-lands to-be-moved and
eas simul concutere, sicut vas, ut dicit Lucretius. Alii
them together to-shake as a-vessel as says Lucretius others
σπογγοειδῆ terram volunt, cuius plerumque latentes ruinae
spongy the-earth will whose mostly hidden collapses
superposita cuncta concutiunt. Terrae quoque hiatus
the-things-placed-above all shake of-the-earth also the-gaping
aut motu aquae inferioris fit, aut crebris tonitruis,
either by-the-motion of-the-water lower is-made or by-frequent thunders
aut de concavis terrae erumpentibus ventis.
or from the-hollows of-the-earth bursting winds

De orbe

II · THE GLOBE

The world is named from its roundness and is divided into three parts, Asia, Europe, and Africa, not equally: Asia alone holds half, Europe and Africa the other half.

Orbis a rotunditate circuli dictus, quia sicut rota est;
the-world from the-roundness of-a-circle called because like a-wheel it-is
unde brevis etiam rotella orbiculus appellatur. Undique enim
whence a-short also little-wheel orbiculus is-called on-all-sides for
Oceanus circumfluens eius in circulo ambit fines. Divisus
the-Ocean flowing-around its in a-circle surrounds the-borders divided

est autem trifarie: e quibus una pars Asia, altera Europa,
is moreover threefold of which one part Asia the-second Europe
tertia Africa nuncupatur. Quas tres partes orbis veteres
the-third Africa is-named which three parts of-the-world the-ancients
non aequaliter diviserunt. Nam Asia a meridie per orientem
not equally divided for Asia from the-south through the-east
usque ad septentrionem pervenit; Europa vero a septentrione
all-the-way to the-north reaches Europe but from the-north
usque ad occidentem; atque inde Africa ab occidente
all-the-way to the-west and thence Africa from the-west
usque ad meridiem. Unde evidenter orbem dimidium duae
all-the-way to the-south whence evidently the-world half two
tenent, Europa et Africa, alium vero dimidium sola Asia;
hold Europe and Africa the-other but half alone Asia
sed ideo istae duae partes factae sunt, quia inter utramque
but therefore these two parts made are because between each
ab Oceano mare Magnum ingreditur, quod eas intersecat.
from the-Ocean the-sea Great enters which them intersects
Quapropter si in duas partes orientis et occidentis orbem
wherefore if into two parts of-the-east and of-the-west the-world
dividas, Asia erit in una, in altera vero Europa et Africa.
you-divide Asia shall-be in one in the-other but Europe and Africa

De Asia

III · ASIA

Asia is named from a woman who ruled the east. Isidore begins with Paradise, then describes India, Parthia, Assyria, Media and Persia, Mesopotamia, Babylonia, Arabia, Syria with Phoenicia, Palestine, Judea, Samaria, and Galilee, Egypt, the Seres, Bactria, Scythia, Hyrcania, Albania, Armenia, and the provinces of Asia Minor, each with its name and its wonders.

Asia ex nomine cuiusdam mulieris est appellata, quae apud
Asia from the-name of-a-certain woman is called who among
antiquos imperium tenuit orientis. Haec in tertia orbis
the-ancients the-command held of-the-east this in the-third of-the-world
parte disposita, ab oriente ortu solis, a meridie
part disposed from the-east by-the-rising of-the-sun from the-south
Oceano, ab occiduo nostro mare finitur, a septentrione
by-the-Ocean from the-west by-our sea is-bounded from the-north
Maeotide lacu et Tanai fluvio terminatur. Habet autem
by-the-Maeotic lake and the-Tanais river is-ended it-has moreover
provincias multas et regiones, quarum breviter nomina et
provinces many and regions of-which briefly the-names and
situs expediam, sumpto initio a Paradiso. Paradisus est
sites I-shall-set-forth with-taken the-beginning from Paradise Paradise is
locus in orientis partibus constitutus, cuius vocabulum ex
a-place in of-the-east the-parts established whose name from
Graeco in Latinum vertitur hortus: porro Hebraice Eden
Greek into Latin is-turned garden further in-Hebrew Eden
dicitur, quod in nostra lingua deliciae interpretatur. Quod
it-is-called which in our tongue delights is-interpreted which
utrumque iunctum facit hortum deliciarum; est enim omni
each joined makes a-garden of-delights it-is for with-every

genere ligni et pomiferarum arborum consitus, habens etiam
kind of-wood and of-fruit-bearing trees planted having also
et lignum vitae: non ibi frigus, non aestus, sed perpetua
also the-tree of-life not there cold not heat but perpetual
aeris temperies. E cuius medio fons prorumpens totum
of-the-air temperance from whose middle a-spring bursting-forth the-whole
nemus inrigat, dividiturque in quattuor nascentia flumina.
grove irrigates and-is-divided into four arising rivers
Cuius loci post peccatum hominis aditus interclusus est;
of-which place after the-sin of-man the-approach shut-off is
septus est enim undique romphea flammea, id est muro
hedged it-is for on-all-sides with-a-sword flaming that is by-a-wall
igneo accinctus, ita ut eius cum caelo pene iungat incendium.
fiery girded so that its with the-sky almost joins burning
Cherubin quoque, id est angelorum praesidium, arcendis
the-Cherubim also that is of-angels a-guard for-keeping-off
spiritibus malis super rompheae flagrantiam ordinatum est,
spirits evil above of-the-sword the-blaze ordained is
ut homines flammae, angelos vero malos angeli submoveant,
that men the-flames angels but evil the-angels may-remove
ne cui carni vel spiritui transgressionis aditus Paradisi
lest to-any flesh or spirit of-transgression the-approach of-Paradise
pateat. India vocata ab Indo flumine, quo ex parte
lie-open India called from the-Indus river by-which on the-side
occidentali clauditur. Haec a meridiano mari porrecta
western it-is-enclosed this from the-southern sea extended
usque ad ortum Solis, et a septentrione usque
all-the-way to the-rising of-the-Sun and from the-north all-the-way
ad montem Caucasum pervenit; habens gentes multas et
to the-mountain Caucasus reaches having nations many and
oppida, insulam quoque Taprobanen gemmis et elephantis
towns the-island also Taprobane with-gems and elephants

refertam, Chrysam et Argyren auro argentoque fecundas,
stuffed Chryse and Argyre with-gold and-silver fertile
Tilen quoque arboribus foliam numquam carentem. Habet et
Tile also by-trees leaf never lacking it-has also
fluvios Gangen et Indum et Hypanem inlustrantes Indos.
rivers the-Ganges and the-Indus and the-Hypanis illustrating the-Indians
Terra Indiae Favonii spiritu saluberrima in anno bis metit
the-land of-India of-Favonius by-the-breath most-healthful in the-year twice reaps
fruges: vice hiemis Etesias patitur. Gignit autem tincti
crops in-place of-winter the-Etesian-winds it-suffers it-begets moreover of-dyed
coloris homines, elephantos ingentes, monoceron bestiam,
color men elephants huge the-monoceros beast
psittacum avem, ebenum quoque lignum, et cinnamum et
the-parrot bird ebony also wood and cinnamon and
piper et calamum aromaticum. Mittit et ebur, lapides quoque
pepper and reed aromatic it-sends also ivory stones also
pretiosos: beryllos, chrysoprasos et adamantem, carbunculos,
precious beryls chrysoprases and adamant carbuncles
lychnites, margaritas et uniones, quibus nobilium feminarum
lychnites pearls and unions for-which of-noble women
ardet ambitio. Ibi sunt et montes aurei, quos adire
burns the-ambition there are also mountains golden which to-approach
propter dracones et gryphas et inmensorum hominum
on-account-of dragons and griffins and of-immense men
monstra inpossibile est. Parthia ab Indiae finibus usque
monsters impossible is Parthia from of-India the-borders all-the-way
ad Mesopotamiam generaliter nominatur. Propter invictam
to Mesopotamia generally is-named on-account-of the-unconquered
enim Parthorum virtutem et Assyria et reliquae proximae
for of-the-Parthians valor both Assyria and the-remaining nearest
regiones in eius nomen transierunt. Sunt enim in ea
regions into its name passed there-are for in it

Aracusia, Parthia, Assyria, Media et Persida, quae regiones
Arachosia Parthia Assyria Media and Persida which regions
invicem sibi coniunctae initium ab Indo flumine
mutually to-each-other joined the-beginning from the-Indus river
sumunt, Tigri clauduntur, locis montuosis et asperioribus
take by-the-Tigris are-enclosed in-places mountainous and rougher
sitae, habentes fluvios Hydaspem et Arbem. Sunt enim inter
situated having rivers the-Hydaspes and the-Arbis they-are for among
se finibus suis discretae, nomina a propriis auctoribus
themselves by-borders their distinguished names from their-own founders
ita trahentes. Aracusia ab oppido suo nuncupata. Parthiam
so drawing Arachosia from town its named Parthia
Parthi ab Scythia venientes occupaverunt, eamque ex suo
the-Parthians from Scythia coming occupied and-it from their
nomine vocaverunt. Huius a meridie Rubrum mare est,
name called of-this from the-south the-Red sea is
a septentrione Hyrcanum salum, ab occidui solis plaga
from the-north the-Hyrcanian brine from of-the-setting sun the-region
Media. Regna in ea decem et octo sunt, porrecta a
Media kingdoms in it ten and eight are extended from
Caspio litore usque ad terras Scytharum. Assyria vocata
the-Caspian shore all-the-way to the-lands of-the-Scythians Assyria called
ab Assur filio Sem, qui eam regionem post diluvium primus
from Asshur son of-Shem who that region after the-flood first
incoluit. Haec ab ortu Indiam, a meridie Mediam tangit,
inhabited this from the-east India from the-south Media touches
ab occiduo Tigrim, a septentrione montem Caucasum, ubi
from the-west the-Tigris from the-north the-mountain Caucasus where
portae Caspiae sunt. In hac regione primus usus inventus
the-gates Caspian are in this region first the-use found
est purpurae, inde primum crinium et corporum unguenta
was of-purple thence first of-hair and of-bodies unguents

venerunt et odores, quibus Romanorum atque Graecorum
came and odors by-which of-the-Romans and of-the-Greeks
effluxit luxuria. Media et Persida a regibus Medo et
flowed-out the-luxury Media and Persida from the-kings Medus and
Perso cognominatae, qui eas provincias bellando adgressi
Persus surnamed who those provinces by-warring attacked
sunt. Ex quibus Media ab occasu transversa Parthia regna
have of which Media from the-west crosswise the-Parthian kingdoms
amplectitur, a septentrione Armenia circumdatur, ab ortu
embraces from the-north by-Armenia is-surrounded from the-east
Caspios videt, a meridie Persidam. Huius terra Medicam
the-Caspians sees from the-south Persida of-this the-land the-Median
arborem gignit, quam alia regio minime parturit. Sunt
tree begets which another region least bears there-are
autem Mediae duae, maior et minor. Persida tendens ab
moreover Medias two greater and lesser Persida stretching from
ortu usque ad Indos, ab occasu Rubrum mare habet, ab
the-east all-the-way to the-Indians from the-west the-Red sea has from
aquilone vero Mediam tangit, ab austro Carmaniam, quae
the-north but Media touches from the-south Carmania which
Persidae adnectitur, quibus est Susa oppidum nobilissimum.
to-Persida is-joined to-which is Susa the-town most-noble
In Persida primum orta est ars magica, ad quam Nebroth
in Persida first arose has the-art magic to which Nimrod
gigans post confusionem linguarum abiit, ibique Persas
the-giant after the-confusion of-tongues went-off and-there the-Persians
ignem colere docuit. Nam omnes in illis partibus solem
fire to-worship taught for all in those parts the-sun
colunt, qui ipsorum lingua El dicitur. Mesopotamia Graecam
worship who their in-tongue El is-called Mesopotamia a-Greek
etymologiam possidet, quod duobus fluviis ambiatur; nam ab
etymology possesses because by-two rivers it-is-surrounded for from

oriente Tigrim habet, ab occiduo Euphraten. Incipit autem
the-east the-Tigris it-has from the-west the-Euphrates it-begins moreover
a septentrione inter montem Taurum et Caucasum; cuius
from the-north between the-mountain Taurus and Caucasus of-which
a meridie sequitur Babylonia, deinde Chaldaea, novissime
from the-south follows Babylonia then Chaldea last
Arabia εὐδαίμων. Babyloniae regionis caput Babylon urbs est,
Arabia eudaimon of-the-Babylonian region the-head Babylon a-city is
a qua et nuncupata, tam nobilis ut Chaldaea et Assyria
from which also named so noble that Chaldea and Assyria
et Mesopotamia in eius nomen aliquando transierint. Arabia
and Mesopotamia into its name at-times passed Arabia
appellata, id est sacra; hoc enim significare interpretatur;
called that is sacred this for to-signify is-interpreted
eo quod sit regio turifera, odores creans: hinc eam
for-this that it-be a-region incense-bearing odors creating hence it
Graeci εὐδαίμων, nostri beatam nominaverunt. In cuius
the-Greeks eudaimon ours blessed named in whose
saltibus et myrrha et cinnamum provenit: ibi nascitur avis
glades both myrrh and cinnamon grows there is-born the-bird
phoenix, sardonyx gemma, et iris, molochites et paederota
phoenix the-sardonyx gem and iris molochites and paederos
ibi invenitur. Ipsa est et Saba, appellata a filio Chus,
there is-found it is also Saba called from the-son of-Cush
qui nuncupatus est Saba. Haec autem angusto terrae tractu
who named was Saba this moreover by-a-narrow of-land tract
ad orientem versus ad Persicum sinum extenditur, cuius
toward the-east turned to the-Persian gulf is-extended whose
septentrionalia Chaldaea claudit, occasum sinus Arabicus.
northern-parts Chaldea encloses the-west the-gulf Arabian
Syriam Syrus quidam perhibetur indigena a suo vocabulo
Syria Syrus a-certain is-held native from his name

nuncupasse. Haec ab oriente fluvio Euphrate, ab occasu
to-have-named this from the-east by-the-river Euphrates from the-west
mari nostro et Aegypto terminatur, tangens a septentrione
by-sea our and Egypt is-bounded touching from the-north
Armeniam et Cappadociam, a meridie sinum Arabicum.
Armenia and Cappadocia from the-south the-gulf Arabian
Situs eius porrectus in inmensam longitudinem, in lato
the-site its extended into immense length in breadth
angustior. Habet autem in se provincias Commagenam,
narrower it-has moreover in itself provinces Commagene
Phoeniciam et Palaestinam, cuius pars est Iudaea absque
Phoenicia and Palestine of-which a-part is Judea besides
Sarracenos et Nabatheos. Commagena prima provincia Syriae
the-Saracens and Nabateans Commagene the-first province of-Syria
a vocabulo Commagae urbis nuncupata, quae quondam ibi
from the-name of-Commaga the-city named which once there
metropolis habebatur. Huius est a septentrione Armenia,
the-metropolis was-held of-this is from the-north Armenia
ab ortu Mesopotamia, a meridie Syria, ab occasu mare
from the-east Mesopotamia from the-south Syria from the-west the-sea
Magnum. Phoenix Cadmi frater de Thebis Aegyptiorum in
Great Phoenix of-Cadmus brother from Thebes of-the-Egyptians into
Syriam profectus apud Sidonem regnavit, eamque provinciam
Syria setting-out at Sidon reigned and-that province
ex suo nomine Phoeniciam appellavit. Ipsa est ubi est
from his name Phoenicia called it is where is
Tyrus, ad quem Esaias loquitur. Habet autem ab oriente
Tyre to which Isaiah speaks it-has moreover from the-east
Arabiam, a meridie mare Rubrum. Palaestina provincia
Arabia from the-south the-sea Red Palestine the-province
Philistim urbem metropolim habuit, quae nunc dicitur
of-the-Philistines the-city as-metropolis had which now is-called

Ascalon, ex qua civitate omnis circa eam regio Palaestina
Ascalon from which city all around it the-region Palestine
est nuncupata. Huius ab oriente mare Rubrum occurrit,
is named of-this from the-east the-sea Red meets
a meridiano latere Iudaea excipitur, a septentrionali
from the-southern side by-Judea it-is-received from the-northern
plaga Tyriorum finibus clauditur, ab occasu Aegyptio
region of-the-Tyrians by-the-borders is-enclosed from the-west by-the-Egyptian
limite terminatur. Iudaea regio Palaestinae ex nomine Iudae
boundary is-bounded Judea a-region of-Palestine from the-name of-Judah
appellata, ex cuius tribu reges habuit. Haec prius Chanaan
called from whose tribe kings it-had this earlier Canaan
dicta a filio Cham, sive a decem Chananaeorum
called from the-son of-Ham or from the-ten of-the-Canaanites
gentibus, quibus expulsis eandem terram Iudaei possiderunt.
nations whom expelled the-same land the-Jews possessed
Initium longitudinis eius a vico Arfa usque ad
the-beginning of-the-length its from the-village Arfa all-the-way to
vicum Iuliadem porrigitur, in quo Iudaeorum pariter ac
the-village Iuliades is-extended in which of-the-Jews equally and
Tyriorum communis habitatio est. Latitudo autem eius a
of-the-Tyrians common the-dwelling is the-breadth moreover its from
monte Libani usque ad Tiberiadis lacum extenditur.
the-mountain Lebanon all-the-way to of-Tiberias the-lake is-extended
In medio autem Iudaeae civitas Hierosolyma est, quasi
in the-middle moreover of-Judea the-city Jerusalem is as-if
umbilicus regionis totius. Terra variarum opum dives,
the-navel of-the-region whole a-land of-various riches rich
frugibus fertilis, aquis inlustris, opima balsamis. Unde
in-crops fertile in-waters illustrious abounding in-balsams whence
secundum elementorum gratiam existimaverunt Iudaei eam
according-to of-the-elements the-grace thought the-Jews it

promissam patribus terram fluentem mel et lac, cum hic
promised to-the-fathers the-land flowing with-honey and milk though here
illis Deus resurrectionis praerogativam polliceretur. Samaria
to-them God of-the-resurrection the-prerogative was-promising Samaria
regio Palaestinae ab oppido quodam nomen accepit qui
a-region of-Palestine from a-town certain the-name received which
vocabatur Samaria, civitas quondam regalis in Israel, quae
was-called Samaria a-city once royal in Israel which
nunc ab Augusti nomine Sebastia nuncupatur. Haec regio
now from of-Augustus the-name Sebastia is-named this region
inter Iudaeam et Galilaeam media iacet, incipiens a
between Judea and Galilee in-the-middle lies beginning from
vico cui nomen est Eleas, deficiens in terra Agrabath.
the-village whose name is Eleas ending in the-land Agrabath
Situs eius natura consimili nec ullo differens a Iudaea.
the-site its in-nature very-like nor in-anything differing from Judea
Galilaea regio Palaestinae vocata quod gignat candidiores
Galilee a-region of-Palestine called because it-begets whiter
homines quam Palaestina. Haec autem duplex est, superior
men than Palestine this moreover twofold is upper
et inferior, sibi tamen conexae, Syriae et Phoeniciae
and lower to-each-other yet connected to-Syria and Phoenicia
adhaerentes. Terra earum opima et ferax et fructibus satis
adhering the-land their rich and fertile and in-fruits quite
fecunda. Pentapolis regio in confinio Arabiae et Palaestinae
fruitful the-Pentapolis a-region on the-border of-Arabia and Palestine
sita, dicta a quinque civitatibus inpiorum quae caelesti
situated called from the-five cities of-the-impious which by-heavenly
igne consumptae sunt. Terra amplius ab Hierosolymis
fire consumed were a-land further from Jerusalem
olim uberrima, nunc autem deserta atque exusta; nam pro
once most-fertile now moreover deserted and burned for for

scelere incolarum de caelo descendit ignis, qui regionem
the-crime of-the-inhabitants from heaven descended fire which region
illam in cineres aeternos dissolvit. Cuius umbra quaedam
that into ashes eternal dissolved of-which a-shadow certain
et species in favillis et arboribus ipsis etiam adhuc
and appearance in the-embers and trees themselves even still
videtur. Nascuntur enim ibi poma virentia sub tanta specie
is-seen are-born for there fruits green under such appearance
maturitatis, ut edendi desiderium gignant: si carpas fatiscunt
of-ripeness that of-eating a-desire they-beget if you-pluck they-crumble
ac resolvuntur in cinerem, fumumque exhalant quasi adhuc
and are-dissolved into ash and-smoke breathe-out as-if still
ardeant. Nabathea regio a Nabeth filio Ismael nuncupata.
they-burned Nabatea a-region from Nebaioth son of-Ishmael named
Iacet autem inter Iudaeam et Arabiam, et surgens ab
it-lies moreover between Judea and Arabia and rising from
Euphrate in mare Rubrum porrigitur, et est pars Arabiae.
the-Euphrates into the-sea Red is-extended and is a-part of-Arabia
Aegyptus, qui prius Aeria dicebatur, ab Aegypto Danai
Egypt which earlier Aeria was-called from Aegyptus of-Danaus
fratre postea ibi regnante nomen accepit. Haec ab oriente
brother afterward there reigning the-name received this from the-east
Syriae ac Rubro mari coniuncta, ab occasu Libyam habet,
to-Syria and to-the-Red sea joined from the-west Libya has
a septentrione mare Magnum, a meridie vero introrsus
from the-north the-sea Great from the-south but inward
recedit, pertendens usque ad Aethiopas; regio caeli imbribus
recedes extending all-the-way to the-Ethiopians a-region of-sky to-rains
insueta et pluviarum ignara. Nilus solus eam circumfluens
unaccustomed and of-showers ignorant the-Nile alone it flowing-around
inrigat, et inundatione sua fecundat; unde et ferax frugibus
irrigates and by-inundation its fertilizes whence also fertile in-crops

multam partem terrarum frumento alit; ceterorum quoque
a-great part of-the-lands with-grain it-nourishes of-the-other also
negotiorum adeo copiosa ut inpleat necessariis mercibus
of-goods so abundant that it-fills with-necessary wares
etiam orbem terrarum. Finis Aegypti Canopea a Canope
even the-circle of-the-lands the-end of-Egypt Canopea from Canopus
Menelai gubernatore, sepulto in ea insula quae Libyae
of-Menelaus the-helmsman buried in that island which of-Libya
principium et ostium Nili facit. Seres oppidum orientis,
the-beginning and the-mouth of-the-Nile makes Seres a-town of-the-east
a quo et genus Sericum et regio nuncupata [est].
from which also the-kind Seric and the-region named is
Haec ab Scythico Oceano et mari Caspio ad Oceanum
this from the-Scythian Ocean and the-sea Caspian to the-Ocean
orientalem inflectitur, nobilibus frondibus fertilis, e quibus
eastern bends with-noble leaves fertile from which
vellera decerpuntur, quae ceterarum gentium Seres ad usum
fleeces are-plucked which of-the-other nations the-Seres for the-use
vestium vendunt. Bactriae regionis proprius amnis Bactros
of-garments sell of-Bactria of-the-region its-own river Bactros
vocabulum dedit. Partes huius quae pone sunt Propanisi
the-name gave the-parts of-this which behind are by-the-Paropanisian
iugis ambiuntur, quae adversae sunt Indi fluvii fontibus
ridges are-surrounded which opposite are of-the-Indus of-river by-the-springs
terminantur; reliqua includit Ochus fluvius. Mittit Bactria
are-bounded the-rest encloses the-Ochus river sends Bactria
fortissimos camelos numquam adterentes pedes. Scythia sicut
most-strong camels never wearing-down the-feet Scythia as
et Gothia a Magog filio Iaphet fertur cognominata.
also Gothia from Magog son of-Japheth is-said surnamed
Cuius terra olim ingens fuit; nam ab oriente India, a
whose land once huge was for from the-east India from

septentrione per paludes Maeotides inter Danubium et
the-north through the-marshes Maeotic between the-Danube and
Oceanum usque ad Germaniae fines porrigebatur. Postea
the-Ocean all-the-way to of-Germany the-borders it-was-extended afterward
vero minor effecta, a dextra orientis parte, qua Oceanus
but smaller made from the-right of-the-east side where the-Ocean
Sericus tenditur, usque ad mare Caspium, quod est ad
Seric stretches all-the-way to the-sea Caspian which is toward
occasum; dehinc a meridie usque ad Caucasi iugum
the-west thence from the-south all-the-way to of-the-Caucasus the-ridge
deducta est, cui subiacet Hyrcania ab occasu habens
drawn is to-which lies-below Hyrcania from the-west having
pariter gentes multas, propter terrarum infecunditatem
equally nations many on-account-of of-the-lands the-infertility
late vagantes. Ex quibus quaedam agros incolunt, quaedam
widely wandering of which some fields till some
portentuosae ac truces carnibus humanis et eorum sanguine
portentous and fierce on-flesh human and their on-blood
vivunt. Scythiae plures terrae sunt locupletes, inhabitabiles
live of-Scythia many lands are rich uninhabitable
tamen plures; nam dum in plerisque locis auro et gemmis
yet many for while in most places with-gold and gems
affluant, gryphorum inmanitate accessus hominum rarus
they-abound of-the-griffins by-the-hugeness the-approach of-men rare
est. Smaragdis autem optimis haec patria est: cyaneus
is of-emeralds moreover best this the-fatherland is the-cyanean
quoque lapis et crystallus purissimus Scythiae est. Habet
also stone and crystal purest of-Scythia is it-has
et flumina magna Moschorum, Phasiden atque Araxen.
also rivers great of-the-Moschi the-Phasis and the-Araxes
Hyrcania dicta a silva Hyrcana, quae Scythiae subiacet,
Hyrcania called from the-forest Hyrcanian which to-Scythia lies-below

habens ab oriente mare Caspium, a meridie Armeniam,
having from the-east the-sea Caspian from the-south Armenia
a septentrione Albaniam, ab occasu Iberiam. Est autem
from the-north Albania from the-west Iberia it-is moreover
silvis aspera, copiosa inmanibus feris, tigribus pantherisque
with-forests rough abundant in-huge beasts tigers and-panthers
et pardis. De qua Vergilius:
and leopards about which Virgil

Hyrcanaeque admorunt ubera tigres.
and-Hyrcanian moved-to udders tigresses

Albania a colore populi nuncupata, eo quod alba
Albania from the-color of-the-people named for-this that with-white
crine nascantur. Haec ab oriente sub mare Caspium
hair they-are-born this from the-east under the-sea Caspian
surgens, per ora Oceani septentrionalis usque ad
rising through the-shores of-the-Ocean northern all-the-way to
Maeotides paludes per deserta et inculta extenditur.
the-Maeotic marshes through deserted and uncultivated-places is-extended
Huic terrae canes ingentes sunt, tantaeque feritatis ut tauros
to-this land dogs huge are and-of-such fierceness that bulls
premant, leones perimant. Armenia nuncupata ab Armeno
they-press-down lions they-kill Armenia named from Armenus
Iasonis Thessali comite, qui amisso rege Iasone collecta
of-Jason the-Thessalian companion who with-lost king Jason with-gathered
multitudine eius, quae passim vagabatur, Armeniam cepit, et
multitude his which everywhere wandered Armenia took and
ex suo nomine nuncupavit. Sita est autem inter Taurum et
from his name named situated it-is moreover between the-Taurus and
Caucasum a Cappadocia usque ad Caspium mare protensa,
the-Caucasus from Cappadocia all-the-way to the-Caspian sea extended

habens a septentrione Ceraunios montes, ex cuius collibus
having from the-north the-Ceraunian mountains from whose hills
Tigris fluvius nascitur, et in cuius montibus arca post
the-Tigris river is-born and on whose mountains the-ark after
diluvium sedisse perhibetur. Duplex est autem Armenia,
the-flood to-have-settled is-held twofold is moreover Armenia
superior et inferior, sicut duae Pannoniae. Hiberia regio Asiae
upper and lower as two Pannonias Hiberia a-region of-Asia
est, prope Pontum Armeniae iuncta. In hac herbae tincturae
is near Pontus to-Armenia joined in this herbs for-dyeing
utiles nascuntur. Cappadociam urbs propria nominavit. Haec
useful are-born Cappadocia a-city its-own named this
in capite Syriae sita ab oriente Armeniam tangit, ab
at the-head of-Syria situated from the-east Armenia touches from
occasu Asiam minorem, ab aquilone mare Cimmericum et
the-west Asia lesser from the-north the-sea Cimmerian and
Themiscyrios campos, quos habuere Amazones; a meridie
the-Themiscyrian plains which held the-Amazons from the-south
vero Taurum montem, cui subiacet Cilicia et Isauria
but the-Taurus mountain to-which lies-below Cilicia and Isauria
usque ad Cilicium sinum, qui spectat contra insulam
all-the-way to the-Cilician gulf which looks toward the-island
Cyprum. Terra eius ante alias nutrix equorum. Halys amnis
Cyprus the-land its before others the-nurse of-horses the-Halys river
per eam fluit, qui quondam Lydiae regna disiunxit a
through it flows which once of-Lydia the-kingdoms separated from
Persis. Asia minor ab oriente Cappadocia cingitur, ab aliis
the-Persians Asia lesser from the-east by-Cappadocia is-girded from other
partibus undique mare circumdatur; nam a septentrione
parts on-all-sides by-sea it-is-surrounded for from the-north
pontum Euxinum habet, ab occasu Propontidem, a meridie
the-sea Euxine it-has from the-west the-Propontis from the-south

Aegyptium mare. Habet provincias Bithyniam, Phrygiam,
the-Egyptian sea it-has provinces Bithynia Phrygia
Galatiam, Lydiam, Cariam, Pamphyliam, Isauriam, Lyciam
Galatia Lydia Caria Pamphylia Isauria Lycia
atque Ciliciam. Prima Asiae minoris Bithynia in Ponti
and Cilicia the-first of-Asia lesser Bithynia at of-the-Pontus
exordio ad partem solis orientis adversa Thraciae iacet,
the-beginning toward the-part of-the-sun rising opposite to-Thrace lies
multis antea nominibus appellata. Nam prius Bebrycia dicta,
by-many before names called for earlier Bebrycia called
deinde Mygdonia, mox a Bithyno rege Bithynia nuncupata.
then Mygdonia soon from Bithynus the-king Bithynia named
Ipsa est et maior Phrygia. Nicomedia urbs in ea est, ubi
it is also the-greater Phrygia Nicomedia a-city in it is where
Hannibal fugiens veneni haustu animam exspiravit. Galatia
Hannibal fleeing of-poison by-the-draft the-soul breathed-out Galatia
dicta a priscis Gallorum gentibus, a quibus extitit occupata.
called from the-ancient of-the-Gauls nations by whom it-was occupied
Nam Galli in auxilium a rege Bithyniae evocati, regnum
for the-Gauls into aid by the-king of-Bithynia summoned the-kingdom
cum eo parta victoria diviserunt, sicque deinde Graecis
with him with-won victory divided and-so then with-the-Greeks
admixti primum Gallograeci, nunc ex antiquo Gallorum
mingled first Gallograeci now from the-ancient of-the-Gauls
nomine Galatae dicuntur; et eorum regio Galatia nuncupatur.
name Galatians are-called and their region Galatia is-named
Phrygia dicta a Phrygia Europis filia. Haec et Dardania
Phrygia called from Phrygia of-Europa the-daughter this also Dardania
a Dardano Iovis filio dicta. De quo Homerus ait:
from Dardanus of-Jupiter son called about whom Homer says

Quem primum genuit caelesti Iuppiter arce.
whom first begot from-heavenly Jupiter citadel

Hic enim profectus de Corytho civitate primus venit in
this for setting-out from Corythus the-city first came into
Phrygiam. Est autem regio Troadi superiecta ab Aquilonis
Phrygia it-is moreover a-region to-the-Troad placed-above from of-Aquilo
parte Galatiae; a meridiana vicina est Lycaoniae; ab oriente
the-part of-Galatia from the-southern neighbor it-is to-Lycaonia from the-east
Lydiae adhaeret; ab occidente Hellesponto mari terminatur.
to-Lydia it-adheres from the-west by-the-Hellespont sea it-is-bounded
Huius regio Troia est, quam ex suo nomine appellavit Tros,
of-this the-region Troy is which from his name called Tros
Troianorum rex, Ganymedis pater. Duae sunt autem Phrygiae:
of-the-Trojans king of-Ganymede the-father two are moreover Phrygias
maior et minor. Maior Phrygia Smyrnam habet, minor vero
greater and lesser the-greater Phrygia Smyrna has the-lesser but
Ilium. Lycaonia ∗∗∗ Cariam Hermus fluvius discernit a
Ilium Lycaonia (lacuna) Caria the-Hermus river separates from
Phrygia. Lydia sedes antiqua regnorum, quam Pactoli unda
Phrygia Lydia the-seat ancient of-kingdoms which of-the-Pactolus the-wave
extulit in divitias torrentibus aureis. Haec antea Maeonia
raised into riches with-torrents golden this before Maeonia
dicebatur, quae dum pro brevitate duos fratres reges Lydum
was-called which when for smallness two brothers kings Lydus
et Tyrrhenum ferre non posset, hinc ex sorte Tyrrhenus cum
and Tyrrhenus to-bear not could hence by lot Tyrrhenus with
ingenti multitudine profectus loca Galliae occupavit, et
a-huge multitude setting-out the-places of-Gaul occupied and
Tyrrheniam nominavit. Lydia autem a Lydo regis fratre,
Tyrrhenia named Lydia moreover from Lydus of-the-king brother

qui in provincia remanserat, cognominata est. Coniungitur
who in the-province had-remained surnamed is it-is-joined
autem ab occidente minori Phrygiae, ab ortu Smyrnam
moreover from the-west to-the-lesser Phrygia from the-east Smyrna
urbem habet, quam Helles fluvius cingit; cuius campos Pactolus
the-city it-has which the-Helles river girds whose plains the-Pactolus
et Hermus circumfluunt, arenis aureis ditissimi. Pamphylia.
and the-Hermus flow-around with-sands golden most-rich Pamphylia
Isauria ex situ loci perhibetur cognominata, quod undique
Isauria from the-site of-the-place is-held surnamed because on-all-sides
aperta aurarum flatibus pateat. Metropolim urbem Seleuciam
open of-breezes to-the-blasts it-lies-open as-metropolis the-city Seleucia
habet. Cilicia a Cilice quodam nomen traxit, quem ortum
it-has Cilicia from Cilix a-certain the-name drew whom sprung
Phoenice dicunt, antiquioremque Iove fuisse adserunt.
from-Phoenix they-say and-more-ancient than-Jupiter to-have-been assert
Plurima iacet campis, recipiens ab occiduo Lyciam, a
very-much it-lies in-plains receiving from the-west Lycia from
meridie mare Issicum, a tergo montis Tauri iuga. Hanc
the-south the-sea Issic from the-back of-the-mountain Taurus the-ridges this
Cydnus amnis intersecat. Matrem urbium habet Tarsum. In ea
the-Cydnus river cuts-through as-mother of-cities it-has Tarsus in it
et Corycus oppidum est, unde crocum plurimum et optimum
also Corycus a-town is whence saffron most and best
venit, spiramine fraglantiori et colore plus aureo. Lycia
comes with-breath more-fragrant and color more golden Lycia
nuncupata quod ab oriente adiuncta Ciliciae sit. Nam habet ab
named because from the-east joined to-Cilicia it-be for it-has from
ortu Ciliciam, ab occasu et meridie mare, a septentrione
the-east Cilicia from the-west and south the-sea from the-north

Cariam. Ibi est mons Chimaera, qui nocturnis aestibus
Caria there is the-mountain Chimaera which by-nocturnal heats
ignem exhalat: sicut in Sicilia Aetna et Vesuvius in Campania.
fire exhales as in Sicily Etna and Vesuvius in Campania

De Europa

IV · EUROPE

Europe is named from Europa, daughter of Agenor. Isidore runs from Scythia, Germany, Moesia, Pannonia, and Thrace through Greece and its provinces, Dalmatia, Epirus, Hellas, Thessaly, Macedonia, and Achaea, to Italy and its regions, Gaul, and Spain.

Post Asiam ad Europam stilum vertendum. Europa quippe
after Asia to Europe the-pen to-be-turned Europa indeed
Agenoris regis Libyae filia fuit, quam Iovis ab Africa
of-Agenor king of-Libya the-daughter was whom Jupiter from Africa
raptam Cretam advexit, et partem tertiam orbis ex eius
seized to-Crete carried and the-part third of-the-world from her
nomine appellavit. Iste est autem Agenor Libyae filius, ex
name called this is moreover Agenor of-Libya the-son from
qua et Libya, id est Africa, fertur cognominata; unde
whom also Libya that is Africa is-said surnamed whence
apparet prius Libyam accepisse vocabulum, postea Europam.
it-appears earlier Libya to-have-received the-name afterward Europe
Europa autem in tertiam partem orbis divisa incipit a
Europe moreover into the-third part of-the-world divided begins from
flumine Tanai, descendens ad occasum per septentrionalem
the-river Tanais descending toward the-west through the-northern
Oceanum usque in fines Hispaniae; cuius pars orientalis
Ocean all-the-way into the-borders of-Spain whose part eastern

et meridiana a Ponto consurgens, tota mari Magno
and southern from the-Pontus rising wholly to-the-sea Great
coniungitur, et in insulas Gades finitur. Prima Europae
is-joined and in the-islands Gades is-ended the-first of-Europe
regio Scythia inferior, quae a Maeotidis paludibus incipiens
region Scythia lower which from of-Maeotis marshes beginning
inter Danubium et Oceanum septentrionalem usque
between the-Danube and the-Ocean northern all-the-way
ad Germaniam porrigitur; quae terra generaliter propter
to Germany is-extended which land generally on-account-of
barbaras gentes, quibus inhabitatur, Barbarica dicitur. Huius
the-barbarous nations by-which it-is-inhabited Barbarica is-called of-this
pars prima Alania est, quae ad Maeotidis paludes pertingit;
the-part first Alania is which to of-Maeotis marshes reaches
post hanc Dacia, ubi et Gothia; deinde Germania, ubi
after this Dacia where also Gothia then Germany where
plurimam partem Suevi incoluerunt. Germania post Scythiam
the-greatest part the-Suevi inhabited Germany after Scythia
inferiorem a Danubio inter Rhenum fluvium Oceanumque
lower from the-Danube between the-Rhine river and-the-Ocean
conclusa cingitur a septentrione et occasu Oceano, ab
enclosed is-girded from the-north and west by-the-Ocean from
ortu vero Danubio, a meridie Rheno flumine dirimitur.
the-east but by-the-Danube from the-south by-the-Rhine river it-is-separated
Terra dives virum ac populis numerosis et inmanibus;
a-land rich in-men and in-peoples numerous and huge
unde et propter fecunditatem gignendorum populorum
whence also on-account-of the-fertility of-to-be-begotten peoples
Germania dicta est. Gignit aves Hyrcanias, quarum pinnae
Germany called is it-begets birds Hyrcanian whose feathers
nocte perlucent; bisontes quoque feras et uros atque alces
by-night shine-through bisons also beasts and aurochs and elks

parturit. Mittit et gemmas, crystallum et sucinum, callaicum
it-bears it-sends also gems crystal and amber callais
quoque viridem, et ceraunium candidum. Duae sunt autem
also green and ceraunium white two are moreover
Germaniae: superior iuxta septentrionalem Oceanum, inferior
Germanies the-upper next-to the-northern Ocean the-lower
circa Rhenum. Provincias autem quas Danubius a Barbarico
around the-Rhine the-provinces moreover which the-Danube from the-Barbaric
ad Mediterraneum mare secludit: prima est Moesia, a
to the-Mediterranean sea shuts-off the-first is Moesia from
messium proventu vocata; unde et eam veteres Cereris
of-harvests the-yield called whence also it the-ancients of-Ceres
horreum nuncupabant. Haec autem ab oriente ostiis
the-granary named this moreover from the-east to-the-mouths
Danubii iungitur, ab Euro vero Thraciae, a meridie
of-the-Danube is-joined from the-southeast but to-Thrace from the-south
Macedoniae, ab occasu Histriae copulatur. Post Moesiam
to-Macedonia from the-west to-Histria is-coupled after Moesia
autem Pannonia est. Inde Noricus ager frigidus et parcius
moreover Pannonia is thence the-Norican field cold and sparingly
fructuosus. Post quem Raeticus frugibus ferax, qui excipit
fruitful after which the-Raetian in-crops fertile which receives
Galliam Belgicam. Thraciae Thiras Iaphet filius veniens
Gaul Belgic to-Thrace Tiras of-Japheth son coming
nomen dedisse perhibetur: alii a saevitia incolarum
the-name to-have-given is-held others from the-savagery of-the-inhabitants
Thraciam appellatam dixerunt. Huic ab oriente Propontis
Thrace called have-said to-this from the-east the-Propontis
et urbs Constantinopolis opposita est, a septentrione vero
and the-city Constantinople opposite is from the-north but
Ister obtenditur, a meridie vero Aegeo mari adhaeret,
the-Ister is-stretched-before from the-south but to-the-Aegean sea it-adheres

ab occasu Macedonia illi subiacet. Cuius regionem olim
from the-west Macedonia to-it lies-below whose region once
Bessorum populus Massagetae, Sarmatae, Scythae et aliae
of-the-Bessi the-people the-Massagetae Sarmatians Scythians and other
plurimae nationes incoluerunt; ampla est enim, ideoque
very-many nations inhabited ample it-is for and-therefore
plurimas continuit gentes. Ebrum fluvium Thracia fundit, qui
very-many it-contained nations the-Hebrus river Thrace pours which
etiam gentes barbarorum plurimas tangit. Graecia a Graeco
also nations of-barbarians very-many touches Greece from Graecus
rege vocata, qui cunctam eam regionem regno incoluit.
the-king called who all that region in-the-kingdom inhabited
Sunt autem provinciae Graeciae septem: quarum prima ab
there-are moreover provinces of-Greece seven of-which the-first from
occidente Dalmatia, inde Epirus, inde Hellas, inde Thessalia,
the-west Dalmatia then Epirus then Hellas then Thessaly
inde Macedonia, inde Achaia, et duae in mari, Creta et
then Macedonia then Achaea and two in the-sea Crete and
Cyclades. Illyricus autem generaliter omnis Graecia. Dalmatia
the-Cyclades Illyricus moreover generally all Greece Dalmatia
a Delmi maxima eiusdem provinciae civitate traxisse
from Delmis the-greatest of-the-same province city to-have-drawn
nomen existimatur. Adhaeret autem ab oriente Macedoniae,
the-name is-thought it-adheres moreover from the-east to-Macedonia
a septentrione Moesiae, ab occasu Histria terminatur, a
from the-north to-Moesia from the-west by-Histria is-bounded from
meridie vero Adriatico sinu clauditur. Epirus a Pyrrho
the-south but by-the-Adriatic gulf is-enclosed Epirus from Pyrrhus
Achillis filio cognominata. Cuius pars Chaonia, quae antea
of-Achilles son surnamed of-which a-part Chaonia which before
Molosia dicta est, a Moloso filio Pyrrhi quem de
Molossia called was from Molossus son of-Pyrrhus whom from

Andromacha habuit. Sed postquam occisus est Pyrrhus Orestis
Andromache he-had but after killed was Pyrrhus of-Orestes
insidiis, Andromacham Helenus suscepit tenuitque regnum
by-the-ambushes Andromache Helenus took-up and-held the-kingdom
privigni qui successerat patri; a quo Molosia dicta
of-the-stepson who had-succeeded to-the-father from whom Molossia called
est pars Epiri, quam Helenus postea a fratre Chaone,
is the-part of-Epirus which Helenus afterward from his-brother Chaon
quem in venatu per ignorantiam dicitur occidisse, Chaoniam
whom in hunting through ignorance he-is-said to-have-killed Chaonia
nominavit, quasi ad solacium fratris extincti. Hellas dicta
named as-if for the-solace of-the-brother extinguished Hellas called
a rege Hellene, Deucalionis et Pyrrhae filio, a quo et
from the-king Hellen of-Deucalion and of-Pyrrha son from whom also
prius Graeci Hellenes nuncupati sunt. Ipsa est et Attica
earlier the-Greeks Hellenes named were it is also the-Attic
terra Acte prius dicta. Nam Granus quidam Graeciae indigena
land Acte earlier called for Granus a-certain of-Greece native
fuit, ex cuius filia Attis nomine Attica terra vocata est.
was from whose daughter Attis by-name the-Attic land called is
Haec inter Macedoniam et Achaiam media iacet, Arcadiae
this between Macedonia and Achaea in-the-middle lies to-Arcadia
a septentrionali parte coniuncta. Ipsa est et vera Graecia,
from the-northern part joined it is also the-true Greece
ubi fuit Athenae civitas, mater liberalium litterarum et
where was Athens the-city the-mother of-liberal letters and
philosophorum nutrix, qua nihil habuit Graecia clarius
of-philosophers the-nurse than-which nothing had Greece more-famous
atque nobilius. In ea est et Marathonius campus opinione
and nobler in it is also the-Marathonian plain by-the-opinion
quondam proelii cruentissimus. Helladis autem duae sunt
once of-battle most-bloody of-Hellas moreover two are

provinciae: Boeotia et Peloponnensis. Boeotia autem dicta
provinces Boeotia and the-Peloponnese Boeotia moreover called
hac ex causa. Dum Cadmus Agenoris filius Europam
this from cause while Cadmus of-Agenor son Europa
sororem a Iove raptam ex praecepto genitoris quaereret nec
his-sister by Jupiter seized from the-precept of-his-father sought nor
reperiret, patris iram formidans confirmato animo elegit
found of-the-father the-wrath dreading with-strengthened spirit he-chose
exilium. Nam bovis forte conspectae secutus vestigia
exile for of-a-cow by-chance seen having-followed the-footprints
amplexus est sedem, ubi illa recubaverat, sicque locum de
embraced has the-seat where she had-lain-down and-so the-place from
nomine bovis Boeotiam nominavit; ubi et Thebas urbem
the-name of-the-cow Boeotia named where also Thebes the-city
construxit, in qua olim civilia bella detonuerunt, et ubi
he-built in which once civil wars thundered and where
nati sunt Apollo et Hercules maior ille Thebanus. Eadem
born were Apollo and Hercules the-greater that Theban the-same
est Aonia vocata, a fonte quodam Apollini et Musis
is Aonia called from a-spring certain to-Apollo and to-the-Muses
consecrato, qui in eadem Boeotia est. Peloponnensis secunda
consecrated which in the-same Boeotia is the-Peloponnese the-second
pars Helladis a Pelope regnata atque vocata. Thessalia a
part of-Hellas by Pelops ruled and called Thessaly from
Thessalo rege cognominata, quae ad meridianam plagam
Thessalus the-king surnamed which to the-southern region
Macedoniae coniuncta est, cuius a tergo Pieria est. Multa
of-Macedonia joined is of-which at the-back Pieria is many
in Thessalia flumina [et civitates] et oppida, inter quae
in Thessaly rivers and cities and towns among which
praecipue Thessalonica: ibi est et mons Parnasus
especially Thessalonica there is also the-mountain Parnassus

quondam Apollini consecratus. Thessalia patria Achillis et
once to-Apollo consecrated Thessaly the-fatherland of-Achilles and
origo Lapitharum fuit, de quibus fertur quod hi primo
the-origin of-the-Lapiths was about whom it-is-said that these first
equos frenis domuerunt, unde et Centauri dicti sunt.
horses with-bridles tamed whence also Centaurs called were
In Thessalia primum solidi aurei facti sunt, domandorum
in Thessaly first solidi golden made were of-to-be-tamed
quoque equorum usus primum repertus est. Macedoniae
also of-horses the-use first found was of-Macedonia
in exordio ab Emathio rege Emathiae nomen erat, sed
at the-beginning from Emathius the-king of-Emathia the-name was but
Macedo Deucalionis maternus nepos, postquam ibi accepit
Macedo of-Deucalion maternal grandson after there he-received
principatum, mutavit vocabulum Macedoniamque a suo
the-princedom changed the-name and-Macedonia from his
nomine dixit. Est autem confinis ab oriente Aegeo mari,
name called it-is moreover bordering from the-east on-the-Aegean sea
a meridie Achaiae, ab occasu Dalmatiae, a septentrione
from the-south on-Achaea from the-west on-Dalmatia from the-north
Moesiae; patria Alexandri Magni, et regio aureis
on-Moesia the-fatherland of-Alexander the-Great and a-region with-golden
venis argentique opima. Lapidem quem paeaniten vocant
veins and-of-silver rich the-stone which paeanites they-call
ista gignit. Mons Olympus in ea est, qui excellenti
it begets the-mountain Olympus in it is which with-excellent
vertice tantus adtollitur ut in cacumine eius nec nubes
summit so-much is-raised that on the-top its neither clouds
nec venti sentiantur. Achaia ab Achaeo rege et urbs
nor winds are-felt Achaea from Achaeus the-king both the-city
et provincia appellata. Haec pene insula est; nam absque
and the-province called this almost an-island is for except

septentrionali parte, qua Macedoniae iungitur, undique
the-northern part by-which to-Macedonia it-is-joined on-all-sides
septa est mari. Ab oriente enim habet Myrteum mare,
hedged it-is by-sea from the-east for it-has the-Myrtoan sea
ab Euro Creticum, a meridie Ionium, ab Africo
from the-southeast the-Cretan from the-south the-Ionian from the-southwest
et occasu Cassiopas insulas, a sola septentrionali parte
and west the-Cassiopean islands from only the-northern part
Macedoniae vel Atticae terrae adiungitur. Huius caput est
to-Macedonia or to-the-Attic land it-is-joined of-this the-head is
urbs Corinthus Graeciae decus. Inachus est Achaiae fluvius.
the-city Corinth of-Greece the-glory the-Inachus is of-Achaea a-river
Arcadia vero sinus Achaiae est, ut platani folium inter
Arcadia but a-bay of-Achaea is like of-a-plane-tree a-leaf between
Ionium et Aegeum mare exposita, quam Arcas, Iovis et
the-Ionian and Aegean sea set-out which Arcas of-Jupiter and
Callisto filius, Pelasgis in dicionem redactis, ex suo
of-Callisto son with-the-Pelasgians into dominion brought from his
nomine Arcadiam nuncupavit. Ipsa est et Sicyonia, a
name Arcadia named it is also Sicyonia from
Sicyone rege, a quo et regnum Sicyoniorum est dictum.
Sicyon the-king from whom also the-kingdom of-the-Sicyonians is called
Habet autem Arcadia fluvium magnum Erimanthum; asbeston
it-has moreover Arcadia a-river great the-Erymanthus the-asbestos
quoque lapidem, qui semel accensus numquam extinguitur:
also stone which once kindled never is-extinguished
candidissimae etiam merulae ibi nascuntur. Lacedaemonia...
most-white also blackbirds there are-born Lacedaemonia
Pannonia ab Alpibus Appenninis est nuncupata, quibus ab
Pannonia from the-Alps Apennine is named by-which from
Italia secernitur, regio viro fortis et solo laeta, duobus satis
Italy it-is-separated a-region in-men strong and in-soil glad by-two quite

acribus fluviis, Dravo Savoque, vallata. Coniungitur autem
fierce rivers the-Drava and-the-Sava walled it-is-joined moreover
cum Norico et Raetia; habentes ab oriente Moesiam, ab
with Noricum and Raetia having from the-east Moesia from
Euro Istriam; ab Africo vero Alpes Appenninos habent,
the-southeast Istria from the-southwest but the-Alps Apennine they-have
ab occasu Galliam Belgicam, a septentrione Danubii
from the-west Gaul Belgic from the-north of-the-Danube
fontem, vel limitem qui Germaniam Galliamque secernit.
the-source or the-boundary which Germany and-Gaul separates
Istriam Ister amnis vocavit, qui eius terram influit. Ipse est
Istria the-Ister river named which its land flows-into it is
Danubius. Habet autem Istria a septentrione Pannoniam.
the-Danube it-has moreover Istria from the-north Pannonia
Italia olim a Graecis populis occupata Magna Graecia
Italy once by Greek peoples occupied Great Greece
appellata est, deinde a regis nomine Saturnia; mox et
called was then from of-the-king the-name Saturnia soon also
Latium dicta eo quod idem Saturnus a Iove sedibus suis
Latium called for-this that the-same Saturn by Jupiter from-seats his
pulsus ibi latuerit; postremo ab Italo Siculorum rege ibi
driven there lay-hidden lastly from Italus of-the-Sicilians king there
regnante Italia nuncupata est. Cuius situs longitudine amplius
reigning Italy named is whose site in-length more
quam latitudine a Circio in Eurum extenditur, a
than in-breadth from the-northwest toward the-southeast is-extended from
meridie Tyrrheno mare, ab Aquilone Adriatico clauditur,
the-south by-the-Tyrrhenian sea from the-north by-the-Adriatic is-enclosed
ab occiduo Alpium iugis finitur, terra omnibus in rebus
from the-west of-the-Alps by-the-ridges is-bounded a-land all in things
pulcherrima, soli fertilitate, pabuli ubertate gratissima.
most-beautiful of-soil by-fertility of-pasture by-abundance most-pleasing

Habet lacus Benacum, Avernum atque Lucrinum; fluvios
it-has lakes Benacus Avernus and Lucrinus rivers
Eridanum et Tiberim; et tepentes fontibus Baias. Gignit
the-Eridanus and the-Tiber and warm with-springs Baiae it-begets
gemmas syrtitem, lyncurium et corallium; boam quoque
gems the-syrtites the-lyncurius and the-coral the-boa also
serpentem, lyncem feram et Diomedias aves. Italia autem et
serpent the-lynx beast and the-Diomedean birds Italy moreover and
Hispania idcirco Hesperiae dictae quod Graeci Hespero
Spain for-this-reason Hesperiae called because the-Greeks by-Hesperus
stella navigent et in Italia et in Hispania. Quae hac
the-star sail both to Italy and to Spain which by-this
ratione discernuntur; aut enim Hesperiam solam dicis
reason are-distinguished either for Hesperia alone you-say
et significas Italiam, aut addis ultimam et significas
and you-signify Italy or you-add farthest and you-signify
Hispaniam, quia in occidentis est fine. Tuscia pars Italiae;
Spain because in of-the-west it-is the-end Tuscia a-part of-Italy
Umbria vero pars Tusciae. Tuscia autem a frequentia
Umbria but a-part of-Tuscia Tuscia moreover from the-frequency
sacrorum et turis vocata, ἀπὸ τοῦ θυάζειν. Umbria
of-sacred-rites and of-incense called from the to-offer-sacrifice Umbria
vero, historiae narrant, eo quod tempore aquosae cladis
but the-histories narrate for-this that in-the-time of-the-watery disaster
imbribus superfuerit, et ob hoc Ὀμβρία Graece cognominata.
the-rains it-survived and for this Ombria in-Greek surnamed
Est enim in iugis Appennini montis sita, in parte Italiae
it-is for on the-ridges of-the-Apennine mountain situated in the-part of-Italy
iuxta meridiem. Etruria pars Italiae dicta quod eius fines
toward the-south Etruria a-part of-Italy called because its borders
tendebantur usque ad ripam Tiberis, quasi ἑτερούρια. Nam
were-stretched all-the-way to the-bank of-the-Tiber as-if heterouria for

ἕτερον significat alterum, ὅρος finis vocatur. Romae enim
heteron signifies the-other horos boundary is-called of-Rome for
fines antea unam tantum Tiberis ripam tenebant. Alii
the-boundaries before one only of-the-Tiber bank held others
Etruriam dictam ab Etrusco principe putant. Item et
Etruria called from Etruscus the-prince think likewise also
Tyrrhenia a Tyrrheno Lydi fratre, qui ex sorte cum
Tyrrhenia from Tyrrhenus of-Lydus brother who by lot with
populi parte de Maeonia venit ad Italiam. Haec est et
of-the-people a-part from Maeonia came to Italy this is also
Tuscia; sed Tusciam dicere non debemus; quia nusquam
Tuscia but Tuscia to-say not we-ought because nowhere
legimus. Tuscia autem a frequentia sacrificii et turis
we-read Tuscia moreover from the-frequency of-sacrifice and of-incense
dicta, ἀπὸ τοῦ θῦσαι. Illic et aruspicinam dicunt esse
called from the to-sacrifice there also haruspicy they-say to-be
repertam. Apulia [ubi Brundusium, quam Aetoli secuti
found Apulia where Brundisium which the-Aetolians having-followed
Diomedem ducem condiderunt]. Campania [habet terras
Diomedes as-leader founded Campania has lands
hieme anni atque aestate vernantes. Sol ibi mitis,
in-winter of-the-year and in-summer flourishing the-sun there mild
grata temperies, aer purus et blandus]. Gallia a candore
pleasing temperance the-air pure and gentle Gaul from the-whiteness
populi nuncupata est; γάλα enim Graece lac dicitur.
of-the-people named is gala for in-Greek milk is-called
Montes enim et rigor caeli ab ea parte solis
the-mountains for and the-stiffness of-the-sky from that part of-the-sun
ardorem excludunt, quo fit ut candor corporum
the-heat shut-out by-which it-happens that the-whiteness of-bodies
non coloretur. Hanc ab oriente Alpium iuga tuentur, ab
not is-colored this from the-east of-the-Alps the-ridges guard from

occasu Oceanus includit, a meridie praerupta Pyrenaei, a
the-west the-Ocean encloses from the-south the-crags of-the-Pyrenees from
septentrione Rheni fluenta atque Germania; cuius initium
the-north of-the-Rhine the-streams and Germany whose beginning
Belgica, finis Aquitania est; regio gleba uberi ac pabulosa
Belgica the-end Aquitania is a-region in-soil rich and grassy
et ad usum animantium apta, fluminibus quoque et fontibus
and for the-use of-living-things apt by-rivers also and springs
rigua, perfusa duobus magnis Rheno et Rhodano fluviis.
watered suffused by-two great the-Rhine and the-Rhone rivers
Belgis autem civitas est Galliae, a quo Belgica provincia
Belgis moreover a-city is of-Gaul from which the-Belgic province
dicta [est]. Cisalpina, quia citra Alpes. Transalpina,
called is Cisalpine because on-this-side-of the-Alps Transalpine
id est trans Alpes, contra septentrionem. Raetia vero, quod
that is across the-Alps toward the-north Raetia but because
sit iuxta Rhenum. Aquitania autem ab obliquis aquis
it-be next-to the-Rhine Aquitania moreover from the-oblique waters
Ligeris fluminis appellata, qui ex plurima parte terminus
of-the-Liger river called which for the-most part the-boundary
eius est, eamque pene in orbem cingit. Hispania prius ab
its is and-it almost in a-circle girds Spain earlier from
Ibero amne Iberia nuncupata, postea ab Hispalo Hispania
the-Iberus river Iberia named afterward from Hispalus Hispania
cognominata est. Ipsa est et vera Hesperia, ab Hespero
surnamed is it is also the-true Hesperia from Hesperus
stella occidentali dicta. Sita est autem inter Africam et
the-star western called situated it-is moreover between Africa and
Galliam, a septentrione Pyrenaeis montibus clausa, a
Gaul from the-north by-the-Pyrenean mountains enclosed from
reliquis partibus undique mare conclusa, salubritate caeli
the-remaining parts on-all-sides by-sea shut-in in-healthfulness of-sky

aequalis, omnium frugum generibus fecunda, gemmarum
equal of-all crops in-kinds fertile of-gems
metallorumque copiis ditissima. Interfluunt eam flumina
and-of-metals in-abundances most-rich flow-through it rivers
magna: Baetis, Mineus, Iberus et Tagus aurum trahens, ut
great the-Baetis the-Mineus the-Iberus and the-Tagus gold drawing like
Pactolus. Habet provincias sex: Tarraconensem, Cartaginensem,
the-Pactolus it-has provinces six the-Tarraconensis the-Carthaginensis
Lusitaniam, Galliciam, Baeticam, et trans freta in regione
Lusitania Gallicia Baetica and across the-straits in the-region
Africae Tingitaniam. Duae sunt autem Hispaniae: Citerior,
of-Africa Tingitania two are moreover Spains the-Hither
quae in septentrionis plagam a Pyrenaeo usque ad
which into of-the-north the-region from the-Pyrenees all-the-way to
Cartaginem porrigitur; Ulterior, quae in meridiem a
Carthage is-extended the-Farther which into the-south from
Celtiberis usque ad Gaditanum fretum extenditur. Citerior
the-Celtiberians all-the-way to the-Gaditan strait is-extended Hither
autem et Ulterior dicta quasi citra et ultra; sed citra
moreover and Farther called as-if on-this-side and beyond but citra
quasi circa terras, et ultra vel quod ultima vel quod non
as-if around the-lands and ultra either because farthest or because not
sit post hanc ulla, hoc est alia, terra.
there-be after this any that is other land

De Libya

V · LIBYA

Libya or Africa is named from the wind Libs, or from Libya daughter of Epaphus, or from Afer. Isidore describes its provinces from Cyrenaica to Mauretania and Ethiopia, the unknown fourth part across the Ocean, and the words province, fatherland, region, and territory.

Libya dicta quod inde Libs flat, hoc est Africus. Alii
Libya called because thence Libs blows that is Africus others
aiunt Epaphum Iovis filium, qui Memphin in Aegypto
say Epaphus of-Jupiter son who Memphis in Egypt
condidit, ex Cassiopa uxore procreasse filiam Libyam,
founded from Cassiopa his-wife to-have-procreated a-daughter Libya
quae postea in Africa regnum possedit. Cuius ex nomine
who afterward in Africa the-kingdom possessed of-whose from name
terra Libya est appellata. Africam autem nominatam quidam
the-land Libya is called Africa moreover named some
inde existimant, quasi apricam, quod sit aperta caelo
thence think as-if aprica because it-be open to-the-sky
vel soli et sine horrore frigoris. Alii dicunt Africam
or to-the-sun and without the-bristling of-cold others say Africa
appellari ab uno ex posteris Abrahae de Cethura, qui
to-be-named from one of the-descendants of-Abraham by Keturah who
vocatus est Afer, de quo supra meminimus. Incipit autem
called was Afer of whom above we-have-mentioned it-begins moreover
a finibus Aegypti pergens iuxta meridiem per Aethiopiam
from the-borders of-Egypt going along the-south through Ethiopia
usque Athlantem montem. A septentrionali vero parte
all-the-way-to the-Atlas mountain from the-northern but part
Mediterraneo mari coniuncta clauditur, et in Gaditano freto
to-the-Mediterranean sea joined it-is-enclosed and in the-Gaditan strait

finitur, habens provincias Libyam Cyrenensem, Pentapolim,
is-ended having provinces Libya Cyrenaic Pentapolis
Tripolim, Byzacium, Carthaginem, Numidiam, Mauretaniam
Tripolis Byzacium Carthage Numidia Mauretania
Sitifensem, Mauretaniam Tingitanam, et circa solis ardorem
Sitifensis Mauretania Tingitana and around of-the-sun the-heat
Aethiopiam. Libya Cyrenensis in parte Africae prima est, a
Ethiopia Libya Cyrenaic in the-part of-Africa first is from
Cyrene urbe metropoli, quae est in eius finibus, nuncupata.
Cyrene the-city the-metropolis which is in its borders named
Huic ab oriente Aegyptus est, ab occasu Syrtes maiores
to-this from the-east Egypt is from the-west the-Syrtes greater
et Trogodytae, a septentrione mare Libycum, a meridie
and the-Troglodytes from the-north the-sea Libyan from the-south
Aethiopia et barbarorum variae nationes et solitudines
Ethiopia and of-barbarians various nations and wildernesses
inaccessibiles, quae etiam basiliscos serpentes creant. Pentapolis
inaccessible which also basilisks serpents create Pentapolis
Graeca lingua a quinque urbibus nuncupata: id est
in-the-Greek tongue from the-five cities named that is
Berenice, Ceutria, Apollonia, Ptolomais, Cyrene; ex quibus
Berenice Ceutria Apollonia Ptolemais Cyrene of which
Ptolomais et Berenice a regibus nominatae sunt. Est autem
Ptolemais and Berenice from kings named are it-is moreover
Pentapolis Libyae Cyrenensi adiuncta, et [in] eius finibus
Pentapolis to-Libya Cyrenaic joined and in its borders
deputata. Tripolitanam quoque provinciam Graeci lingua
assigned the-Tripolitan also province the-Greeks in-tongue
sua signant de numero trium magnarum urbium: Oeae,
their mark from the-number of-three great cities Oea
Sabratae, Leptis magnae. Haec habet ab oriente Syrtes
Sabrata Leptis the-great this has from the-east the-Syrtes

maiores et Trogodytas, a septentrione mare Adriaticum,
greater and the-Troglodytes from the-north the-sea Adriatic
ab occasu Byzacium, a meridie Gaetulos et Garamantas
from the-west Byzacium from the-south the-Gaetuli and Garamantes
usque ad Oceanum Aethiopicum pertendentes. Byzacena
all-the-way to the-Ocean Ethiopian extending the-Byzacene
regio ex duobus nobilissimis oppidis nomen sortita est,
region from two most-noble towns the-name obtained has
ex quibus una Hadrumetum vocatur. Haec sub Tripoli est,
of which one Hadrumetum is-called this below Tripolis is
patens passuum ducenta vel amplius milia, fecunda oleis,
lying-open of-paces two-hundred or more thousands fertile in-olives
et glebis ita praepinguis ut iacta ibi semina incremento
and in-soils so very-rich that cast there seeds with-the-increase
pene centesimae frugis renascantur. Zeugis, ubi Carthago
almost of-a-hundredfold crop are-reborn Zeugis where Carthage
magna. Ipsa est et vera Africa inter Byzacium et
the-great it is also the-true Africa between Byzacium and
Numidiam sita, a septentrione mari Siculo iuncta, et
Numidia situated from the-north to-the-sea Sicilian joined and
a meridie usque ad Gaetulorum regionem porrecta; cuius
from the-south all-the-way to of-the-Gaetuli the-region extended whose
proxima quaeque frugifera sunt, ulteriora autem bestiis et
nearest all fruit-bearing are the-farther-parts moreover with-beasts and
serpentibus plena, atque onagris magnis in deserto vagantibus.
serpents full and onagers great in the-desert wandering
Gaetulia autem Africae pars mediterranea est. Numidia
Gaetulia moreover of-Africa the-part inland is Numidia
ab incolis passim vagantibus sic vocata, quod nullam
from the-inhabitants everywhere wandering so called because no
certam haberent sedem. Nam lingua eorum incertae sedes et
fixed they-had seat for in-tongue their uncertain seats and

vagae ‘numidia’ dicuntur. Incipit autem a flumine Amsiga,
wandering numidia are-called it-begins moreover from the-river Amsiga
in Zeugitanum limitem definit, habens ab ortu Syrtes
into the-Zeugitan boundary it-ends having from the-east the-Syrtes
minores, a septentrione mare quod intendit Sardiniam,
lesser from the-north the-sea which stretches-toward Sardinia
ab occasu Mauretaniam Sitifensem, a meridie Aethiopum
from the-west Mauretania Sitifensis from the-south of-the-Ethiopians
gentes: regio campis praepinguis. Ubi autem silvestris est,
the-nations a-region in-plains very-rich where moreover wooded it-is
feras educat; ubi iugis ardua, equos et onagros procreat;
beasts it-rears where on-ridges steep horses and onagers it-procreates
eximio etiam marmore praedicatur, quod Numidicum dicitur.
for-excellent also marble it-is-proclaimed which Numidian is-called
Habet autem urbes praecipuas: Hipponem, Regium et
it-has moreover cities chief Hippo Regius and
Rusicadam. Mauretania vocata a colore populorum; Graeci
Rusicada Mauretania called from the-color of-the-peoples the-Greeks
enim nigrum μαῦρον vocant. Sicut enim Gallia a candore
for black mauron call as for Gaul from the-whiteness
populi, ita Mauretania a nigrore nomen sortita est. Cuius
of-the-people so Mauretania from blackness the-name obtained has whose
prima provincia Mauretania Sitifensis est, quae Sitifi habuit
first province Mauretania Sitifensis is which Sitifis had
oppidum; a quo et vocabulum traxisse regio perhibetur.
a-town from which also the-name to-have-drawn the-region is-held
Mauretania vero Caesariensis: coloniae Caesareae civitas
Mauretania but Caesariensis of-the-colony Caesarea the-city
fuit, et nomen provinciae ex ea datum. Utraeque igitur
was and the-name of-the-province from it given both therefore
provinciae sibi coniunctae ab oriente Numidiam habent,
provinces to-each-other joined from the-east Numidia have

a septentrione mare Magnum, ab occasu flumen Malvam,
from the-north the-sea Great from the-west the-river Malva
a meridie montem Astrixin, qui discernit inter fecundam
from the-south the-mountain Astrixis which separates between fertile
terram et harenas iacentes usque ad Oceanum. Mauretania
land and sands lying all-the-way to the-Ocean Mauretania
Tingitania a Tingi metropolitana huius provinciae civitate
Tingitania from Tingis the-metropolitan of-this province city
vocata est. Haec ultima Africae exsurgit a montibus
called is this the-last of-Africa rises from the-mountains
septem, habens ab oriente flumen Malvam, a septentrione
seven having from the-east the-river Malva from the-north
fretum Gaditanum, ab occiduo Oceanum Athlanticum, a
the-strait Gaditan from the-west the-Ocean Atlantic from
meridie Gaulalum gentes usque ad Oceanum Hesperium
the-south of-the-Gaulales the-nations all-the-way to the-Ocean Hesperian
pererrantes: regio gignens feras, simias, dracones et
wandering a-region begetting beasts apes dragons and
struthiones. Olim etiam et elephantis plena fuit, quos sola
ostriches once also also with-elephants full it-was which alone
nunc India parturit. Garamantis regionis caput Garama
now India bears of-the-Garamantian region the-head Garama
oppidum fuit. Est autem inter Cyrenensem et Aethiopiam,
a-town was it-is moreover between the-Cyrenaic and Ethiopia
ubi est fons qui friget calore diei et calet frigore
where is a-spring which is-cold with-the-heat of-day and is-hot with-the-cold
noctis. Aethiopia dicta a colore populorum, quos solis
of-night Ethiopia called from the-color of-the-peoples whom of-the-sun
vicinitas torret. Denique vim sideris prodit hominum
the-nearness scorches finally the-force of-the-star shows of-men
color; est enim ibi iugis aestus; nam quidquid eius est,
the-color there-is for there continual heat for whatever of-it is

sub meridiano cardine est. Circa occiduum autem montuosa
under the-southern hinge is around the-west moreover mountainous
est, arenosa in medio, ad orientalem vero plagam deserta:
it-is sandy in the-middle toward the-eastern but region deserted
cuius situs ab occiduo Athlantis montis ad orientem
whose site from the-west of-the-Atlas mountain to the-east
usque in Aegypti fines porrigitur, a meridie Oceano,
all-the-way into of-Egypt the-borders is-extended from the-south by-the-Ocean
a septentrione Nilo flumine clauditur; plurimas habens
from the-north by-the-Nile river is-enclosed very-many having
gentes, diverso vultu et monstruosa specie horribiles.
nations with-diverse face and monstrous appearance horrible
Ferarum quoque et serpentium referta est multitudine. Illic
of-beasts also and of-serpents filled it-is with-a-multitude there
quippe rhinoceros bestia et camelopardus, basiliscus, dracones
indeed the-rhinoceros beast and the-camelopard the-basilisk dragons
ingentes, ex quorum cerebro gemmae extrahuntur. Iacynthus
huge from whose brain gems are-drawn-out the-hyacinth
quoque et chrysoprasus ibi reperiuntur; cinnamomum ibi
also and the-chrysoprase there are-found cinnamon there
colligitur. Duae sunt autem Aethiopiae: una circa ortum
is-gathered two are moreover Ethiopias one around the-rising
solis, altera circa occasum in Mauretania. Extra tres
of-the-sun the-other around the-setting in Mauretania outside the-three
autem partes orbis quarta pars trans Oceanum interior
moreover parts of-the-world a-fourth part across the-Ocean inner
est in meridie, quae solis ardore incognita nobis est;
is in the-south which of-the-sun by-the-heat unknown to-us is
in cuius finibus Antipodes fabulose inhabitare produntur.
in whose borders the-Antipodes fabulously to-dwell are-reported
Proxima autem Hispaniae Mauretania est, deinde Numidia,
next moreover to-Spain Mauretania is then Numidia

inde regio Carthaginensis, post quae Gaetuliam accipimus,
thence the-region Carthaginian after which Gaetulia we-take
post eam Aethiopiam, inde loca exusta solis ardoribus.
after it Ethiopia thence places burned of-the-sun by-the-heats
Sciendum sane quod quaedam provinciae primum de nomine
to-be-known certainly that certain provinces first from the-name
auctoris appellatae sunt; postea a provincia gentis
of-the-founder called were afterward from the-province of-the-nation
nomen est factum. Nam ab Italo Italia, et rursus ab Italia
the-name was made for from Italus Italy and again from Italy
Italus; et sic utimur ipsa nomina gentis, quomodo fuit
Italus and so we-use the-very names of-the-nation as was
ipsud nomen auctoris, unde derivatum est nomen provinciae.
the-very name of-the-founder whence derived is the-name of-the-province
Ex quo accidit ex uno nomine nominari et civitatem et
from which it-happens from one name to-be-named both the-city and
regionem et gentem. Provinciae autem ex causa vocabulum
the-region and the-nation provinces moreover from a-cause the-name
acceperunt. Principatus namque gentium, qui ad reges alios
received the-princedom for of-nations which to kings other
pertinebat, cum in ius suum Romani vincendo redigerent,
belonged when into right their the-Romans by-conquering brought
procul positas regiones provincias appellaverunt. Patria autem
far-off placed regions provinces they-called fatherland moreover
vocata quod communis sit omnium, qui in ea nati sunt.
called because common it-be of-all who in it born are
Terra autem significari, ut praediximus, elementum: terras
earth moreover to-be-signified as we-have-said-before the-element lands
vero singulas partes, ut Africa, Italia. Eadem et loca; nam
but single parts as Africa Italy the-same also places for
loca et terrae spatia in orbe terrarum multas in se
places and lands spaces in the-circle of-lands many in themselves

continent provincias, sicut in corpore locus est pars una,
contain provinces as in a-body a-place is a-part one
multa in se continens membra; sicut et domus, multa in
many in itself containing members as also a-house many in
se habens cubicula: sic terrae et loca dicuntur terrarum
itself having bedrooms so lands and places are-called of-the-lands
spatia, quorum partes sunt provinciae; sicut in Asia Phrygia,
the-spaces of-which the-parts are provinces as in Asia Phrygia
in Gallia Raetia, in Hispania Baetica. Nam Asia locus est,
in Gaul Raetia in Spain Baetica for Asia a-place is
provincia Asiae Phrygia, Troia regio Phrygiae, Ilium civitas
a-province of-Asia Phrygia Troy a-region of-Phrygia Ilium a-city
Troiae. Item regiones partes sunt provinciarum, quas vulgus
of-Troy likewise regions parts are of-provinces which the-crowd
conventus vocat, sicut in Phrygia Troia; sicut in Gallicia
conventus calls as in Phrygia Troy as in Gallicia
Cantabria, Asturia. A rectoribus autem regio nuncupata
Cantabria Asturia from rulers moreover region named
est, cuius partes territoria sunt. Territorium autem vocatum
is whose parts territories are territory moreover called
quasi tauritorium, tritum bubus et aratro. Antiqui enim
as-if tauritorium trodden by-oxen and the-plow the-ancients for
sulco ducto et possessionum et territoriorum limites
with-the-furrow drawn both of-possessions and of-territories the-boundaries
designabant.
marked

De insulis

VI · ISLANDS

Islands are named from lying in the sea. Isidore describes the islands of the Ocean, Britain, Thanet, Thule, the Orkneys, Ireland, Gades, the Fortunate Isles, and Taprobane, then those of the Great Sea, Cyprus, Crete, the Cyclades, Sicily, Sardinia, Corsica, and the Balearics.

Insulae dictae quod in salo sint, id est in mari. Ex
islands called because in the-brine they-be that is in the-sea of
his quoque notissimae et maximae, quas plurimi veterum
these also the-best-known and greatest which very-many of-the-ancients
sollerti studio indagaverunt, notandae sunt. Brittania Oceani
with-skillful study have-traced to-be-noted are Britain of-the-Ocean
insula interfuso mari toto orbe divisa, a vocabulo
an-island with-flowing-between sea from-the-whole world divided from the-name
suae gentis cognominata. Haec adversa Galliarum parte ad
of-its nation surnamed this opposite of-the-Gauls the-part toward
prospectum Hispaniae sita est; circuitus eius quadragies
the-view of-Spain situated is the-circuit its forty-times
octies septuaginta quinque milia; multa et magna flumina
eight-times seventy five thousand many and great rivers
in ea, fontes calidi, metallorum larga et varia copia:
in it springs hot of-metals an-abundant and varied store
gagates lapis ibi plurimus et margaritae. Tanatos insula
the-jet stone there most-abundant and pearls Thanet an-island
Oceani freto Gallico, a Brittania aestuario tenui
of-the-Ocean by-the-strait Gallic from Britain by-an-estuary thin
separata, frumentariis campis et gleba uberi. Dicta autem
separated with-grain plains and soil rich called moreover
Tanatos a morte serpentum, quos dum ipsa nesciat,
Tanatos from the-death of-serpents which though it not-know

asportata inde terra quoquo gentium vecta sit, angues ilico
carried thence earth to-whatever of-nations carried it-be snakes at-once
perimit. Thyle ultima insula Oceani inter septentrionalem
it-kills Thule the-last island of-the-Ocean between the-northern
et occidentalem plagam ultra Brittaniam, a sole nomen
and western region beyond Britain from the-sun the-name
habens, quia in ea aestivum solstitium sol facit, et nullus
having because in it the-summer solstice the-sun makes and no
ultra eam dies est. Unde et pigrum et concretum est
beyond it day is whence also sluggish and frozen is
eius mare. Orcades insulae Oceani intra Britanniam positae
its sea the-Orkneys islands of-the-Ocean within Britain placed
numero triginta tres, quarum viginti desertae sunt, tredecim
in-number thirty three of-which twenty deserted are thirteen
coluntur. Scotia idem et Hibernia proxima Brittaniae insula,
are-inhabited Scotia the-same also Hibernia nearest to-Britain an-island
spatio terrarum angustior, sed situ fecundior. Haec ab
in-the-space of-lands narrower but in-site more-fertile this from
Africo in Boream porrigitur. Cuius partes priores Hiberiam
the-southwest into the-north is-extended whose parts front Hiberia
et Cantabricum Oceanum intendunt, unde et Hibernia
and the-Cantabrian Ocean face whence also Hibernia
dicta: Scotia autem, quod ab Scotorum gentibus colitur,
called Scotia moreover because by of-the-Scots the-nations it-is-inhabited
appellata. Illic nulla anguis, avis rara, apis nulla, adeo ut
called there no snake a-bird rare a-bee none so that
advectos inde pulveres seu lapillos si quis alibi sparserit
brought thence dusts or pebbles if anyone elsewhere shall-have-scattered
inter alvaria, examina favos deserant. Gadis insula in fine
among the-hives the-swarms the-combs desert Gades an-island at the-end
Baeticae provinciae sita, quae dirimit Europam ab Africa,
of-the-Baetic province situated which separates Europe from Africa

in qua Herculis columnae visuntur, et unde Tyrrheni
in which of-Hercules the-columns are-seen and whence of-the-Tyrrhenian
maris faucibus Oceani aestus inmittitur. Est autem a
sea into-the-jaws of-the-Ocean the-tide is-let-in it-is moreover from
continenti terra centum viginti passibus divisa, quam
the-mainland land by-a-hundred twenty paces divided which
Tyrii a Rubro profecti mare occupantes [in] lingua
the-Tyrians from the-Red having-set-out sea occupying in tongue
sua Gadir, id est septam, nominaverunt, pro eo quod
their Gadir that is hedged named for that that
circumsepta sit mari. Nascitur in ea arbor similis palmae,
hedged-around it-be by-sea is-born in it a-tree like to-a-palm
cuius gummis infectum vitrum ceraunium gemmam reddit.
whose with-gum stained glass the-ceraunium gem renders
Fortunatarum insulae vocabulo suo significant omnia ferre
of-the-Fortunate the-islands by-name their signify all-things to-bear
bona, quasi felices et beatae fructuum ubertate. Sua
good as-if happy and blessed of-fruits by-the-abundance by-their
enim aptae natura pretiosarum poma silvarum parturiunt;
for fit nature of-precious the-fruits of-woods bear
fortuitis vitibus iuga collium vestiuntur; ad herbarum
with-fortuitous vines the-ridges of-hills are-clothed in of-herbs
vicem messis et holus vulgo est. Unde gentilium error
the-place harvest and vegetable commonly is whence of-the-gentiles the-error
et saecularium carmina poetarum propter soli fecunditatem
and of-secular the-songs of-poets on-account-of of-soil the-fertility
easdem esse Paradisum putaverunt. Sitae sunt autem in
the-same to-be Paradise have-thought situated are moreover in
Oceano contra laevam Mauretaniae, occiduo proximae, et
the-Ocean toward the-left of-Mauretania to-the-west nearest and
inter se interiecto mari discretae. Gorgades insulae
among themselves with-intervening sea separated the-Gorgades islands

Oceani obversae promontorio, quod vocatur Hesperu Ceras,
of-the-Ocean facing to-the-promontory which is-called Hesperu Ceras
quas incoluerunt Gorgones feminae aliti pernicitate,
which inhabited the-Gorgons women with-winged swiftness
hirsuto et aspero corpore; et ex his insulae cognominatae.
with-hairy and rough body and from these the-islands surnamed
Distant autem a continenti terra bidui navigatione.
they-are-distant moreover from the-mainland land of-two-days by-sailing
Hesperidum insulae vocatae a civitate Hesperide, quae
of-the-Hesperides the-islands called from the-city Hesperis which
fuit in fines Mauretaniae. Sunt enim ultra Gorgadas
was in the-borders of-Mauretania they-are for beyond the-Gorgades
sitae sub Athlanteum litus in intimos maris sinus; in
situated under the-Atlantic shore in the-innermost of-the-sea gulfs in
quarum hortis fingunt fabulae draconem pervigilem aurea
whose gardens feign the-fables a-dragon ever-watchful golden
mala servantem. Fertur enim ibi e mari aestuarium adeo
apples guarding it-is-said for there from the-sea an-estuary so
sinuosis lateribus tortuosum ut visentibus procul lapsus
with-winding sides twisted that to-those-seeing far-off the-glidings
angueos imitetur. Chryse et Argyre insulae in Indico Oceano
snaky it-imitates Chryse and Argyre islands in the-Indian Ocean
sitae, adeo fecundae copia metallorum ut plerique eas
situated so fertile in-abundance of-metals that most them
auream superficiem et argenteam habere prodiderint; unde
a-golden surface and silver to-have have-reported whence
et vocabula sortitae sunt. Taprobane insula Indiae subiacens
also the-names obtained have Taprobane an-island to-India lying-below
ad Eurum, ex qua Oceanus Indicus incipit, patens in
toward the-southeast from which the-Ocean Indian begins lying-open in
longitudine octingentis septuaginta quinque milibus passuum,
length eight-hundred seventy five thousands of-paces

in latitudine sescenta viginti quinque milia stadiorum.
in breadth six-hundred twenty five thousand of-stades
Scinditur amni interfluo; tota margaritis repleta et
it-is-split by-a-river flowing-through wholly with-pearls filled and
gemmis: pars eius bestiis et elephantis repleta est, partem
gems the-part its with-beasts and elephants filled is a-part
vero homines tenent. In hac insula dicunt in uno anno
but men hold in this island they-say in one year
duas esse aestates et duas hiemes, et bis floribus vernare
two to-be summers and two winters and twice with-flowers to-bloom
locum. Tiles insula Indiae, virens omni tempore folia.
the-place Tiles an-island of-India green at-every time in-leaves
Hucusque Oceani insulae. Item insulae quae Hellesponto
thus-far of-the-Ocean the-islands likewise the-islands which from-the-Hellespont
usque ad Gades in mare Magno sunt constitutae. Cypros
all-the-way to Gades in the-sea Great are placed Cyprus
insula a civitate Cypro, quae in ea est, nomen accepit;
an-island from the-city Cyprus which in it is the-name received
ipsa est et Paphos Veneri consecrata in Carpathio mari,
it is also Paphos to-Venus consecrated in the-Carpathian sea
vicina Austro, famosa quondam divitiis, et maxime aeris.
neighbor to-the-south famous once for-riches and most of-bronze
Ibi enim prima huius metalli inventio et utilitas fuit.
there for the-first of-this metal discovery and use was
Creta Graeciae pars est iungens contra Peloponnensem.
Crete of-Greece a-part is joining opposite the-Peloponnese
Haec primum a temperie caeli Macaronnesos appellata
this first from the-temperance of-the-sky Macaronnesos called
est; deinde Creta dicta a Crete quodam indigena, quem
is then Crete called from Cres a-certain native whom
aiunt unum Curetum fuisse, a quibus Iuppiter ibi
they-say one of-the-Curetes to-have-been by whom Jupiter there

absconditus est et enutritus. Est autem insula Graeciae
hidden was and nourished it-is moreover an-island of-Greece
inter ortum et occasum longissimo tractu porrecta, a
between the-rising and setting in-a-very-long tract extended from
septentrione Graeciae aestibus, ab Austro Aegyptiis undis
the-north of-Greece by-the-tides from the-south by-Egyptian waves
perfusa. Fuit autem quondam centum urbibus nobilis; unde
suffused it-was moreover once for-a-hundred cities noble whence
et Hecatompolis dicta est. Prima etiam remis et sagittis
also Hecatompolis called is first also with-oars and arrows
claruit, prima litteris iura finxit, equestres turmas prima
it-was-famous first in-letters laws fashioned cavalry squadrons first
docuit; studium musicum ab Idaeis dactylis in ea coeptum.
taught the-study musical by the-Idaean dactyls in it begun
Capris copiosa, cervos eget; lupos et vulpes aliaque ferarum
in-goats abundant stags it-lacks wolves and foxes and-other of-beasts
noxia nusquam gignit; serpens nulla ibi, nulla noctua, et
the-harmful nowhere begets a-serpent none there no owl and
si inveniatur, statim emoritur. Larga est autem vitibus et
if it-be-found at-once it-dies abundant it-is moreover in-vines and
arboribus: dyctamnos herba in Creta nascitur et alimos, quae
trees dittany the-herb in Crete is-born and alimos which
admorsa diurnam famem prohibet. Phalangos autem venenatos
bitten for-the-day hunger prevents spiders moreover poisonous
gignit et lapidem qui Idaeus dactylus dicitur. Abydos insula
it-begets and a-stone which Idaean dactyl is-called Abydos an-island
in Europa super Hellespontum posita, angusto et periculoso
in Europe above the-Hellespont placed by-a-narrow and dangerous
mari separata, et Ἄβυδος Graece dicta quod sit introitus
sea separated and Abydos in-Greek called because it-be the-entrance
Hellesponti maris, in quo Xerxes pontem ex navibus fecit,
of-the-Hellespont sea in which Xerxes a-bridge from ships made

et in Graeciam transiit. Coos insula adiacens provinciae
and into Greece crossed Cos an-island adjoining to-the-province
Atticae, in qua Hippocrates medicus natus est; quae, ut
Attic in which Hippocrates the-physician born is which as
Varro testis est, arte lanificii prima in ornamento
Varro witness is by-the-art of-wool-working first in the-adornment
feminarum inclaruit. Cyclades insulae antiquitus Graeciae
of-women became-famous the-Cyclades islands anciently of-Greece
fuerunt, quas inde Cyclades autumant dictas quod, licet
were which thence Cyclades they-assert called because although
spatiis longioribus a Delo proiectae, in orbem tamen circa
by-spaces longer from Delos cast-out into a-circle yet around
Delum sitae sint; nam orbem κύκλον Graii loquuntur.
Delos situated they-be for circle kyklon the-Greeks say
Quidam vero non quod in orbem digestae, sed propter
some but not because into a-circle arranged but on-account-of
scopulos qui circa eadem sunt, dictas putant Cyclades. Haec
the-crags which around the-same are called think Cyclades these
in Hellesponto inter Aegeum et Maleum mare constitutae
in the-Hellespont between the-Aegean and the-Malean sea placed
circumdantur etiam pelago Myrtoo. Sunt autem numero
are-surrounded also by-the-sea Myrtoan they-are moreover in-number
quinquaginta tres, tenentes a septentrione in meridiem
fifty three holding from the-north into the-south
milia quingenta, ab oriente in occasum milia ducenta.
thousands five-hundred from the-east into the-west thousands two-hundred
Metropolis earum Rhodos. Delos insula in medio Cycladum
the-metropolis of-them Rhodes Delos an-island in the-middle of-the-Cyclades
sita. Et dicta Delos fertur, quod post diluvium, quod Ogygi
situated and called Delos it-is-said because after the-flood which of-Ogyges
temporibus notatur, cum orbem multis mensibus continua
in-the-times is-noted when the-world for-many months continuous

nox inumbrasset, ante omnes terras radiis solis inluminata
night had-shadowed before all lands by-the-rays of-the-sun illuminated
est; sortitaque ex eo nomen, quod prima manifestata
it-was and-obtained from this the-name because first made-manifest
fuisset visibus; nam δῆλον Graeci manifestum dicunt. Ipsa
it-had-been to-sights for delon the-Greeks manifest call it
est et Ortygia, eo quod primum ibi visae sunt coturnices
is also Ortygia for-this that first there seen were quails
aves, quas Graeci ὄρτυγας vocant. In hac insula Latona
birds which the-Greeks ortygas call in this island Latona
enixa est Apollinem et Dianam. Delos autem et civitas
brought-forth has Apollo and Diana Delos moreover both a-city
dicitur et insula. Rhodos Cycladum prima ab oriente,
is-called and an-island Rhodes of-the-Cyclades the-first from the-east
in qua rosae capitulum dicitur esse inventum, dum ibi
in which of-the-rose a-little-head is-said to-be found while there
civitas conderetur, ex quo et urbs et insula Rhodos est
the-city was-founded from which both the-city and the-island Rhodes is
appellata. In hac urbe Solis colossus fuit aereus septuaginta
called in this city of-the-Sun a-colossus was bronze of-seventy
cubitorum altitudine; fuerunt et alii centum numero in
cubits in-height there-were also others a-hundred in-number in
eadem insula colossi minores. Tenedos una ex Cycladibus
the-same island colossi smaller Tenedos one of the-Cyclades
a septentrione sita, in qua olim civitas a Tene quodam
from the-north situated in which once a-city by Tenes a-certain
condita est. Unde nomen urbis illius vel potius insulae
founded was whence the-name of-city that or rather of-the-island
fuit; nam Tenes iste infamatus quod cum noverca sua
was for Tenes that infamous because with stepmother his
concubuisset, [et] fugiens hanc insulam vacuam cultoribus
he-had-lain and fleeing this island empty of-cultivators

obtinuit; unde et Tenedos dicta est. Sic Cicero: 'Tenen
obtained whence also Tenedos called is so Cicero Tenes
ipsum, cuius ex nomine Tenedos nominatum.' Carpathos
himself of-whose from name Tenedos named Carpathos
una ex Cycladibus a meridie posita contra Aegyptum;
one of the-Cyclades from the-south placed opposite Egypt
a qua Carpathium mare appellatum est, vocata propter
from which the-Carpathian sea called is called on-account-of
celerem fructuum maturitatem. Est enim inter Aegyptum et
the-quick of-fruits ripeness it-is for between Egypt and
Rhodum. Ex hac insula dicuntur et carpasiae naves, magnae
Rhodes from this island are-called also carpasian ships great
et spatiosae. Cytherea insula una ex Cycladibus a parte
and spacious Cythera an-island one of the-Cyclades on the-part
occidua sita, cuius Porphyris antea nomen fuit. Cytherea
western situated whose Porphyris before the-name was Cythera
autem vocata quod ibi Venus sit orta. Icaria insula una de
moreover called because there Venus has arisen Icaria an-island one of
Cycladibus, quae Icario mari nomen dedit. Haec inter
the-Cyclades which to-the-Icarian sea the-name gave this between
Samum et Myconum procurrentibus saxis inhospitalis est, et
Samos and Myconos with-projecting rocks inhospitable is and
nullis sinibus portuosa. Dicitur autem Icarum Cretensem ibi
in-no bays harbored it-is-said moreover Icarus the-Cretan there
naufragio interisse, et de exitu hominis inpositum nomen
by-shipwreck to-have-perished and from the-end of-the-man imposed the-name
loco. Naxos insula a Dionysio dicta, quasi Dionaxos,
on-the-place Naxos an-island from Dionysus called as-if Dionaxos
quod fertilitate vitium vincat ceteras. Est autem a Delo
because in-fertility of-vines it-surpasses the-others it-is moreover from Delos
decem et octo milia passuum separata, ex qua olim Iovis
ten and eight thousands of-paces separated from which once Jupiter

fertur adversus Titanas fuisse profectus. Melos ex numero
is-said against the-Titans to-have set-out Melos from the-number
Cycladum, una omnium insularum rotundissima; unde et
of-the-Cyclades one of-all islands the-roundest whence also
nuncupata. Historia dicit ex Ias⟨i⟩one natum fuisse
named history says from Iasion born to-have-been
Philomelum et Plutum, ex Philomelo Pareantum genitum,
Philomelus and Plutus from Philomelus Pareantus begotten
qui de suo nomine Paron insulam et oppidum appellavit:
who from his name Paros the-island and town called
prius autem Minoia, deinde Paros dicta. De qua Vergilius:
earlier moreover Minoia then Paros called about which Virgil

Niveamque Paron.
and-snowy Paros

Gignit enim marmor candidissimum, quod Parium dicunt.
it-begets for marble most-white which Parian they-call
Mittit et sardam lapidem marmoribus quidem praestantiorem,
it-sends also the-sard stone than-marbles indeed more-excellent
et inter gemmas vilissimum. Chios insula Syra lingua
and among gems most-cheap Chios an-island in-the-Syrian tongue
appellatur eo quod ibi mastix gignitur; Syri enim
is-called for-this that there mastic is-begotten the-Syrians for
masticem 'chio' vocant. Samos insula est in mari Aegeo,
mastic chio call Samos an-island is in the-sea Aegean
ubi nata est Iuno; ex qua fuit Sibylla Samia et Pythagoras
where born was Juno from which was the-Sibyl Samian and Pythagoras
Samius, a quo philosophiae nomen inventum est. In
the-Samian by whom of-philosophy the-name found was in
hac insula reperta prius fictilia vasa traduntur; unde et
this island found first earthen vessels are-handed-down whence also

vasa Samia appellata sunt. Sicilia a Sicano rege Sicania
vessels Samian called were Sicily from Sicanus the-king Sicania
cognominata est, deinde a Siculo Itali fratre Sicilia.
surnamed was then from Siculus of-Italus brother Sicily
Prius autem Trinacria dicta propter tria ἄκρα, id est
earlier moreover Trinacria called on-account-of the-three akra that is
promontoria: Pelorum, Pachinum et Lilybaeum. Trinacria
promontories Pelorus Pachynus and Lilybaeum Trinacria
enim Graecum est, quod Latine triquetra dicitur, quasi in
for Greek is which in-Latin three-cornered is-called as-if into
tres quadras divisa. Haec ab Italia exiguo fretu discreta,
three quarters divided this from Italy by-a-tiny strait separated
Africum mare prospectans, terris frugifera, auro abundans,
the-African sea looking-out-on in-lands fruitful in-gold abounding
cavernis tamen et fistulis penetrabilis, ventisque et sulphure
by-caverns yet and pipes penetrable and-with-winds and sulfur
plena; unde et ibi Aethnae montis extant incendia. In cuius
full whence also there of-the-Etna mountain stand-out the-fires in whose
fretu Scylla est et Charybdis, quibus navigia aut absorbuntur
strait Scylla is and Charybdis by-which ships either are-sucked-down
aut conliduntur. Fuit autem quondam patria Cyclopum, et
or are-dashed it-was moreover once the-fatherland of-the-Cyclopes and
postea nutrix tyrannorum; frugum fertilis, ac primum terris
afterward the-nurse of-tyrants in-crops fertile and first of-lands
omnibus commissis seminibus aratro proscissa. Principem
all with-committed seeds by-the-plow cut as-chief
urbium Syracusas habet, fontem Arethusam et Alpheum
of-cities Syracuse it-has the-spring Arethusa and the-Alpheus
fluvium ‘magnorum generatorem equorum’. In ea insula
river of-great the-begetter of-horses in that island
primum est inventa comoedia. Achaten lapidem ipsa primum
first was found comedy the-agate stone it first

ex Achate flumine dedit. Parturit et mare eius corallium;
from the-Achates river gave it-bears also the-sea its coral
gignit et sales Agrigentinos in igne solubiles, crepitantes in
it-begets also salts Agrigentine in fire soluble crackling in
aquis. Omnis ambitus eius clauditur stadiorum tribus milibus.
waters all the-circuit its is-enclosed of-stades by-three thousands
Sallustius autem dicit Italiae coniunctam fuisse Siciliam, sed
Sallust moreover says to-Italy joined to-have-been Sicily but
medium spatium impetu maris divisum et per angustiam
the-middle space by-the-impetus of-the-sea divided and through narrowness
scissum. Thapsus insula stadiis decem a Sicilia remota
split Thapsus an-island by-stades ten from Sicily removed
iacens et planior, unde et nuncupata. De qua Vergilius:
lying and flatter whence also named about which Virgil

Thapsumque iacentem.
and-Thapsus lying

Aeoliae insulae Siciliae appellatae ab Aeolo Hippotae filio,
the-Aeolian islands of-Sicily called from Aeolus of-Hippotes son
quem poetae finxerunt regem fuisse ventorum: sed ut Varro
whom the-poets feigned the-king to-have-been of-the-winds but as Varro
dicit, rector fuit istarum insularum, et quia ex earum
says the-ruler he-was of-these islands and because from their
nebulis et fumo futuros praedicebat flatus ventorum, ab
mists and smoke the-future he-foretold blasts of-the-winds by
inperitis visus est ventos sua potestate retinuisse. Eaedem
the-unskilled seen he-was the-winds by-his power to-have-held-back the-same
insulae et Vulcaniae vocantur, quod et ipsae sicut Aethna
islands also Vulcanian are-called because also themselves like Etna
ardeant. Sunt autem novem habentes propria nomina. Quarum
they-burn they-are moreover nine having own names of-which

primam Liparus quidam Liparen vocavit, qui eam ante Aeolum
the-first Liparus a-certain Lipara called who it before Aeolus
rexit; altera Hiera vocatur, quod sit collibus eminentissimis;
ruled the-second Hiera is-called because it-be with-hills most-prominent
reliquae vero, id est Strongyle, Didyme, Eriphusa, Hephaestia,
the-remaining but that is Strongyle Didyme Eriphusa Hephaestia
Phaenicusa, Euonymos, Tripodes, Sonores, quoniam nocte
Phoenicusa Euonymos Tripodes Sonores since by-night
ardent, Aeoliae sive Vulcaniae dicuntur. Ex his quaedam
they-burn Aeolian or Vulcanian are-called of these some
ab initio non fuerunt; postea mare editae usque
from the-beginning not were afterward by-the-sea brought-forth all-the-way
[ad] nunc permanent. Stoechades insulae Massiliensium
to now remain the-Stoechades islands of-the-Massilians
sexaginta milium spatio a continenti in fronte Narbonensis
of-sixty thousand by-a-space from the-mainland at the-front of-the-Narbonese
provinciae, qua Rhodanus fluvius in mare exit. Dictae autem
province where the-Rhone river into the-sea goes-out called moreover
Graece Στοιχάδες, quasi opere in ordinem sint positae.
in-Greek Stoichades as-if by-work into order they-be placed
Sardus Hercule procreatus cum magna multitudine a Libya
Sardus by-Hercules procreated with a-great multitude from Libya
profectus Sardiniam occupavit, et ex suo vocabulo insulae
setting-out Sardinia occupied and from his name to-the-island
nomen dedit. Haec in Africo mari facie vestigii humani,
the-name gave this in the-African sea in-the-shape of-a-footprint human
in orientem quam in occidentem latior prominet, ferme
toward the-east than toward the-west broader juts-out with-nearly
paribus lateribus quae in meridiem et septentrionem
equal sides which toward the-south and north
vertunt; ex quo ante commercium a navigantibus Graecorum
turn from which before commerce by the-sailors of-the-Greeks

Ἴχνος appellata est. Terra patet in longitudine milia centum
Ichnos called is the-land lies-open in length thousands a-hundred
quadraginta, in latitudine quadraginta. In ea neque serpens
forty in breadth forty in it neither a-serpent
gignitur neque lupus, sed solifuga tantum, animal exiguum
is-begotten nor a-wolf but the-solifuga only an-animal tiny
hominibus perniciosum. Venenum quoque ibi non nascitur,
to-men destructive poison also there not is-born
nisi herba per scriptores plurimos et poetas memorata,
except a-herb by writers very-many and poets recorded
apiastro similis, quae hominibus rictus contrahit et quasi
to-the-apiastrum like which for-men the-gapes contracts and as-if
ridentes interimit. Fontes habet Sardinia calidos, infirmis
laughing kills springs has Sardinia hot to-the-sick
medellam praebentes, furibus caecitatem, si sacramento
healing furnishing to-thieves blindness if with-an-oath
dato oculos aquis eius tetigerint. Corsicae insulae
given the-eyes with-waters its they-shall-have-touched of-the-Corsican island
exordium incolae Ligures dederunt appellantes eam ex
the-beginning the-inhabitants Ligurians gave naming it from
nomine ducis. Nam quaedam Corsa nomine Ligus mulier,
the-name of-the-leader for a-certain Corsa by-name Ligurian woman
cum taurum ex grege, quem prope litora regebat, transnatare
when a-bull from the-herd which near the-shores she-ruled to-swim-across
solitum atque per intervallum corpore aucto remeare videret,
accustomed and after an-interval with-body increased to-return she-saw
cupiens scire incognita sibi pabula, taurum a ceteris
wishing to-know unknown to-herself pastures the-bull from the-others
digredientem usque ad insulam navigio prosecuta est. Cuius
departing all-the-way to the-island in-a-ship followed has whose
regressu insulae fertilitatem cognoscentes Ligures ratibus
by-return of-the-island the-fertility learning the-Ligurians on-rafts

ibi profecti sunt, eamque nomine mulieris auctoris et
there set-out have and-it by-the-name of-the-woman the-founder and
ducis appellaverunt. Haec autem insula Graece Κύρνη dicitur,
leader called this moreover island in-Greek Kyrne is-called
a Cyrno Herculis filio habitata. De qua Vergilius:
from Cyrnus of-Hercules son inhabited about which Virgil

Cyrnea taxos.
Cyrnean yews

Dividitur autem a Sardinia viginti milium freto, cincta
it-is-divided moreover from Sardinia of-twenty thousand by-a-strait girded
Ligustici aequoris sinu ad prospectum Italiae. Est
of-the-Ligurian sea by-the-gulf toward the-view of-Italy it-is
autem multis promuntoriis angulosa, gignens laetissima
moreover with-many promontories angular begetting most-luxuriant
pabula et lapidem quem catochiten Graeci vocant. Ebosus
pastures and a-stone which catochites the-Greeks call Ebusus
insula Hispaniae dicta quod a Zanio non procul sit,
an-island of-Spain called because from Zanium not far it-be
quasi abozus; nam septuaginta stadiis ab ea distat. Cuius
as-if abozus for by-seventy stades from it it-is-distant whose
terram serpentes fugiunt. Huic contraria est Colubraria, quae
land serpents flee to-this contrary is Colubraria which
feta est anguibus. Baleares insulae Hispaniae duae sunt:
teeming is with-snakes the-Balearic islands of-Spain two are
Aphrosiades et Gymnaside, maior et minor; unde et eas
Aphrosiades and Gymnasiae greater and lesser whence also them
vulgus Maioricam et Minoricam nuncupant. In his primum
the-crowd Majorca and Minorca name in these first
insulis inventa est funda qua lapides emittuntur, unde et
islands found was the-sling by-which stones are-sent-forth whence also

Baleares dictae; βάλλειν enim Graece mittere dicitur; unde
Balearic called ballein for in-Greek to-send is-called whence
et ballista, quasi missa, et fundibalum. Vergilius:
also ballista as-if sent and fundibalum Virgil

Balearis verbera fundae.
of-the-Balearic the-blows of-the-sling

De promuntoriis

VII · PROMONTORIES

Promontories are the parts of land that jut into the sea: Sigeum, Maleum, Pelorus, Pachynus, Lilybaeum, Borion, and Calpe.

Commune est insulis ut promineant. Inde et loca earum
common it-is to-islands that they-project thence also the-places their
promuntoria dicuntur. Sic Sallustius de Sardinia: 'In
promontories are-called so Sallust about Sardinia toward
Orientem quam in Occidentem latior prominet.' Sigeum
the-East than toward the-West broader it-projects Sigeum
promuntorium Asiae, ubi Hellespontus apertius dilatatur.
a-promontory of-Asia where the-Hellespont more-openly is-widened
Dictum autem Sigeum propter Herculis taciturnitatem,
called moreover Sigeum on-account-of of-Hercules the-silence
quia prohibitus hospitio a Laumedonte Troianorum rege,
because forbidden hospitality by Laomedon of-the-Trojans king
simulavit abscessum, et inde contra Troiam cum silentio
he-feigned departure and thence against Troy with silence
venit, quod dicitur σιγή. Maleum promuntorium Graeciae;
came which is-called sige Maleum a-promontory of-Greece

quod intrat mare, et per milia quinquaginta protenditur;
which enters the-sea and through thousands fifty is-extended
ubi unda ita saeva est ut persequi navigantes videatur.
where the-wave so savage is that to-pursue those-sailing it-seems
Hoc autem promuntorium a Maleo rege Argivorum nomen
this moreover promontory from Maleus king of-the-Argives the-name
accepit. Pelorum promuntorium Siciliae respiciens Aquilonem,
received Pelorus a-promontory of-Sicily looking-toward Aquilo
secundum Sallustium dictum a gubernatore Hannibalis illic
according-to Sallust called from the-helmsman of-Hannibal there
sepulto. Pachynum promuntorium Siciliae Austrum spectans,
buried Pachynus a-promontory of-Sicily the-South facing
ab aeris crassitudine dictum; nam παχὺς est pinguis et
from of-the-air the-thickness called for pachys is fat and
crassus: Austro enim perflatur. Lilybaeum promuntorium
thick by-the-South for it-is-blown-through Lilybaeum a-promontory
Siciliae, solis occasum intendens, vocatum ab eiusdem
of-Sicily of-the-sun the-setting facing called from of-the-same
nominis civitate, quae ibi est sita. Borion promuntorium
name the-city which there is situated Borion a-promontory
Numidiae, vocatum ita quod Aquilonem intendat. Hoc
of-Numidia called so because Aquilo it-faces this
Hipponem Regium postea dictum, pro eo quod sit aequore
Hippo Regius afterward called for that that it-be by-the-sea
interruptum. Calpis Hispaniae promuntorium.
interrupted Calpe of-Spain a-promontory

De montibus ceterisque terrae vocabulis

VIII · MOUNTAINS AND OTHER WORDS FOR THE EARTH

Isidore names the famous mountains, the Caucasus, Taurus, Lebanon, Ararat, the Riphaean, Olympus, Athos, Parnassus, the Apennines, Etna, the Pyrenees, Calpe, Atlas, and the Alps, then the words for hills, valleys, plains, glades, groves, deserts, harbors, shores, and the mainland.

Montes sunt tumores terrarum altissimi, dicti quod sint
mountains are the-swellings of-the-lands highest called because they-be
eminentes. Quidam autem propriis ex causis vocati sunt,
prominent some moreover their-own from causes called are
ex quibus notandi sunt qui opinione maximi celebrantur.
of which to-be-noted are which by-opinion greatest are-celebrated
Mons Caucasus ab India usque ad Taurum porrectus,
the-mountain Caucasus from India all-the-way to the-Taurus extended
pro gentium ac linguarum varietate quoquo versum vadit,
for of-nations and of-tongues the-variety wherever turned it-goes
diversis nominibus nuncupatur. Ubi autem ad orientem
by-diverse names is-named where moreover toward the-east
in excelsiorem consurgit sublimitatem, pro nivium candore
into a-loftier rises height for of-snows the-whiteness
Caucasus nuncupatur. Nam orientali lingua 'caucasum'
Caucasus is-named for in-the-eastern tongue caucasus
significat candidum, id est nivibus densissimis candicantem.
signifies white that is with-snows densest whitening
Unde et eum Scythae, qui eidem monti iunguntur,
whence also it the-Scythians who to-the-same mountain are-joined
Croacasim vocaverunt. 'Casim' enim apud eos candor sive
Croacasis called casis for among them whiteness or
nix dicitur. Mons Taurus a plerisque idem vocatur et
snow is-called the-mountain Taurus by most the-same is-called also

Caucasus. Libanus mons Phoenicum altissimus, cuius
Caucasus Lebanon the-mountain of-the-Phoenicians highest of-which
meminerunt prophetae; dictus a ture, quia ibi colligitur.
have-made-mention the-prophets called from incense because there it-is-gathered
Cuius ea pars, quae est super eum ad orientalem plagam
of-which that part which is over it toward the-eastern region
respiciens, Antilibanus appellatur, id est contra Libanum.
looking Antilebanon is-called that is opposite Lebanon
Ararat mons Armeniae, in quo arcam historici post
Ararat a-mountain of-Armenia on which the-ark the-historians after
diluvium sedisse testantur. Unde et usque hodie
the-flood to-have-settled testify whence also all-the-way-to today
ibidem lignorum eius videntur vestigia. Acroceraunii
in-the-same-place of-the-timbers its are-seen traces the-Acroceraunian
montes propter altitudinem et fulminum iactus vocati
mountains on-account-of height and of-thunderbolts the-throwing called
sunt; Graece enim fulmen κεραυνὸς dicitur. Sunt autem inter
are in-Greek for thunderbolt keraunos is-called they-are moreover between
Armeniam et Iberiam, incipientes a portis Caspiis usque
Armenia and Iberia beginning from the-gates Caspian all-the-way
ad fontem Tigridis fluvii. Hyperborei montes Scythiae, dicti
to the-source of-the-Tigris river the-Hyperborean mountains of-Scythia called
quod supra, id est ultra, eos flat Boreas. Riphaei montes
because above that is beyond them blows Boreas the-Riphaean mountains
in capite Germaniae sunt, a perpetuo ventorum flatu
at the-head of-Germany are from the-perpetual of-winds blast
nominati; nam ῥιφὴ Graece impetus et ὁρμὴ dicitur, ἀπὸ
named for rhiphe in-Greek impetus and horme is-called from
τοῦ ῥίπτειν. Olympus mons Macedoniae nimium praecelsus,
the to-hurl Olympus a-mountain of-Macedonia exceedingly very-lofty
ita ut sub illo nubes esse dicantur. De quo Vergilius:
so that under it clouds to-be are-said about which Virgil

Nubes excessit Olympus.
the-clouds surpassed Olympus

Dictus autem Olympus quasi Ololampus, id est quasi caelum.
called moreover Olympus as-if Ololampus that is as-if heaven
Hic mons Macedoniam dividit a Thracia. Athos mons
this mountain Macedonia divides from Thrace Athos a-mountain
Macedoniae, et ipse altior nubibus, tantoque sublimis ut
of-Macedonia and itself higher than-the-clouds and-so-much lofty that
in Lemnum umbra eius pertendat, quae ab eo septuaginta
onto Lemnos the-shadow its extends which from it by-seventy
sex milibus separatur. Parnasus mons Thessaliae iuxta
six thousands is-separated Parnassus a-mountain of-Thessaly beside
Boeotiam, qui gemino vertice est erectus in caelum. Hic in
Boeotia which with-twin summit is raised into heaven this into
duo finditur iuga: Cyrrham et Nissam; unde et nuncupatus;
two is-split ridges Cyrrha and Nissa whence also named
eo quod in singulis iugis colebantur Apollo et Liber. Haec
for-this that on single ridges were-worshiped Apollo and Liber these
iuga a duobus fratribus Cithaeron et Helicon appellantur.
ridges from two brothers Cithaeron and Helicon are-called
Nam Helicon dictus ab Helicone fratre Cythaeronis. Item
for Helicon called from Helicon brother of-Cithaeron likewise
Ceraunii sunt montes Epiri, a crebris dicti fulminibus.
the-Ceraunian are mountains of-Epirus from frequent called thunderbolts
Graece enim fulmen κεραυνὸς dicitur. Appenninus mons
in-Greek for thunderbolt keraunos is-called the-Apennine mountain

appellatus quasi Alpes Poeninae, quia Hannibal veniens ad
called as-if Alps Poeninae because Hannibal coming to
Italiam easdem Alpes aperuit. Unde et Vergilius:
Italy the-same Alps opened whence also Virgil

Alpes inmittit apertas;
the-Alps he-sends-in opened

has enim Hannibal post bella Hispaniae aceto rupit;
these for Hannibal after the-wars of-Spain with-vinegar broke
Iuvenalis:
Juvenal

Et montem rupit aceto.
and the-mountain broke with-vinegar

Et inde loca ipsa, quae rupit, Appenninae Alpes vocantur.
and thence the-places themselves which he-broke the-Apennine Alps are-called
Mons Aethna ex igne et sulphure dictus; unde et
the-mountain Etna from fire and sulfur called whence also
Gehenna. Constat autem hunc ab ea parte, qua Eurus vel
Gehenna it-is-agreed moreover it from that part where Eurus or
Africus flat, habere speluncas plenas sulphuris et usque ad
Africus blows to-have caves full of-sulfur and all-the-way to
mare deductas, quae speluncae recipientes in se fluctus
the-sea led-down which caves receiving into themselves waves
ventum creant, qui agitatus ignem gignit ex sulphure; unde
wind create which stirred fire begets from sulfur whence
est quod videtur incendium. Pyrenaeus et ipse a crebris
it-is what is-seen burning the-Pyrenees also itself from frequent
fulminum ignibus nuncupatus; Graece enim ignis πῦρ vocatur.
of-thunderbolts the-fires named in-Greek for fire pyr is-called

Iste est qui inter Galliam atque Hispaniam quasi de industria
this is which between Gaul and Spain as-if on purpose
munimentum interiacet. Solurius a singularitate dicitur, quod
as-a-fortification lies-between Solurius from singleness is-called because
omnibus Hispaniae montibus solus altior videatur [sive quod
than-all of-Spain mountains alone higher it-seems or because
oriente sole ante radius eius quam ipse cernatur]. Calpes
with-rising sun before the-ray its than itself is-seen Calpe
mons in ultimis finibus Oceani, qui dirimit Europam ab
a-mountain in the-farthest borders of-the-Ocean which separates Europe from
Africa, quem Athlantis finem esse dicunt. De quo Lucanus:
Africa which of-Atlas the-end to-be they-say about which Lucan

Hesperiam Calpem, summumque implevit Athlantem.
Hesperian Calpe and-highest he-filled Atlas

Athlans frater Promethei fuit et rex Africae, a quo
Atlas brother of-Prometheus was and king of-Africa by whom
astrologiae artem prius dicunt excogitatam; ideoque dictus
of-astrology the-art first they-say thought-out and-therefore said
est sustinuisse caelum. Ob eruditionem igitur disciplinae et
he-is to-have-sustained heaven for the-erudition therefore of-the-discipline and
scientiam caeli nomen eius in montem Africae derivatum
the-knowledge of-heaven the-name his to the-mountain of-Africa derived
est, qui nunc Athlans cognominatur: qui propter altitudinem
is which now Atlas is-surnamed which on-account-of height
suam quasi caeli machinam atque astra sustentare videtur.
its as-if of-heaven the-machine and the-stars to-sustain seems
Alpes autem proprie montes Galliae sunt. De quibus Vergilius:
the-Alps moreover properly mountains of-Gaul are about which Virgil

Aerias Alpes;
airy Alps

et dicendo aerias verbum expressit a verbo. Nam Gallorum
and by-saying airy the-word he-expressed from the-word for of-the-Gauls
lingua 'alpes' montes alti vocantur. Haec sunt enim quae
in-the-tongue alpes mountains high are-called these are for which
Italiae murorum exhibent vicem. Colles sunt praeminentiora
of-Italy of-walls show the-place hills are the-more-prominent
iuga montium, quasi colla. Iuga autem montium ex eo
ridges of-mountains as-if necks ridges moreover of-mountains from this
appellata sunt quod propinquitate sui iungantur. Tumulus
called are that by-nearness their they-are-joined a-mound
est mons brevis, quasi tumens tellus. Item tumulus terra
is a-mountain short as-if swelling earth likewise tumulus earth
congesta, ubi nulla memoria est. Valles sunt humilia loca,
heaped where no memorial is valleys are low places
quasi vulsa. Hinc et convalles depressa loca terrarum inter
as-if vulsa hence also convalles depressed places of-the-lands between
montes. Campus est terrarum planities. Dictus autem campus
mountains a-plain is of-the-lands the-flatness called moreover campus
quod brevis sit pedibus, nec erectus, ut montes, sed patens
because short it-be to-feet nor erect like mountains but lying-open
et spatio suo porrectus et iacens; unde et Graece πεδίον
and by-space its extended and lying whence also in-Greek pedion
dicitur. Sumpsit autem nomen ex Graeca etymologia; χαμαὶ
it-is-called it-took moreover the-name from Greek etymology chamai

enim Graeci breve dicunt. Solum est omne quod sustinet,
for the-Greeks short say soil is all that sustains
a soliditate dictum scilicet. Unde et de mari Vergilius ait:
from solidity called namely whence also about the-sea Virgil says

Subtrahiturque solum.
and-is-withdrawn the-soil

Saltus sunt vasta et silvestria loca, ubi arbores exiliunt
glades are vast and wooded places where trees spring-out
in altum. Fauces sunt aditus angustorum locorum inter
on high gorges are the-approaches of-narrow places between
arduos montes, loca angusta et brevia, dicta a faucium
steep mountains places narrow and short called from of-throats
similitudine, quasi foces. Confrages loca in qua undique
the-likeness as-if foces confrages places in which on-all-sides
venti currunt ac sese frangunt. Ut Naevius ait:
winds run and themselves break as Naevius says

In montes ubi venti frangebant locum.
into the-mountains where winds were-breaking the-place

Scabra sunt loca situ aspera. Unde et scabies dicitur,
scabra are places in-site rough whence also scabies is-called
a corporis asperitate. Lustra obscura latibula ferarum et
from of-the-body roughness lairs dark hiding-places of-beasts and
luporum cubilia sunt. Unde et lupanaria lustra dicuntur, per
of-wolves the-dens are whence also brothels lustra are-called by
contrarium videlicet, quia parum inlustrantur. Lucus est locus
the-contrary namely because little they-are-lit a-grove is a-place
densis arboribus septus, solo lucem detrahens. Potest et
with-dense trees hedged from-the-soil light withdrawing it-can also

a conlucendo crebris luminibus dici, quae ibi propter
from shining with-frequent lights to-be-called which there on-account-of
religionem gentilium cultumque fiebant. Deserta vocata quia
the-religion of-the-gentiles and-the-worship were-made deserts called because
non seruntur et ideo quasi deseruntur; ut sunt loca
not they-are-sown and therefore as-if they-are-deserted as are the-places
silvarum et montium, contraria uberrimarum terrarum, quae
of-woods and of-mountains contrary of-the-most-fertile lands which
sunt uberrimae glebae. Devia sunt loca secreta et abdita, quasi
are most-fertile soils devia are places secret and hidden as-if
extra viam. Ipsa sunt et invia. Inde et aviaria secreta loca et
outside the-way they are also invia thence also aviaria secret places and
a via remota, aut tantum adibilia avibus. Unde est illud:
from the-way removed or only accessible to-birds whence is that

Inculta rubent aviaria bacis.
untilled redden the-haunts-of-birds with-berries

Amoena loca Varro dicta ait eo quod solum amorem
pleasant places Varro called says for-this that alone love
praestant et ad se amanda adliciant. Verrius Flaccus,
they-furnish and to themselves to-be-loved they-entice Verrius Flaccus
quod sine munere sint nec quicquam his officia, quasi
because without duty they-be nor anything to-these offices as-if
amunia, hoc est sine fructu, unde nullus fructus exsolvitur.
amunia that is without fruit whence no fruit is-paid
Inde etiam nihil praestantes inmunes vocantur. Aprica loca
thence also nothing furnishing immune are-called sunny places
quae sole gaudent, quasi ἄνευ φρίκης, id est sine
which in-the-sun rejoice as-if aneu phrikes that is without
frigore; sive quod sint aperto caelo. Opaca vero loca, quasi
cold or because they-be with-open sky shady but places as-if

operto caelo, aprico contraria. Lubricum dici locum ab
with-covered sky to-sunny contrary slippery to-be-called a-place from
eo quod ibi quis labitur; et lubricum dicitur non quod
that that there anyone slips and slippery is-called not what
labitur, sed in quo labitur. Aestiva sunt loca umbrosa,
slips but on which one-slips summer-pastures are places shady
quibus per aestatem vitant pecora solis ardorem. Statius:
in-which through the-summer avoid cattle of-the-sun the-heat Statius

Et umbrosi patuere aestiva Lycaei.
and of-shady opened the-summer-pastures of-Lycaeus

Navalia sunt loca ubi naves fabricantur. Hoc et textrinum
dockyards are places where ships are-built this also textrinum
vocatur. Statio est ubi ad tempus stant naves; portus, ubi
is-called a-roadstead is where for a-time stand ships a-harbor where
hiemant; inportunum autem, in quo nullum refugium, quasi
they-winter importunate moreover in which no refuge as-if
nullus portus. Portus autem locus est ab accessu ventorum
no harbor harbor moreover a-place is from the-approach of-winds
remotus, ubi hiberna opponere solent: et portus dictus
removed where winter-quarters to-set-against they-are-wont and portus called
a deportandis commerciis. Hunc veteres a baiolandis
from to-be-carried-away goods this the-ancients from carrying
mercibus baias vocabant, illa declinatione a baia baias, ut
wares baiae called by-that declension from baia baias as
a familia familias. Litus est terra aquae et mari vicina: et
from familia familias shore is land to-water and to-the-sea near and
dictum litus quia fluctu eliditur, vel quod aqua adluitur.
called litus because by-the-wave it-is-dashed or because by-water it-is-washed
Cicero in Topicis: 'Litus est qua fluctus eludit.' Circumluvium
Cicero in the-Topics the-shore is where the-wave plays circumluvium

locus quem aqua circumluit; adluvium consumptio riparum ex
a-place which water flows-around alluvium the-consumption of-banks by
aquis. Margo est pars cuiuslibet loci, utputa maris; unde
waters the-margin is the-part of-any place as-for-example of-the-sea whence
et nomen accepit. Maritima quasi maris intima. Ostia ab
also the-name it-received coastal-places as-if of-the-sea the-inmost the-mouths from
ingressu et exitu fluminis dicta in mari. Continens perpetua
the-entering and exit of-the-river called into the-sea the-mainland continuous
terra nec ullo mari discreta, quem Graeci ἤπειρόν vocant.
land nor by-any sea separated which the-Greeks epeiron call

De inferioribus

IX · THE LOWER REGIONS

Isidore defines caves, chasms, and the deep, then names the baratrum, Erebus, the Styx, Cocytus, Tartarus, and Gehenna, twofold of fire and of cold; the underworld is named for lying below, and lies in the middle of the earth as the heart lies in an animal.

Specus est fossa sub terra qua prospici potest;
a-cave is a-ditch under the-earth through-which to-be-looked-into it-can
σπήλαια Graece, speluncae Latine. Spiracula appellata omnia
spelaia in-Greek caves in-Latin breathing-holes called all
loca pestiferi spiritus, quae Graeci Χαρώνεια appellant vel
places of-pestiferous breath which the-Greeks Charoneia call or
Ἀχερόντεια. Etiam Varro spiraculum dicit huiuscemodi locum;
Acheronteia also Varro spiraculum calls of-this-kind a-place
et spiracula ex eo dicuntur loca qua terra spiritum
and spiracula from it are-called places where the-earth breath
edit. Hiatus praeruptio terrae profunda, quasi itus.
gives-out chasm the-breaking-off of-the-earth deep as-if itus

Proprie autem hiatus est hominis oris apertio, translata
properly moreover hiatus is of-man of-the-mouth the-opening transferred
a feris quarum aviditas oris adapertione monstratur.
from beasts of-which the-greed of-the-mouth by-the-opening is-shown
Profundum proprie quasi cuius porro sit fundus. Abusive
profundum properly as-if of-which further be the-bottom loosely
autem profundum vel sursum vel deorsum dicitur, ut:
moreover profundum either upward or downward is-said as

Maria ac terras caelumque profundum.
seas and lands and-heaven deep

Baratrum nimiae altitudinis nomen est: et dictum baratrum
baratrum of-excessive height the-name is and called baratrum
quasi vorago atra, scilicet a profunditate. Erebus inferorum
as-if an-abyss black namely from depth Erebus of-the-underworld
profunditas atque recessus. Styx ἀπὸ τοῦ στυγερός, id est a
the-depth and recess Styx from the hateful that is from
tristitia, dicta, eo quod tristes faciat vel quod tristitiam
sadness called for-this that sad it-makes or because sadness
gignat. Cocytus locus inferi, de quo Iob ita loquitur ∗∗∗
it-begets Cocytus a-place of-hell about which Job so speaks (lacuna)
Cocytus autem nomen accepit Graeca interpretatione, a
Cocytus moreover the-name received by-Greek interpretation from
luctu et gemitu. Tartarus vel quia omnia illic turbata sunt,
mourning and groaning Tartarus either because all-things there disturbed are
ἀπὸ τοῦ ταρταρίζειν, aut, quod est verius, ἀπὸ τῆς ταραχῆς, id
from the to-disturb or which is truer from the trembling that
est a tremore frigoris, quod est algere et rigere, scilicet
is from the-trembling of-cold which is to-be-cold and to-be-stiff namely
quia lucem solemque caret; quia neque illic vapores sunt, qui
because light and-sun it-lacks because neither there vapors are which

ex solis luce gignuntur, neque flatus, qui eiusdem motibus
from of-the-sun the-light are-begotten nor breath which of-the-same by-motions
incitatur, sed perpetuus stupor; ταρταρίζειν enim horrere et
is-roused but perpetual stupor tartarizein for to-shudder and
tremere apud Graecos legitur. Illic enim 'fletus et stridor
to-tremble among the-Greeks is-read there for weeping and gnashing
dentium'. Gehenna est locus ignis et sulphuris, quem appellari
of-teeth Gehenna is a-place of-fire and of-sulfur which to-be-named
putant a valle idolis consecrata, quae est iuxta murum
they-think from a-valley to-idols consecrated which is beside the-wall
Hierusalem, repleta olim cadaveribus mortuorum; ibi enim
of-Jerusalem filled once with-corpses of-the-dead there for
Hebraei filios suos inmolabant daemonibus, et appellabatur
the-Hebrews sons their sacrificed to-demons and was-named
locus ipse Gehennon. Futuri ergo supplicii locus, ubi
the-place itself Gehennon of-future therefore of-punishment the-place where
peccatores cruciandi sunt, huius loci vocabulo designatur.
sinners to-be-tortured are of-this of-place by-the-name is-designated
Duplicem autem esse Gehennam et ignis et frigoris. Inferus
twofold moreover to-be Gehenna both of-fire and of-cold the-underworld
appellatur eo quod infra sit. Sicut autem secundum
is-called for-this that below it-be as moreover according-to
corpus, si ponderis sui ordinem teneant, inferiora sunt
the-body if of-weight their the-order they-hold lower are
omnia graviora, ita secundum spiritum inferiora sunt omnia
all heavier-things so according-to the-spirit lower are all
tristiora; unde et in Graeca lingua origo nominis, quo
sadder-things whence also in the-Greek tongue the-origin of-the-name by-which
appellatur inferus, ex eo quod nihil suave habeat resonare
is-called the-underworld from this that nothing sweet it-has to-sound
perhibetur. Sicut autem cor animalis in medio est, ita
is-held as moreover the-heart of-an-animal in the-middle is so

et inferus in medio terrae esse perhibetur. Unde et in
also the-underworld in the-middle of-the-earth to-be is-held whence also in
Evangelio legimus: 'In corde terrae.' Philosophi autem dicunt
the-Gospel we-read in the-heart of-the-earth the-philosophers moreover say
quod inferi pro eo dicantur quod animae hinc ibi ferantur.
that the-inferi for that are-called that souls hence thither are-borne

De civitatibus

I · CITIES

The founders of cities are often in dispute, even Rome's. Isidore names those Scripture and the histories record: Cain's Enoch, Nimrod's Babylon, Jerusalem, and then the founders of the cities of Asia, Egypt, Greece, Italy, Gaul, Spain, and Africa, down to Cyrene.

De auctoribus conditarum urbium plerumque dissensio
about the-founders of-founded cities mostly disagreement
invenitur, adeo ut nec urbis quidem Romae origo possit
is-found so that not of-the-city even of-Rome the-origin can
diligenter agnosci. Nam Sallustius dicit: 'Urbem Romam,
carefully to-be-known for Sallust says the-city Rome
sicuti ego accepi, condere atque habitare initio
as I have-received to-found and to-inhabit at-the-beginning
Troiani et cum his Aborigines.' Alii dicunt ab Evandro,
the-Trojans and with them the-Aborigines others say by Evander
secundum quod Vergilius:
according-to what Virgil

Tunc rex Evandrus Romanae conditor arcis.
then king Evander of-the-Roman the-founder of-the-citadel

Alii a Romulo, ut:
others by Romulus as

En huius, nate, auspiciis illa inclita Roma.
behold of-his son by-auspices that famous Rome

Si igitur tantae civitatis certa ratio non apparet, non
if therefore of-so-great a-city a-sure account not appears not
mirum si in aliarum opinione dubitatur. Unde nec historicos
a-wonder if in of-others the-opinion it-is-doubted whence neither historians
nec commentatores varia dicentes imperite condemnare
nor commentators various-things saying unskillfully to-condemn
debemus, quia antiquitas ipsa creavit errorem. Sane quasdam,
we-ought because antiquity itself created error certainly certain
de quibus aut sanctae Scripturae aut historiae gentium
about which either the-holy Scriptures or the-histories of-the-nations
certam originem referunt, paucis admodum verbis retexere
a-sure origin report with-few very words to-unfold
oportet. Primus ante diluvium Cain civitatem Enoch ex
it-behooves first before the-flood Cain a-city Enoch from
nomine filii sui in Naid condidit, quam urbem sola
the-name of-son his in Nod founded which city with-alone
multitudine suae posteritatis implevit. Primus post diluvium
the-multitude of-his posterity he-filled first after the-flood
Nembroth gigans Babylonem urbem Mesopotamiae fundavit.
Nimrod the-giant Babylon the-city of-Mesopotamia founded
Hanc Semiramis regina Assyriorum ampliavit, murumque
this Semiramis queen of-the-Assyrians enlarged and-the-wall
urbis bitumine et cocto latere fecit. Vocabulum autem
of-the-city with-bitumen and baked brick made the-name moreover
sumpsit a confusione, eo quod ibi confusae sint atque
it-took from confusion for-this that there confused be and
permixtae linguae aedificantium turrem. Iudaei asserunt
mingled the-tongues of-those-building the-tower the-Jews assert
Sem, filium Noe, quem dicunt Melchisedech, primum post
Shem son of-Noah whom they-call Melchizedek first after
diluvium in Syria condidisse urbem Salem, in qua regnum
the-flood in Syria to-have-founded the-city Salem in which the-kingdom

fuit eiusdem Melchisedech. Hanc postea tenuerunt Iebusaei,
was of-the-same Melchizedek this afterward held the-Jebusites
ex quibus et sortita vocabulum est Iebus; sicque duobus
from whom also obtained the-name has Jebus and-so with-two
nominibus copulatis Iebus et Salem vocata est Hierusalem,
names coupled Jebus and Salem called it-is Jerusalem
quae postea a Salomone Hierosolyma quasi Hierosolomonia
which afterward from Solomon Hierosolyma as-if Hierosolomonia
dicta est. Haec et corrupte a poetis Solyma nuncupata est,
called is this also corruptly by the-poets Solyma named is
et postmodum ab Aelio Hadriano Aelia vocitata est. [In] Ipsa
and afterward by Aelius Hadrian Aelia called is in it
est et Sion, quae Hebraice interpretatur speculatio, eo quod
is also Sion which in-Hebrew is-interpreted watching for-this that
in sublimi constructa sit, et de longe venientia contempletur.
on high built it-be and from far coming-things it-contemplates
Hierusalem [autem] pacifica in nostro sermone transfertur.
Jerusalem moreover peaceful into our speech is-transferred
Oppida nobilia, qui vel quae constituerunt.
towns noble who or which established
Dionys[i]us, qui et Liber pater, cum Indiam victor
Dionysus who also Liber father when India as-victor
perambulasset, Nysam urbem ex suo nomine iuxta
he-had-traversed Nysa the-city from his name beside
Indum fluvium condidit, et quinquaginta milibus hominum
the-Indus river founded and with-fifty thousand of-men
adimplevit. Medus autem Aegei filius Mediam construxit;
filled Medus moreover of-Aegeus son Media built
unde et regio eius Mediae nomen sortita est. Persepolim
whence also the-region its of-Media the-name obtained has Persepolis
urbem caput Persici regni Perseus †Adeae† filius condidit
the-city the-head of-the-Persian kingdom Perseus Adeae son founded

famosissimam confertissimamque opibus; a quo et Persida
most-famous and-most-crammed with-riches from whom also Persida
dicta est. Ctesiphontem quoque Parthi apud Parthiam
called is Ctesiphon also the-Parthians in Parthia
condiderunt in aemulationem Babyloniae urbis. Susis oppidum
founded in rivalry of-Babylon the-city Susa a-town
Persidae aiunt Memnonis fratrem constituisse. Dicta autem
of-Persida they-say of-Memnon the-brother to-have-established called moreover
Susis quod inmineat Susae fluvio. Ibi est regia Cyri,
Susis because it-overhangs the-Susa river there is the-palace of-Cyrus
lapide candido et vario cum columnis aureis et lacunaribus
with-stone white and varied with columns golden and ceilings
gemmisque distincta, continens etiam simulacrum caeli
and-gems marked containing also an-image of-heaven
stellis micantibus praesignatum, et cetera humanis mentibus
with-stars glittering marked-out and other-things to-human minds
incredibilia. Bactrum oppidum Bactriani condiderunt, ex
incredible Bactrum the-town the-Bactrians founded from
proprio amne eum cognominantes, qui Bactros vocatur. Carra
their-own river it surnaming which Bactros is-called Carrhae
civitas Mesopotamiae trans Edessam condita a Parthis, ubi
a-city of-Mesopotamia beyond Edessa founded by the-Parthians where
quondam Romanus est caesus exercitus, et Crassus dux
once the-Roman was cut-down army and Crassus the-leader
captus. Edessam urbem Mesopotamiae condidit Nembroth,
taken Edessa the-city of-Mesopotamia founded Nimrod
filius Chus, postquam de Babylone migravit, in qua et
son of-Cush after from Babylon he-migrated in which also
regnavit; quae antea Arach cognominata est. Ipse construxit
he-reigned which before Arach surnamed was he-himself built
et Chalannen, quae postea verso nomine a Seleuco rege
also Chalanne which afterward with-turned name from Seleucus the-king

dicta est Seleucia. Philadelphiam urbem Arabiae condidit
called is Seleucia Philadelphia the-city of-Arabia founded
Raphaim, gens antiquissima, quam interfecerunt filii
the-Rephaim a-nation most-ancient whom killed the-sons
Loth. Seleucus, unus ex posteris Alexandri, post mortem
of-Lot Seleucus one of the-successors of-Alexander after the-death
eiusdem Alexandri occupato regno orientis urbem in Syria
of-the-same Alexander with-occupied the-kingdom of-the-east a-city in Syria
condidit, eamque ex Antiochi patris sui nomine Antiochiam
founded and-it from of-Antiochus father his the-name Antioch
nuncupavit, et Syriae caput instituit. Ipse quoque Laudiciam
named and of-Syria the-head instituted he also Laodicea
et Seleuciam, ipse Apamiam et Edessam urbem construxit.
and Seleucia he Apamea and Edessa the-city built
Damascum Syriae conditam et nuncupatam a Damasco
Damascus of-Syria founded and named from Damascus
dispensatoris Abrahae filio. Haec antea in omni Syria tenuit
of-the-steward of-Abraham the-son this before in all Syria held
principatum; necdum enim florebant ibi Antiochia, Laudicia
the-princedom not-yet for flourished there Antioch Laodicea
et Apamia, quas urbes post Alexandrum constructas esse
and Apamea which cities after Alexander built to-be
cognoscimus. Hic est Damascus quem Abraham futurum
we-know this is Damascus whom Abraham future
sibi heredem dixerat, antequam esset illi promissus
to-himself heir had-said before was to-him promised
Isaac. Gazam oppidum Palaestinae condiderunt Evei, in
Isaac Gaza a-town of-Palestine founded the-Hivites in
qua habitaverunt Cappadoces pristinis cultoribus interfectis.
which dwelt the-Cappadocians with-the-former cultivators killed
Vocata autem Gaza eo quod ibi Cambyses rex Persarum
called moreover Gaza for-this that there Cambyses king of-the-Persians

thensauros suos posuit, cum bellum Aegyptiis intulisset;
treasures his placed when war on-the-Egyptians he-had-brought
Persarum enim lingua thesaurum 'gaza' nominatur.
of-the-Persians for in-the-tongue treasure gaza is-named
Philistim urbem condiderunt Allophyli; ipsa est Ascalon,
Philistim the-city founded the-Allophyli it is Ascalon
de qua superius memoravimus, nuncupata ex nomine
about which above we-have-mentioned named from the-name
Cesloim, qui fuit nepos Cham et filius Mesraim. Dor
of-Casluhim who was grandson of-Ham and son of-Mizraim Dor
urbs fuit quondam potentissima; et versa vice Stratonis
a-city was once most-powerful and with-turned turn of-Strato
turris, postea ab Herode, rege Iudaeae, in honorem Caesaris
tower afterward by Herod king of-Judea in honor of-Caesar
Augusti Caesarea nuncupata. In qua Corneli domum Christi
Augustus Caesarea named in which of-Cornelius the-house of-Christ
vidit Ecclesia, et Philippi aediculas, et cubiculum quattuor
saw the-Church and of-Philip the-little-shrines and the-bedroom of-the-four
virginum prophetarum. Ioppe oppidum Palaestinae maritimum
virgins prophetesses Joppa a-town of-Palestine on-the-sea
idem Palaestini aedificaverunt; ubi saxum ostenditur quod
the-same Palestinians built where a-rock is-shown which
vinculorum Andromedae vestigia adhuc retinet; cuius beluae
of-the-chains of-Andromeda the-traces still retains of-whose monster
forma eminentior elephantis fuit. Iericho a Iebusaeis condita
the-form more-prominent than-elephants was Jericho by the-Jebusites founded
traditur, a quibus et nomen traxisse perhibetur.
is-handed-down from whom also the-name to-have-drawn it-is-held
Hanc subvertit Iesus. Post quam instruxit aliam, Ozam de
this overthrew Joshua after which built another Oza of
Bethel ex tribu Ephraim. Sed et haec eo tempore quo
Bethel of the-tribe of-Ephraim but also this at-that time in-which

Hierusalem obpugnabatur a Romanis, propter perfidiam
Jerusalem was-besieged by the-Romans on-account-of the-perfidy
civium capta atque destructa est; propter quam tertia
of-the-citizens taken and destroyed was on-account-of which a-third
aedificata est urbs, quae hodieque permanet. Sichem Samariae
built was a-city which still-today remains Shechem of-Samaria
urbem, quae Latine et Graece Sichima vocatur, aedificavit
the-city which in-Latin and in-Greek Sichima is-called built
Emor, appellavitque eam nomine Sichem filii sui. Ipsa
Hamor and-named it by-the-name of-Shechem son his it
est nunc Neapolis, civitas Samaritanorum. Bethel urbem
is now Neapolis the-city of-the-Samaritans Bethel the-city
Samariae condiderunt Iebusaei, quae prius vocabatur Luza;
of-Samaria founded the-Jebusites which earlier was-called Luza
sed postquam dormiens ibi Iacob vidit scalam innitentem
but after sleeping there Jacob saw a-ladder leaning
caelo et dixit, 'Vere hic domus Dei est et porta caeli,'
on-heaven and said truly here the-house of-God is and the-gate of-heaven
hac ex causa nomen locus accepit Bethel, id est domus
this from cause the-name the-place received Bethel that is the-house
Dei. Quando autem ibi Ieroboam vituli aurei fabricati
of-God when moreover there of-Jeroboam the-calves golden made
sunt, vocata est Bethaven, id est domus idoli, quae
were called it-was Bethaven that is the-house of-the-idol which
antea vocabatur domus Dei. Bethleem Iuda, civitas David,
before was-called the-house of-God Bethlehem of-Judah the-city of-David
quae mundi genuit salvatorem, a Iebusaeis condita fertur
which of-the-world begot the-savior by the-Jebusites founded is-said
et vocata primum E[u]phrata. Quando autem ibi Iacob
and called first Ephrata when moreover there Jacob
pecora sua pavit, eidem loco Bethleem nomen quodam
cattle his pastured to-the-same place Bethlehem the-name by-a-certain

vaticinio futuri inposuit, quod domus panis interpretatur,
prophecy of-the-future imposed which house of-bread is-interpreted
propter eum panem qui ibi de caelo descendit. Chebron
on-account-of that bread which there from heaven descended Hebron
civitas Iudaeae, quae quondam vocabatur Arbe, condita est
a-city of-Judea which once was-called Arbe founded was
a gigantibus ante septem annos quam ab eis Tanis urbs
by giants before seven years than by them Tanis the-city
Aegypti conderetur. Ipsa est Arbe a numero ita vocata,
of-Egypt was-founded it is Arbe from the-number so called
quod ibi tres patriarchae sepulti sunt et quartus Adam. Ipsa
because there three patriarchs buried are and the-fourth Adam it
est et Mambre vocata ex uno amico Abrahae. Samariam,
is also Mamre called from one friend of-Abraham Samaria
a qua omnis regio quae circa eam fuit nomen accepit,
from which all the-region which around it was the-name received
Sennacherib rex Assyriorum construxit vocavitque Samariam,
Sennacherib king of-the-Assyrians built and-called Samaria
id est custodiam, quia, quando Israel transtulit in Medos,
that is guard because when Israel he-transferred to the-Medes
ibi custodes constituit. Hanc obsidione captam Antiochus
there guards he-established this by-siege taken Antiochus
solo coaequavit. Quam postea Herodes a fundamentis
to-the-ground leveled which afterward Herod from the-foundations
instaurans in honorem Augusti Augustam, id est Sebastiam
restoring in honor of-Augustus Augusta that is Sebastia
Graeco sermone, vocavit. Ibi siti sunt Heliseus et Abdias
in-Greek speech called there buried are Elisha and Obadiah
Prophetae, et, quo maior inter natos mulierum non fuit,
the-Prophets and than-whom greater among the-born of-women not was
Baptista Iohannes. Tiberiadem vero Herodes alius in Iudaea
the-Baptist John Tiberias but Herod another in Judea

in nomine Tiberii Caesaris condidit. Tyrus urbs Phoenicum
in the-name of-Tiberius Caesar founded Tyre the-city of-the-Phoenicians
condita a Phoenicibus fuit. Haec est civitas ex qua aurum
founded by the-Phoenicians was this is the-city from which gold
regi Salomoni deferebatur; in qua optima purpura tinguitur:
to-king Solomon was-brought in which the-best purple is-dyed
unde et Tyria dicitur nobilis purpura. Phoenices a Rubro
whence also Tyrian is-called the-noble purple the-Phoenicians from the-Red
profecti mare Sidonem urbem opulentissimam condiderunt,
having-set-out sea Sidon the-city most-opulent founded
quam a piscium copia Sidon appellaverunt. Nam piscem
which from the-abundance of-fishes Sidon they-called for fish
Phoenices 'sidon' vocant. Ipsi etiam Tyrum in Syria, ipsi
the-Phoenicians sidon call they also Tyre in Syria they
Uticam in Africa, Hipponem, Leptim aliasque urbes in
Utica in Africa Hippo Leptis and-other cities on
ora maritima condiderunt. Ipsi Thebas in Boeotia duce
the-shore maritime founded they Thebes in Boeotia with-leader
Cadmo; ipsi postremo in ultima orbis tendentes
Cadmus they lastly to the-farthest-parts of-the-world tending
urbem in Oceano construxerunt, eamque lingua sua Gades
a-city in the-Ocean built and-it in-tongue their Gades
nominaverunt. Nam mos erat antiquus Phoenicum gentis
named for the-custom was ancient of-the-Phoenician nation
multis simul mercandi causa a domo proficisci, et
in-many together of-trading for-the-sake from home to-set-out and
cum incolarum animos conmercio rerum his ante
when of-the-inhabitants the-minds by-the-commerce of-things to-them before
incognitarum sibi conciliassent, loca quae condendis
unknown to-themselves they-had-won the-places which for-founding
urbibus idonea videbantur capere. Ex his profecta et Dido
cities suitable seemed to-take from these having-set-out also Dido

in litus Africae urbem condidit, et Carthadam nominavit;
on the-shore of-Africa a-city founded and Carthada named
quod Phoenica lingua exprimit civitatem novam; mox
which in-the-Phoenician tongue expresses city new soon
sermone verso Carthago est dicta: hanc Scipio delevit. Quae
with-speech turned Carthage it-is called this Scipio destroyed which
autem nunc est, postea a Romanis condita est. Carthago
moreover now is afterward by the-Romans founded was Carthage
autem antea Byrsa, post Tyrus dicta est, deinde Carthago.
moreover before Byrsa after Tyre called was then Carthage
Memphin civitatem Aegypti aedificavit Epaphus Iovis filius,
Memphis the-city of-Egypt built Epaphus of-Jupiter son
cum in secunda Aegypto regnaret. Haec est urbs ubi
when in the-second Egypt he-reigned this is the-city where
charta nascitur, ubi etiam optimi mathematici fuerunt. Nam
papyrus is-born where also the-best mathematicians were for
hanc urbem magicis artibus deditam pristini usque ad
this city to-magic arts given of-the-former all-the-way to
praesens tempus vestigia erroris ostendunt. Tanis metropolis
the-present time traces of-error show Tanis the-metropolis
Aegypti, ubi Pharao fuit, et Moyses cuncta signa fecit
of-Egypt where Pharaoh was and Moses all the-signs did
quae in Exodo scribuntur. Hanc construxisse perhibentur
which in Exodus are-written this to-have-built are-held
Titanes, id est gigantes, et ex nomine suo nuncupaverunt.
the-Titans that is giants and from name their named
Heliopolis urbs Aegypti, quae Latine interpretatur solis
Heliopolis a-city of-Egypt which in-Latin is-interpreted of-the-sun
civitas, sicut septuaginta interpretes arbitrantur. Aedificata
city as the-seventy translators think built
est autem a filiis Israel, in qua Petephres sacerdos
is moreover by the-sons of-Israel in which Potiphera priest

fuit, cuius meminit Ezechiel. Urbem Alexandriam condidit
was whom mentions Ezekiel the-city Alexandria founded
Alexander Magnus, cuius et nomen detinet. Hanc enim
Alexander the-Great whose also the-name it-holds this for
[idem] in terminis Africae et Aegypti constituit, et
the-same on the-borders of-Africa and of-Egypt established and
caput esse regionis Aegypti iussit. Interiacet autem inter
the-head to-be of-the-region of-Egypt ordered it-lies-between moreover between
Aegyptum et mare, quasi claustrum, inportuosa. Haec est
Egypt and the-sea as-if a-barrier harborless this is
urbs Aegypti Noo, postea versa in Alexandriam. Thebas
the-city of-Egypt No afterward turned into Alexandria Thebes
Aegyptias condidit Cadmus, quae inter Aegyptias urbes
Egyptian founded Cadmus which among Egyptian cities
numero portarum nobiliores habentur, ad quas conmercia
by-the-number of-gates more-noble are-held to which goods
Arabes undique subvehunt. Hinc regio Aegypti Thebaica
the-Arabs from-all-sides bring-up hence the-region of-Egypt Thebaic
dicta est. Thebae autem et Boeotiae sunt et Aegyptiae,
called is Thebes moreover both of-Boeotia are and Egyptian
uno tamen auctore conditae. Ptolomais et Berenice a
by-one yet founder founded Ptolemais and Berenice from
regibus Aegyptiis nominatae, a quibus et aedificatae fuerunt.
kings Egyptian named by whom also built they-were
Caesarea Cappadociae ∗∗∗ Tarsum Ciliciae Danaes proles
Caesarea of-Cappadocia (lacuna) Tarsus of-Cilicia of-Danae the-offspring
Perseus aedificavit. De qua civitate fuit Paulus Apostolus;
Perseus built of which city was Paul the-Apostle
'Natus' inquit, 'Tarso Ciliciae.' Quidam etiam locus Indiae
born he-says at-Tarsus of-Cilicia a-certain also place of-India
Tarsus vocatur. Seleuciam Isauriae condidit Seleucus, qui et
Tarsus is-called Seleucia of-Isauria founded Seleucus who also

Antiochiam. Ilus autem Apollonis filius in Phrygia Ilium
Antioch Ilus moreover of-Apollo son in Phrygia Ilium
condidit. Amazones Ephesum in Asia construxerunt. Theseus
founded the-Amazons Ephesus in Asia built Theseus
vero Smyrnam construxit, quae Homero poetae patria
but Smyrna built which to-Homer the-poet the-fatherland
extitit; et vocata Smyrna quod eius campos Ermus
was and called Smyrna because its plains the-Hermus
fluvius secat. Dioscoriam Colchorum urbem Amphitus et
river cuts Dioscurias of-the-Colchians the-city Amphitus and
Cercius aurigae Castoris et Pollucis fabricaverunt, ex
Cercius the-charioteers of-Castor and of-Pollux constructed from
eorum nomine eam cognominantes; nam Castor et Pollux
their name it surnaming for Castor and Pollux
Graece Διόσκουροι appellantur. Nicomedia a Nicomedo
in-Greek Dioskouroi are-called Nicomedia from Nicomedes
rege Bithyniae aedificata est. Bithynia condita a Phoenice,
the-king of-Bithynia built was Bithynia founded by Phoenix
quae primum Mariandyna vocabatur. Constantinopolim urbem
which first Mariandyna was-called Constantinople the-city
Thraciae Constantinus ex nomine suo instituit, solam Romae
of-Thrace Constantine from name his instituted alone to-Rome
meritis et potentia adaequatam. Hanc conditam primum a
in-merits and power equaled this founded first by
Pausania rege Spartanorum, et vocatam Byzantium, vel quod
Pausanias king of-the-Spartans and called Byzantium either because
tantum patet inter Adriaticum mare et Propontidem, vel
so-much it-lies-open between the-Adriatic sea and the-Propontis or
quod sit receptaculum terrae marisque copiis. Unde
because it-be the-receptacle of-the-land and-of-the-sea for-the-supplies whence
et eam Constantinus aptissimam condere iudicavit, ut et
also it Constantine most-apt to-found judged that both

receptaculum sibi terra marique fieret. Unde et
a-receptacle for-himself by-land and-by-sea it-might-become whence also
nunc Romani imperii sedes et totius caput est orientis,
now of-the-Roman empire the-seat and of-the-whole the-head is of-the-east
sicut et Roma occidentis. Epirum civitas Thraciae condita
as also Rome of-the-west Epirus a-city of-Thrace founded
est a Pyrrho et cognominata. Athenas in Hellade Cecrops
was by Pyrrhus and surnamed Athens in Hellas Cecrops
condidit, et ex suo nomine Cecropiam nominavit. Hanc
founded and from his name Cecropia named this
Amphictyon, idem qui in Graecia tertius post Cecropem
Amphictyon the-same who in Greece third after Cecrops
regnavit, Minervae sacravit et nomen civitati Athenas dedit;
reigned to-Minerva consecrated and the-name to-the-city Athens gave
nam Minerva Graece Ἀθήνη dicitur. Unde et Minervam
for Minerva in-Greek Athene is-called whence also Minerva
Graeci inventricem multarum artium asserunt, quia et
the-Greeks the-inventress of-many arts assert because both
litterae et artes diversorum studiorum et ipsa philosophia
letters and the-arts of-diverse studies and itself philosophy
veluti templum Athenas habuerunt. Corinthum in Achaia
as-if a-temple Athens had Corinth in Achaea
condidit Corinthus Orestis filius. Hanc Graeci Corintheam
founded Corinthus of-Orestes son this the-Greeks Corinthea
vocant, hoc est administrationem reipublicae. Thebas
call that is the-administration of-the-commonwealth Thebes
Boeotiae Cadmus veniens a Phoenicibus condidit, Thebis
of-Boeotia Cadmus coming from the-Phoenicians founded with-Thebes
Aegyptiis prius ab eo constructis. Mycenas [civitatem
Egyptian earlier by him built Mycenae a-city
Graeciae]. Lacedaemonia condita a Lacedaemone Semelae
of-Greece Lacedaemonia founded by Lacedaemon of-Semele

filio. Sparta ab Sparto filio Phoronei vocata, qui fuit filius
son Sparta from Spartus son of-Phoroneus called who was son
Inachi. Ipsam autem esse Spartam quam et Lacedaemoniam
of-Inachus it moreover to-be Sparta which also the-Lacedaemonian
civitatem, atque inde Lacedaemonios Spartanos dici.
city and thence the-Lacedaemonians Spartans to-be-called
Achaia ab Achaeo constructa: Pelops, qui apud Argos
Achaea by Achaeus built Pelops who at Argos
regnavit, Peloponnensem urbem condidit: Cecrops in insula
reigned the-Peloponnesian city founded Cecrops in the-island
Rhodo Rhodum aedificavit: Carpathus Coum: Aeos Typhonis
Rhodes Rhodes built Carpathus Cos Aeos of-Typhon
filius Paphum: Angeus Lycurgi filius Samum: Dardanus
son Paphos Angeus of-Lycurgus son Samos Dardanus
autem condidit Dardaniam: Thessalonicam Thessalus Graeci
moreover founded Dardania Thessalonica Thessalus of-Graecus
filius aedificavit, in qua etiam et regnavit. Brundisium
son built in which also also he-reigned Brundisium
construxerunt Graeci: Brundisium autem dictum [est] Graece
built the-Greeks Brundisium moreover called is in-Greek
quod brunda caput cervi dicatur: sic est enim ut et cornua
because brunda the-head of-a-stag is-called such it-is for that both horns
videantur et caput et lingua in positione ipsius civitatis.
appear and head and tongue in the-position of-the-very of-the-city
In Italia autem a Iano Ianiculum, a Saturno Saturnia
in Italy moreover from Janus the-Janiculum from Saturn Saturnia
atque Latium conditum, eo quod ibi fugiens latuisset
and Latium founded for-this that there fleeing he-had-lain-hidden
cognominatum. Ab Hercule in Campania Pompeia, qui victor
surnamed by Hercules in Campania Pompeii who as-victor
ex Hispania pompam boum duxerat. Aeneas autem post
from Spain a-procession of-oxen had-led Aeneas moreover after

excidium Troiae in eadem Italia veniens, ab uxoris nomine
the-destruction of-Troy into the-same Italy coming from of-his-wife the-name
Lavinium condidit. Ascanius vero relicto Laviniae novercae
Lavinium founded Ascanius but with-left to-Lavinia stepmother
suae regno, Albam Longam aedificavit. Alba autem vocata
his the-kingdom Alba Longa built Alba moreover called
propter colorem suis; Longa, quia longum oppidum est,
on-account-of the-color of-a-sow Longa because a-long town it-is
iuxta prolixitatem collis in quo sita est. Ex hac etiam
according-to the-length of-the-hill on which situated it-is from this also
urbe reges Albanorum appellari coeperunt. Capuam Capys
city the-kings of-the-Albans to-be-named began Capua Capys
Silvius rex Albanorum construxit, appellatam a nomine
Silvius king of-the-Albans built called from the-name
conditoris; licet sint qui dicant a capacitate eam Capuam
of-the-founder although there-be who say from capacity it Capua
dictam, quod eius terra omnem vitae fructum capiat: alii
called because its land every of-life fruit takes others
a locis campestribus in quibus sita est. Est autem
from places flat in which situated it-is it-is moreover
caput urbium Campaniae, inter tres maximas Romam
the-head of-the-cities of-Campania among the-three greatest Rome
Carthaginemque numerata; ex qua et provincia Italiae
and-Carthage numbered from which also the-province of-Italy
Campania dicta est. Romulus cum interfecto apud Albam
Campania called is Romulus when with-killed at Alba
Amulio avum Numitorem in regnum restituisset, in
Amulius his-grandfather Numitor to the-kingdom he-had-restored into
eum locum ubi nunc Roma est devenit, ibique sedes posuit,
that place where now Rome is came and-there seats placed

moenia construxit, urbemque ex nomine suo Romam vocavit.
walls built and-the-city from name his Rome called
Hanc autem antea Evander dicitur condidisse, ut est illud:
this moreover before Evander is-said to-have-founded as is that

Tunc pater Evandrus Romanae conditor arcis.
then father Evander of-the-Roman the-founder of-the-citadel

Ancus Marcius ex filia Numae Pompilii natus: hic
Ancus Marcius from the-daughter of-Numa Pompilius born this-one
urbem in exitu Tiberis condidit quae et peregrinas merces
a-city at the-exit of-the-Tiber founded which both foreign wares
exciperet et hostem moraretur, quam ab ipso situ Ostiam
might-receive and the-enemy might-delay which from the-very site Ostia
appellavit. Galli quidam intestina discordia et assiduis
he-called the-Gauls certain by-internal discord and by-constant
dissensionibus suorum permoti, sedes novas quaerentes Italiam
dissensions of-their-own moved seats new seeking to-Italy
profecti sunt, sedibusque propriis Tuscis expulsis, Mediolanum
set-out have and-from-seats own the-Tuscans expelled Milan
atque alias urbes condiderunt. Vocatum autem Mediolanum
and other cities founded called moreover Mediolanum
ab eo quod ibi sus medio lanea perhibetur inventa.
from that that there a-sow half woolly is-held found
Historiis placet a Messapo Graeco Messapiae datam
to-the-histories it-is-pleasing by Messapus the-Greek to-Messapia given
originem, versam postmodum in nomen Calabriae, quam in
the-origin turned afterward into the-name of-Calabria which in
exordio Oenotri frater Peucetius Peucetiam nominaverat.
the-beginning of-Oenotrus the-brother Peucetius Peucetia had-named
Manto Tiresiae filia post interitum Thebanorum dicitur
Manto of-Tiresias daughter after the-destruction of-the-Thebans is-said

delata in Italiam Mantuam condidisse: est autem in Venetia,
carried into Italy Mantua to-have-founded it-is moreover in Venetia
quae Gallia Cisalpina dicitur: et dicta Mantua quod manes
which Gaul Cisalpine is-called and called Mantua because the-manes
tuetur. Parthenope a Parthenope quadam virgine illic
it-guards Parthenope from Parthenope a-certain virgin there
sepulta Parthenope appellata; quod oppidum postea Augustus
buried Parthenope called which town afterward Augustus
Neapolim esse maluit. Ad promuntorium Leucaten, in quo
Neapolis to-be preferred at the-promontory Leucate on which
Actii Apollinis templum fuit, bellum Augustus contra
of-Actian Apollo the-temple was war Augustus against
Antonium gessit. Quo victo, urbem in Actiaco sinu
Antony waged with-whom conquered a-city in the-Actian gulf
condidit, quam a victoria Nicopolim appellavit. Phalantus
he-founded which from the-victory Nicopolis he-called Phalantus
Partheniorum dux Parthenios constituit. Taras Neptuni
of-the-Partheniae the-leader the-Parthenians established Taras of-Neptune
filius fuit, a quo Tarentum civitas et condita et appellata
son was by whom Tarentum the-city both founded and called
est. Cum Cyrus maritimas urbes Graeciae occuparet, et
was when Cyrus the-maritime cities of-Greece was-occupying and
Phocaeenses ab eo expugnati omnibus angustiis premerentur,
the-Phocaeans by him besieged by-all straits were-pressed
iuraverunt ut profugerent quam longissime ab imperio
they-swore that they-would-flee as far-as-possible from the-dominion
Persarum, ubi ne nomen quidem eorum audirent; atque
of-the-Persians where not the-name even their they-might-hear and
ita in ultimos Galliae sinus navibus profecti, armisque
so into the-farthest of-Gaul bays in-ships setting-out and-with-arms
se adversus Gallicam feritatem tuentes, Massiliam
themselves against Gallic ferocity protecting Massilia

condiderunt et ex nomine ducis nuncupaverunt. Hos
founded and from the-name of-the-leader named these
Varro trilingues esse ait, quod et Graece loquantur et
Varro trilingual to-be says because both in-Greek they-speak and
Latine et Gallice. Narbonam et Arelatum et Pictavis
in-Latin and in-Gallic Narbo and Arelate and Pictavi
coloni proprii condiderunt. Burdigalim appellatam ferunt
colonists own founded Burdigala called they-say
quod Burgos Gallos primum colonos habuerit, quibus
because Burgi Gauls as-first colonists it-had by-which
antea cultoribus adimpleta est. Terraconam in Hispania
before cultivators filled it-was Tarraco in Spain
Scipiones construxerunt; ideo caput est Terraconensis
the-Scipios built therefore the-head it-is of-the-Tarraconensian
provinciae. [Caesaraugusta Terraconensis Hispaniae oppidum
province Caesaraugusta of-Tarraconensian Spain a-town
a Caesare Augusto et situm et nominatum, loci
by Caesar Augustus both sited and named of-the-place
amoenitate et deliciis praestantius civitatibus Hispaniae cunctis
in-pleasantness and delights more-excellent than-the-cities of-Spain all
atque inlustrius, florens sanctorum martyrum sepulturis.]
and more-illustrious flourishing of-holy of-martyrs with-the-tombs
Afri sub Hannibale maritima Hispaniae occupantes,
the-Africans under Hannibal the-maritime-parts of-Spain occupying
Carthaginem Spartariam construxerunt, quae mox a Romanis
Carthage Spartaria built which soon by the-Romans
capta et colonia facta, nomen etiam provinciae dedit. Nunc
taken and a-colony made the-name also to-the-province gave now
autem a Gothis subversa atque in desolationem redacta est.
moreover by the-Goths overthrown and into desolation reduced is
Saguntum Graeci ex insula Zacyntho profecti in Hispania
Saguntum the-Greeks from the-island Zacynthus setting-out in Spain

condiderunt; quam Afri postea bello inpetitam deleverunt.
founded which the-Africans afterward by-war attacked destroyed
Emeritam Caesar Augustus aedificavit, postquam Lusitaniam
Emerita Caesar Augustus built after Lusitania
et quasdam Oceani insulas cepit, dans ei nomen ab eo
and certain of-the-Ocean islands he-took giving to-it the-name from that
quod ibi milites veteranos constituisset. Nam emeriti dicuntur
that there soldiers veteran he-had-settled for emeriti are-called
veterani solutique militiae. Olisipona ab Ulixe est condita et
veterans and-released from-soldiery Olisipo by Ulysses is founded and
nuncupata; quo loco, sicut historiographi dicunt, caelum a
named in-which place as the-historiographers say heaven from
terra et maria distinguuntur a terris. Hispalim Caesar Iulius
earth and the-seas are-distinguished from the-lands Hispalis Caesar Julius
condidit, quam ex suo et Romae urbis vocabulo Iuliam
founded which from his and of-Rome of-the-city name Julia
Romulam nuncupavit. Hispalis autem a situ cognominata
Romula named Hispalis moreover from the-site surnamed
est, eo quod in solo palustri suffixis in profundo palis locata
is for-this that on soil marshy with-fixed in the-deep stakes placed
sit, ne lubrico atque instabili fundamento cederet. Gades
it-be lest on-slippery and unstable foundation it-should-yield Gades
oppidum a Poenis conditum, qui etiam et Carthaginem
a-town by the-Carthaginians founded who also also Carthage
Spartariam condiderunt. Septe oppidum a montibus septem,
Spartaria founded Septem a-town from the-mountains seven
qui a similitudine Fratres vocati Gaditano inminent
which from likeness Brothers called over-the-Gaditan overhang
fretu. Tingis civitatis et Lix Antaeus auctor est, quem
strait of-Tingis the-city and Lix Antaeus the-founder is whom
Hercules fertur luctae certamine superatum interfecisse.
Hercules is-said of-wrestling in-the-contest overcome to-have-killed

Lix autem a Lixo flumine Mauretaniae nuncupata, ubi
Lix moreover from the-Lixus river of-Mauretania named where
Antaei regia fuit, et Sala, quod inmineat Salae flumini.
of-Antaeus the-palace was and Sala because it-overhangs the-Sala river
Caesaream Mauretaniae oppidum Iuba rex Maurorum in
Caesarea of-Mauretania a-town Juba king of-the-Moors in
honorem Caesaris Augusti condidit, quam ex eius nomine
honor of-Caesar Augustus founded which from his name
Caesaream appellavit; sicut Herodes aliam Caesaream in
Caesarea he-called as Herod another Caesarea in
Palaestina, quae nunc urbs est clarissima. Icosium Caesariensis
Palestine which now a-city is most-famous Icosium of-Caesarean
Mauretaniae oppidum, Hercule illuc transeunte, viginti a
Mauretania a-town with-Hercules thither crossing twenty from
comitatu eius discindentes construxerunt. Hanc ne quis
the-retinue his splitting-off built this lest anyone
inposito a se nomine privatim gloriaretur, de condentium
with-imposed by himself name privately should-boast from of-the-founders
numero urbi Icosio nomen datum. Cyrene regina fuit
the-number to-the-city Icosium the-name given Cyrene queen was
Libyae quae ex suo nomine civitatem Cyrenen condidit,
of-Libya who from her name the-city Cyrene founded
ex qua et Libyam Cyrenensem vocavit.
from which also Libya Cyrenaic she-called

De aedificiis publicis

II · PUBLIC BUILDINGS

A city is a multitude joined in fellowship; urbs is the walls, civitas the people. Isidore explains town, colony, municipality, village, fort, and canton, then the walls, towers, gates, streets, sewers, forum, curia, gymnasium, Capitol, circus, theater, labyrinth, lighthouse, baths, shops, market, and prison.

Civitas est hominum multitudo societatis vinculo adunata,
a-city is of-men a-multitude of-fellowship by-the-bond united
dicta a civibus, id est ab ipsis incolis urbis [pro eo quod
called from citizens that is from the-very inhabitants of-the-city for that that
plurimorum consciscat et contineat vitas]. Nam urbs ipsa
of-very-many it-joins and holds-together the-lives for urbs the-very
moenia sunt, civitas autem non saxa, sed habitatores vocantur.
walls are civitas moreover not stones but inhabitants are-called
Tres autem sunt societates: familiarum, urbium, gentium. Urbs
three moreover are fellowships of-families of-cities of-nations urbs
vocata ab orbe, quod antiquae civitates in orbe fiebant; vel ab
called from orbis because ancient cities in a-circle were-made or from
urbo parte aratri, quo muri designabantur; unde est illud:
urbus the-part of-the-plow by-which the-walls were-marked whence is that

Optavitque locum regno et concludere sulco.
and-he-chose a-place for-the-kingdom and to-enclose with-a-furrow

Locus enim futurae civitatis sulco designabatur, id est
the-place for of-a-future city by-a-furrow was-marked that is
aratro. Cato: 'Qui urbem,' inquit 'novam condit, tauro
by-the-plow Cato who a-city he-says new founds with-a-bull
et vacca arat; ubi araverit, murum facit; ubi
and a-cow plows where he-shall-have-plowed a-wall he-makes where

portam vult esse, aratrum substollit et portat, et portam
a-gate he-wills to-be the-plow he-lifts and carries and gate
vocat.' Ideo autem urbs aratro circumdabatur, dispari
calls therefore moreover the-city by-the-plow was-surrounded with-unequal
sexu iuvencorum, propter commixtionem familiarum, et
sex of-bullocks on-account-of the-mingling of-families and
imaginem serentis fructumque reddentis. Urbs autem
the-image of-one-sowing and-fruit of-rendering a-city moreover
aratro conditur, aratro vertitur. Unde Horatius:
with-a-plow is-founded with-a-plow is-overturned whence Horace

Inprimeretque muris
and-should-press-into the-walls
hostile aratrum.
the-hostile plow

Oppidum quidam ab oppositione murorum dixerunt; alii
town some from the-opposition of-walls have-said others
ab opibus recondendis, eo quod sit munitum; alii
from riches to-be-stored for-this that it-be fortified others
quod sibi in eo conventus habitantium opem det
because to-themselves in it the-assembly of-the-inhabitants help gives
mutuam contra hostem. Nam primum homines tamquam
mutual against the-enemy for first men as-if
nudi et inermes nec contra beluas praesidia habebant,
naked and unarmed neither against monsters defenses had
nec receptacula frigoris et caloris, nec ipsi inter se
nor shelters of-cold and of-heat nor themselves among themselves
homines ab hominibus satis erant tuti. Tandem naturali
men from men enough were safe at-last by-natural
sollertia speluncis silvestribusque tegumentis tuguria sibi
skill with-caves and-woodland coverings huts for-themselves

et casas virgultis arundinibusque contexerunt, quo esset
and cottages with-twigs and-reeds they-wove by-which might-be
vita tutior, ne his, qui nocere possent, aditus esset. Haec
life safer lest for-those who to-harm could approach should-be this
est origo oppidorum, quae quod opem darent, idcirco
is the-origin of-towns which because help they-gave for-this-reason
oppida nominata dixerunt. Oppidum autem magnitudine et
oppida named they-have-said oppidum moreover in-size and
moenibus discrepare a vico et castello et pago. Civitates
walls to-differ from a-village and fort and canton cities
autem aut coloniae, aut municipia, aut vici, aut castella, aut
moreover either colonies or municipalities or villages or forts or
pagi appellantur. Civitas proprie dicitur, quam non advenae,
cantons are-called civitas properly is-called which not newcomers
sed eodem innati solo condiderunt. Ideoque urbes a
but in-the-same born soil founded and-therefore cities by
propriis civibus conditae civitates, non coloniae nuncupantur.
own citizens founded civitates not colonies are-named
Colonia vero est quae defectu indigenarum novis cultoribus
a-colony but is which by-the-lack of-natives with-new cultivators
adimpletur. Unde et colonia a cultu agri est
is-filled whence also colony from the-cultivation of-the-field is
dicta. Municipium est quo manente statu civitatis ius
called municipality is which with-remaining the-status of-the-city a-right
aliquod minoris aut maioris officii a principe inpetrat.
some of-lesser or of-greater office from the-prince obtains
Dictum autem municipium a muniis, id est officiis, quod
called moreover municipium from munia that is offices because
tantum munia, id est tributa debita vel munera, reddant.
only duties that is tributes owed or gifts they-render
Nam liberales et famosissimae causae, et quae ex principe
for the-liberal and most-famous cases and which from the-prince

proficiscuntur, ibi non aguntur. Haec enim ad dignitatem
proceed there not are-conducted these for to the-dignity
civitatum pertinent. Vici et castella et pagi hi sunt qui
of-cities pertain villages and forts and cantons these are which
nulla dignitate civitatis ornantur, sed vulgari hominum
by-no dignity of-a-city are-adorned but by-a-common of-men
conventu incoluntur, et propter parvitatem sui maioribus
assembly are-inhabited and on-account-of the-smallness their to-greater
civitatibus adtribuuntur. Vicus autem dictus ab ipsis tantum
cities are-attributed village moreover called from the-very only
habitationibus, vel quod vias habeat tantum sine muris. Est
dwellings or because ways it-has only without walls it-is
autem sine munitione murorum; licet et vici dicantur
moreover without fortification of-walls although also villages be-called
ipsae habitationes urbis. Dictus autem vicus eo quod
the-very dwellings of-the-city called moreover vicus for-this that
sit vice civitatis, vel quod vias habeat tantum sine muris.
it-be in-place of-a-city or because ways it-has only without walls
Castrum antiqui dicebant oppidum loco altissimo situm,
castrum the-ancients called a-town in-a-place very-high situated
quasi casam altam; cuius pluralis numerus castra, diminutivum
as-if a-house high whose plural number castra the-diminutive
castellum est [sive quod castrabatur licentia inibi habitantium,
castellum is or because was-castrated the-license therein of-those-dwelling
ne passim vaga hosti pateret]. Pagi sunt apta
lest everywhere wandering to-the-enemy it-should-lie-open cantons are suitable
aedificiis loca inter agros habitantibus. Haec et conciliabula
for-buildings places among fields for-those-dwelling these also conciliabula
dicta, a conventu et societate multorum in unum. Conpita
called from the-assembly and fellowship of-many into one crossroads
sunt ubi usus est conventus fieri rusticorum; et dicta
are where custom is for-assemblies to-be-made of-rustics and called

conpita quod loca multa in agris eodem conpetant; et quo
compita because places many in the-fields to-the-same converge and where
convenitur a rusticis. Suburbana sunt circumiecta civitatis
there-is-a-gathering by rustics suburbs are surrounding of-the-city
aedificia, quasi sub urbe. Moenia sunt muri civitatis, dicta
buildings as-if under the-city ramparts are the-walls of-the-city called
ab eo quod muniant civitatem, quasi munimenta urbis, id
from that that they-fortify the-city as-if fortifications of-the-city that
est tutamenta. Munium autem dictum, quasi manu factum:
is protections munium moreover called as-if by-hand made
sic et munus. Muri a munitione dicti, quasi muniri,
so also munus walls from fortification called as-if muniri
eo quod muniant et tueantur interiora urbis. Moenia
for-this that they-fortify and protect the-inner-parts of-the-city moenia
autem duplicem habent significationem; nam interdum moenia
moreover a-double have signification for sometimes moenia
abusive dici omnia aedificia publica civitatis, ut:
loosely to-be-called all buildings public of-the-city as

Dividimus muros, et moenia pandimus urbis;
we-divide the-walls and the-ramparts we-open of-the-city

proprie autem moenia sunt tantum muri. Murus autem
properly moreover moenia are only walls the-wall moreover
turribus propugnaculisque ornatur. Turres vocatae quod teretes
with-towers and-battlements is-adorned towers called because rounded
sint et longae; teres est enim aliquid rotundum cum
they-be and long teres is for something round with
proceritate, ut columna. Nam et quamvis quadratae aut latae
height as a-column for even although square or broad
construantur, procul tamen videntibus rotundae existimantur;
they-be-built far-off yet to-those-seeing round they-are-thought

ideo quia omne cuiusque anguli simulacrum per longum
therefore because every of-each angle image through a-long
aeris spatium evanescit atque consumitur, et rotundum
of-air space vanishes and is-consumed and round
videtur. Propugnacula pinnae murorum sunt, dicta quia
seems battlements the-pinnacles of-the-walls are called because
ex his propugnatur. Promurale vero, eo quod sit pro
from these it-is-fought promurale but for-this that it-be for
munitione muri. Est enim murus proximus ante murum.
the-fortification of-the-wall it-is for a-wall nearest before the-wall
Porta dicitur qua potest vel inportari vel exportari
gate is-called through-which can either to-be-carried-in or to-be-carried-out
aliquid. Proprie autem porta aut urbis aut castrorum vocatur,
something properly moreover porta either of-a-city or of-a-camp is-called
sicut superius dictum est. Vicus, ut praedictum est, ipsae
as above said it-is vicus as said-before it-is the-very
habitationes urbis sunt; unde et vicini dicti. Viae ipsa
dwellings of-the-city are whence also neighbors called ways the-very
spatia angusta quae inter vicos sunt. Plateae perpetuae ac
spaces narrow which between the-vici are squares the-continuous and
latiores civitatum viae sunt, iuxta proprietatem linguae
broader of-cities streets are according-to the-property of-the-tongue
Graecae a latitudine nuncupatae; πλατύς enim Graeci latum
Greek from breadth named platys for the-Greeks broad
dicunt. Quintana pars plateae quinta est, qua carpentum
say quintana the-part of-the-square fifth is where a-wagon
progredi potest. Cloacae dictae quod his percolantur aquae.
to-proceed can sewers called because by-these are-strained waters
Has primum Romae fecisse Tarquinium Priscum ut,
these first at-Rome to-have-made Tarquin the-Elder that
quotiens pluviarum inundatio existeret, per eas aquae extra
whenever of-rains an-inundation should-arise through them the-waters outside

civitatem emitterentur, ne maximis perpetuisque tempestatibus
the-city might-be-sent lest by-greatest and-continuous storms
planitiem vel fundamenta urbium strages aquarum subverteret.
the-flat or the-foundations of-cities the-havoc of-waters should-overturn
Imboli, vel quia subvolumina sunt, vel quia sub his
imboli either because under-rolls they-are or because under these
ambulant. Sunt enim portici hinc inde platearum. Forus
they-walk they-are for porticoes on-this-side on-that of-the-squares the-forum
est exercendarum litium locus a fando dictus [sive a
is of-to-be-conducted lawsuits the-place from speaking called or from
Phoroneo rege, qui primus Graecis legem dedit]. Haec
Phoroneus the-king who first to-the-Greeks law gave these
loca et prorostra vocantur ideo quod ex bello Punico
places also prorostra are-called therefore because from the-war Punic
captis navibus Carthaginiensium rostra ablata sunt, et in
with-captured ships of-the-Carthaginians the-beaks removed were and in
foro Romano praefixa ut esset huius insigne victoriae.
the-forum Roman fixed that it-might-be of-this the-mark of-victory
Curia dicitur eo quod ibi cura per senatum de cunctis
the-curia is-called for-this that there care through the-senate about all-things
administretur. Praetorium, quod ibi praetor resideat ad
is-administered praetorium because there the-praetor sits for
discutiendum. Gymnasium generalis est exercitiorum locus.
discussing gymnasium general is of-exercises the-place
Tamen apud Athenas locus erat ubi discebatur philosophia
yet at Athens a-place it-was where was-learned philosophy
et sapientiae exercebatur studium; nam γυμνάσιον Graece
and of-wisdom was-exercised the-study for gymnasion in-Greek
vocatur, quod Latine exercitium dicitur, hoc est meditatio.
is-called what in-Latin exercitium is-called that is practice
Sed et balnea et loca cursorum et athletarum gymnasia
but also baths and the-places of-runners and of-athletes gymnasia

sunt, eo quod illic homines in suae artis studio
are for-this that there men in of-their-own of-art the-study
exercitentur. Capitolium Romae vocatum eo quod fuerit
are-exercised the-Capitol at-Rome called for-this that it-was
Romanae urbis et religionis caput summum. Alii aiunt, cum
of-the-Roman city and religion the-head highest others say when
Tarquinius Priscus Capitolii fundamenta Romae aperiret, in
Tarquin the-Elder of-the-Capitol the-foundations at-Rome opened in
loco fundamenti caput hominis litteris Tuscis notatum
the-place of-the-foundation the-head of-a-man with-letters Tuscan marked
invenit, et proinde Capitolium appellavit. Arces sunt partes
he-found and therefore Capitol called citadels are parts
urbis excelsae atque munitae. Nam quaecumque tutissima
of-the-city lofty and fortified for whatever safest
urbium sunt, ab arcendo hostem arces vocantur. Unde
of-cities are from keeping-off the-enemy arces are-called whence
et arcus et arca. Circum Romani dictum putant a
also arcus and arca the-Circus the-Romans called think from
circuitu equorum, eo quod ibi circum metas equi
the-circuit of-horses for-this that there around the-turning-posts horses
currant. Theatrum autem ab spectaculo nominatum, ἀπὸ
run the-theater moreover from spectacle named from
τῆς θεωρίας, quod in eo populus stans desuper atque
the contemplation because in it the-people standing from-above and
spectans ludos scenicos contemplaretur. Amphitheatrum vero
watching games scenic contemplated the-amphitheater but
vocatum quod ex duobus sit theatris conpositum. Nam
called because from two it-be theaters composed for
amphitheatrum rotundum est, theatrum vero ex medio
the-amphitheater round is the-theater but from the-middle
amphitheatrum est, semicirculi figuram habens. Labyrinthus
of-an-amphitheater is of-a-semicircle the-figure having the-labyrinth

est perplexis parietibus aedificium, qualis est apud Cretam a
is with-perplexed walls a-building such-as is in Crete by
Daedalo factus, ubi fuit Minotaurus inclusus; in quo si quis
Daedalus made where was the-Minotaur shut-in in which if anyone
introierit sine glomere lini, exitum invenire non valet.
shall-have-entered without a-ball of-linen the-exit to-find not is-able
Cuius aedificii talis est situs ut aperientibus fores tonitruum
of-which building such is the-site that to-those-opening the-doors thunder
intus terribile audiatur: descenditur centenis ultra gradibus;
within terrible is-heard one-descends by-a-hundred-each beyond steps
intus simulacra et monstrificae effigies, in partes diversas
within images and monstrous effigies into parts diverse
transitus innumeri per tenebras, et cetera ad errorem
passages innumerable through darkness and other-things for the-error
ingredientium facta, ita ut de tenebris eius ad lucem venire
of-those-entering made so that from the-darkness its to the-light to-come
inpossibile videatur. Quattuor sunt [autem] labyrinthi; primus
impossible seems four are moreover labyrinths the-first
Aegyptius, secundus Creticus, tertius in Lemno, quartus in
Egyptian the-second Cretan the-third on Lemnos the-fourth in
Italia; omnes ita constructi ut dissolvere eos nec saecula
Italy all so constructed that to-dissolve them not the-ages
quidem possint. Farum turris est maxima quam Graeci ac
even can lighthouse a-tower is very-great which the-Greeks and
Latini in commune ex ipsius rei usu farum appellaverunt,
Latins in common from of-the-thing itself the-use farum called
eo quod flammarum indicio longe videatur a navigantibus,
for-this that of-flames by-the-sign far it-is-seen by those-sailing
qualem Ptolomaeus iuxta Alexandriam construxisse octingentis
such-as Ptolemy near Alexandria to-have-built for-eight-hundred
talentis traditur. Usus eius est nocturno navium cursu
talents is-handed-down the-use its is in-the-nocturnal of-ships course

ignes ostendere, ad pronuntianda vada portusque introitus,
fires to-show for proclaiming shoals and-of-harbors the-entrances
ne decepti tenebris navigantes in scopulos incidant; nam
lest deceived by-darkness the-sailors onto crags fall for
Alexandria fallacibus vadis insidiosos accessus habet. Hinc
Alexandria with-deceptive shoals treacherous approaches has hence
igitur in portubus machinas ad praelucendi ministerium
therefore in harbors machines for of-shining-before the-service
fabricatas pharos dicunt. Nam φῶς lux est, ὁρος visio dicitur.
built pharos they-call for phos light is horos sight is-called
Unde et Lucifer Graece Φωσφόρος appellatur. Cocleae sunt
whence also Lucifer in-Greek Phosphoros is-called cochleae are
altae et rotundae turres; et dictae cocleae quasi cycleae,
high and round towers and called cochleae as-if cycleae
quod in eis tamquam per circulum orbemque conscendatur;
because in them as-if through a-circle and-round one-climbs
qualis est Romae centum septuaginta quinque pedibus.
such-as is at-Rome of-a-hundred seventy five feet
Thermas appellatas quod caleant; Graeci enim θερμὸν
thermae called because they-are-hot the-Greeks for thermon
calorem vocant. Balneis vero nomen inditum a levatione
heat call to-baths but the-name given from the-lifting
maeroris; nam Graeci βαλανεῖον dixerunt, quod anxietatem
of-grief for the-Greeks balaneion called because the-anxiety
animi tollat. Haec et gymnasia dicuntur, quia ibi athletae
of-mind it-takes-away these also gymnasia are-called because there athletes
uncto corpore et perfricato manibus exercitantur; nam
with-anointed body and rubbed by-hands are-exercised for
γυμνάσιον Graece, Latine exercitium dicitur. Apodyterium,
gymnasion in-Greek in-Latin exercitium is-called the-apodyterium
ubi lavantium vestimenta ponuntur, ab exuendo scilicet
where of-those-washing the-garments are-placed from undressing namely

dictum; ἀποδύειν enim Graece exuere dicitur. Propina
called apodyein for in-Greek to-undress is-called propina
Graecus sermo est, quae apud nos corrupte popina dicitur:
a-Greek word is which among us corruptly popina is-called
est autem locus iuxta balnea publica, ubi post lavacrum
it-is moreover a-place near the-baths public where after the-bath
a fame et siti reficiuntur. Unde et propina et propinare
from hunger and thirst they-are-refreshed whence also propina and propinare
dicitur. Πεῖνα enim Graece famem significat, eo quod hic
is-said peina for in-Greek hunger signifies for-this that this
locus famem tollat. Tabernae olim vocabantur aediculae
place hunger takes-away tabernae once were-called the-little-buildings
plebeiorum parvae et simplices in vicis, axibus et tabulis
of-the-plebeians small and simple in streets with-planks and boards
clausae; unde et tabernariae, quod ibi solebant consedere.
closed whence also tabernariae because there they-were-wont to-sit
Dictae autem tabernae quod ex tabulis lignisque erant
called moreover tabernae because from boards and-timbers they-were
constructae, quae nunc et si non speciem, nomen tamen
constructed which now even if not the-appearance the-name yet
pristinum retinent. Macellum dictum quod ibi mactentur
former retain macellum called because there are-slaughtered
pecora quae mercantibus venundantur. Mercatum autem a
cattle which to-merchants are-sold the-market moreover from
conmercio nominatum. Ibi enim res vendere vel emere
commerce named there for things to-sell or to-buy
solitum est; sicut et teloneum dicitur ubi merces navium et
customary it-is as also teloneum is-called where the-wares of-ships and
nautarum emolumenta redduntur. Ibi enim vectigalis exactor
of-sailors the-profits are-rendered there for of-the-tax the-exactor
sedet pretium rebus inpositurus, et voce a mercatoribus
sits a-price on-things about-to-impose and with-voice from the-merchants

flagitans. Carcer est a quo prohibemur exire, et dictus
demanding prison is from which we-are-prevented to-go-out and called
carcer a coercendo. [Hinc Fronto: 'Et pergraecari potius
carcer from coercing hence Fronto and to-play-the-Greek rather
amoenis locis quam coerceri carcere viderentur.']
in-pleasant places than to-be-confined in-prison they-should-seem

De habitaculis

III · DWELLINGS

Isidore explains the words for dwellings: house, aula, atrium, palace, thalamus, the dining room and triclinium, the cell and bedroom, the inn and lodging, balconies, the hypogeum, the solarium, and the hospices first founded by Hyrcanus.

Habitatio ab habendo vocata, ut 'habitare casas'. Domus
dwelling from having called as to-inhabit cottages house
ex Graeca appellatione vocata; nam δώματα Graeci tecta
from Greek appellation called for domata the-Greeks roofs
dicunt. Est autem domus unius familiae habitatio, sicut
call it-is moreover a-house of-one family the-dwelling as
urbs unius populi, sicut orbis domicilium totius generis
the-city of-one people as the-world the-domicile of-the-whole race
humani. Omne aedificium antiqui aedem appellaverunt. Alii
human every building the-ancients aedes called others
aedem ab edendo quiddam sumpsisse nomen existimant,
aedes from eating something to-have-taken the-name think
dantes exemplum de Plauto:
giving an-example from Plautus

Si vocassem vos in aedem ad prandium.
if I-had-called you into the-house to lunch

Hinc et aedificium, eo quod fuerit prius ad edendum factum.
hence also aedificium for-this that it-was earlier for eating made
Aula domus est regia, sive spatiosum habitaculum porticibus
aula a-house is royal or a-spacious dwelling by-porticoes
quattuor conclusum. Atrium magna aedes est, sive amplior et
four enclosed atrium a-great hall is or an-ampler and
spatiosa domus; et dictum atrium [eo] quod addantur ei
spacious house and called atrium for-this that are-added to-it
tres porticus extrinsecus. Alii atrium quasi ab igne et lychno
three porticoes from-outside others atrium as-if from fire and lamp
atrum dixerunt; atrum enim fit ex fumo. Palatium a
black have-called black for becomes from smoke palace from
Pallante principe Arcadum dictum, in cuius honore Arcades
Pallas the-prince of-the-Arcadians called in whose honor the-Arcadians
Pallanteum oppidum construxerunt, et regiam in ipsius
Pallanteum the-town built and the-royal-house in his
nomine conditam Palatium vocaverunt. Thalamum hac ex
name founded Palatium called thalamus this from
causa vocatum ferunt. Cum enim raptae fuissent a Romanis
cause named they-say when for seized had-been by the-Romans
Sabinae, ex quibus cum una ante alias specie nobilis cum
the-Sabine-women of whom when one before others in-beauty noble with
magna omnium admiratione raperetur, Thalamoni duci
great of-all admiration was-being-seized to-Thalamo the-leader
eam oraculo responsum est dari; et quoniam hae nuptiae
her by-oracle answered it-was to-be-given and since these nuptials
feliciter cesserant, institutum est ut in omnibus nuptiis
happily had-turned-out instituted it-was that in all nuptials

thalami nomen iteretur. Aegyptii quoque lingua sua loca, in
of-thalamus the-name be-repeated the-Egyptians also in-tongue their the-places in
quibus nubentes succedunt et cubant, 'thalamum' nominant.
which those-marrying go-in and lie thalamus name
Coenaculum dictum a communione vescendi; unde et
cenaculum called from the-communion of-eating whence also
coenobium congregatio. Antiqui enim publice et in commune
coenobium a-congregation the-ancients for publicly and in common
vescebant, nec ullius convivium singulare erat, ne in occulto
ate nor of-anyone a-feast single was lest in secret
deliciae luxuriam gignerent. Triclinium est coenaculum, a
delights luxury should-beget triclinium is a-dining-room from
tribus lectulis discumbentium dictum. Apud veteres enim
the-three little-couches of-those-reclining called among the-ancients for
in loco, ubi convivii apparatus exponebatur, tres lectuli
in the-place where of-the-feast the-equipment was-set-out three little-couches
strati erant, in quibus discumbentes epulabantur. Κλίνη enim
spread were on which reclining they-feasted kline for
Graece lectus vel adcubitus dicitur, ex quo confectum est
in-Greek couch or reclining is-called from which made it-is
ut triclinium diceretur. Cella dicta quod nos occultat et
that triclinium it-should-be-called cella called because us it-hides and
celat. Cubiculum vero, quod eo cubamus ibique dormientes
conceals cubiculum but because in-it we-lie and-there sleeping
requiescimus. Cubile autem cubandi locus est. Secessus, quod
we-rest cubile moreover of-lying the-place is secessus because
sit locus secretus, id est sine accessu. Diversorium dictum
it-be a-place secret that is without approach diversorium called
eo quod ex diversis viis ibi conveniatur. Hospitium sermo
for-this that from diverse ways there there-is-a-gathering hospitium a-word
Graecus est, ubi quis ad tempus hospitali iure inhabitat, et
Greek is where anyone for a-time by-hospitable right dwells and

iterum inde transiens migrat. Inde et metatum, quia mutatur.
again thence passing migrates thence also metatum because it-is-changed
Unde et legitur: 'castra metati sunt,' pro mutaverunt; non
whence also is-read the-camp measured-out they-have for they-changed not
enim illic permanet exercitus, sed [per]transit. Moenius collega
for there remains the-army but passes-through Maenius colleague
Crassi in foro proiecit materias, ut essent loca in
of-Crassus in the-forum projected timbers that there-might-be places on
quibus spectantes insisterent, quae ex nomine eius Moeniana
which spectators might-stand which from the-name his Maeniana
appellata sunt. Haec et solaria, quia patent soli.
called are these also solaria because they-lie-open to-the-sun
Post haec alii lapide, alii materia aedificavere porticibus
after these some with-stone others with-timber built to-porticoes
moeniana, et foribus et domibus adiecerunt. Tabulata olim
the-maeniana and to-doors and to-houses added tabulata once
ligneae domus fiebant. Inde nomen permanet tabulatorum.
wooden houses were-made thence the-name remains of-tabulata
Hypogeum est constructum sub terris aedificium, quod nos
hypogeum is constructed under the-earth a-building which we
antrum vel speluncam dicimus. Solarium, quod soli et
cave or grotto call solarium because to-the-sun and
auris pateat, qualis fuit locus in quo David Bethsabee
to-the-breezes it-lies-open such-as was the-place in which David Bathsheba
lavantem aspexit et adamavit. Cum Hierosolymam Antiochus
bathing saw and loved when Jerusalem Antiochus
obsideret, Hyrcanus princeps Iudaeorum reserato David
was-besieging Hyrcanus prince of-the-Jews with-opened of-David
sepulcro, tria milia auri talenta inde abstraxit, ex quibus
tomb three thousand of-gold talents thence drew-out of which
trecenta Antiocho dedit, ut obsidionem relinqueret; atque
three-hundred to-Antiochus he-gave that the-siege he-might-leave and

ut facti invidiam demeret, fertur ex reliqua pecunia
that of-the-deed the-odium he-might-remove he-is-said from the-remaining money
instituisse primus xenodochia, quibus adventum susciperet
to-have-instituted first hospices in-which the-arrival he-might-receive
pauperum et peregrinorum; unde et vocabulum sumpsit.
of-the-poor and of-pilgrims whence also the-name it-took
Nam ex Graeco in Latinum ξενοδοχεῖον peregrinorum
for from Greek into Latin xenodocheion of-pilgrims
susceptio nuncupatur. Ubi autem aegrotantes de plateis
the-reception is-named where moreover the-sick from the-streets
colliguntur, νοσοκομεῖον Graece dicitur; in quo consumpta
are-gathered nosokomeion in-Greek is-called in which consumed
languoribus atque inediis miserorum membra foventur.
by-languors and fastings of-the-wretched the-limbs are-cherished

De aedificiis sacris

IV · SACRED BUILDINGS

Sacred places are those consecrated to divine worship. Isidore explains the holy of holies, the propitiatory, the oracle, the oratory, the monastery and cenobium, the temple, the fane, the delubra and the font of baptism, the basilica, the martyrium, the altar, the pulpit, the tribunal, and the lectern.

Sacra sunt loca divinis cultibus instituta, utpote ea in
sacred are places to-divine worships instituted as those in
quibus altaria litantibus de more pontificibus consecrantur.
which altars by-sacrificing by custom pontiffs are-consecrated
Sancta iuxta veteres exteriora templi sunt. Sancta
sancta according-to the-ancients the-outer-parts of-the-temple are the-Holy
autem sanctorum locus templi secretior, ad quem nulli
moreover of-holies the-place of-the-temple more-secret to which to-no-one

erat accessus nisi tantum sacerdotis. Dicta autem Sancta
was approach except only of-the-priest called moreover the-Holy
sanctorum quia exteriori oraculo sanctiora sunt, vel
of-holies because than-the-outer oracle holier they-are or
quia sanctorum conparatione sanctiora sunt; sicut Cantica
because of-the-holy-things in-comparison holier they-are as the-Song
canticorum, quia cantica universa praecellunt. Sanctum autem
of-songs because songs all they-excel sanctum moreover
a sanguine hostiae nuncupatum; nihil enim sanctum
from the-blood of-the-victim named nothing for holy
apud veteres dicebatur nisi quod hostiae sanguine esset
among the-ancients was-called except what of-the-victim with-blood had-been
consecratum aut consparsum. Item sanctum, quod extat esse
consecrated or sprinkled likewise sanctum which stands to-be
sancitum. Sancire est autem confirmare et inrogatione poenae
sanctioned sancire is moreover to-confirm and by-the-imposition of-penalty
ab iniuria defendere; sic et leges sanctae et muri sancti
from injury to-defend so also laws holy and walls holy
esse dicuntur. Propitiatorium [quasi propitiationis oratorium;
to-be are-said propitiatory as-if of-propitiation an-oratory
propitiatio enim placatio est]. Oracula dicta eo quod
propitiation for placation is oracles called for-this that
inde responsa redduntur; et oracula ab ore. Penetralia
thence answers are-rendered and oracula from the-mouth penetralia
secreta sunt oraculorum; et penetralia dicta sunt ab eo
the-secret-parts are of-oracles and penetralia called are from that
quod est penitus, hoc est pene intus. Oratorium orationi
which is penitus that is almost within oratory to-prayer
tantum est consecratum, in quo nemo aliquid agere debet nisi
only is consecrated in which no-one anything to-do ought except
ad quod est factum; unde et nomen accepit. Monasterium
for which it-is made whence also the-name it-received monastery

unius monachi habitatio est. Μόνος enim apud Graecos
of-one monk the-dwelling is monos for among the-Greeks
solus, στηριον statio; id est solitarii habitatio. Coenobium
alone sterion station that is of-a-solitary the-dwelling coenobium
ex Graeco et Latino videtur esse conpositum. Est enim
from Greek and Latin seems to-be compounded it-is for
habitaculum plurimorum in commune viventium; κοινὸν enim
the-habitation of-very-many in common living koinon for
Graece commune dicitur. Templi nomen generale; pro locis
in-Greek common is-called of-temple the-name general for places
enim quibuscumque magnis antiqui templa dicebant: et
for whatever great the-ancients temples called and
templa dicta quasi tecta ampla. Sed et locus designatus ad
templa called as-if roofs ample but also the-place marked-out toward
orientem a contemplatione templum dicebatur. Cuius partes
the-east from contemplation templum was-called whose parts
quattuor erant: antica ad ortum, postica ad occasum,
four were the-front toward the-rising the-rear toward the-setting
sinistra ad septentrionem, dextra ad meridiem spectans.
the-left toward the-north the-right toward the-south looking
Unde et quando templum construebant, orientem spectabant
whence also when a-temple they-built the-east they-looked-to
aequinoctialem, ita ut lineae ab ortu ad occidentem
equinoctial so that the-lines from the-rising to the-west
missae fierent partes caeli dextra sinistra aequales; ut
sent might-become the-parts of-heaven right left equal that
qui consuleret atque precaretur rectum aspiceret orientem.
who should-consult and pray straight might-look-at the-east
Fana dicta a Faunis, uibus templa error gentilium
fana called from Fauns to-whom temples the-error of-the-gentiles
construebat unde consulentes daemonum responsa audirent.
built whence consulting of-demons the-answers they-might-hear

Delubra veteres dicebant templa fontes habentia, quibus ante
delubra the-ancients called temples springs having in-which before
ingressum diluebantur; et appellari delubra a diluendo.
entering they-were-washed and to-be-called delubra from washing
Ipsa sunt nunc aedes cum sacris fontibus, in quibus fideles
they are now houses with sacred springs in which the-faithful
regenerati purificantur: et bene quodam praesagio delubra
regenerated are-purified and well by-a-certain presage delubra
sunt appellata; sunt enim in ablutionem peccatorum. Fons
are called they-are for for the-washing-away of-sins the-font
autem in delubris locus regeneratorum est, in quo septem
moreover in delubra the-place of-the-regenerated is in which seven
gradus in Spiritus sancti mysterio formantur; tres in descensu
steps in of-the-Spirit holy the-mystery are-formed three in descent
et tres in ascensu: septimus vero is est qui et quartus,
and three in ascent the-seventh but that is which also the-fourth
id est similis Filio hominis, extinguens fornacem ignis,
that is like to-the-Son of-man extinguishing the-furnace of-fire
stabilimentum pedum, fundamentum aquae; in quo plenitudo
the-stability of-feet the-foundation of-water in which the-fullness
divinitatis habitat corporaliter. Basilicae prius vocabantur regum
of-divinity dwells bodily basilicas earlier were-called of-kings
habitacula, unde et nomen habent; nam βασιλεὺς rex et
the-dwellings whence also the-name they-have for basileus king and
basilicae regiae habitationes. Nunc autem ideo divina templa
basilicae royal dwellings now moreover therefore divine temples
basilicae nominantur, quia ibi regi omnium Deo cultus
basilicas are-named because there to-the-king of-all God worship
et sacrificia offeruntur. Martyrium locus martyrum Graeca
and sacrifices are-offered martyrium the-place of-martyrs by-Greek
derivatione, eo quod in memoria martyris sit constructum,
derivation for-this that in the-memory of-a-martyr it-be built

vel quod sepulchra sanctorum ibi sint martyrum. Aram
or because the-tombs of-holy there be of-martyrs altar
quidam vocatam dixerunt quod ibi incensae victimae ardeant.
some called have-said because there kindled victims burn
Alii aras dicunt a precationibus, id est quas Graeci ἀρὰς
others altars say from prayers that is which the-Greeks aras
dicunt; unde contra inprecatio κατάρα dicitur. Alii volunt
call whence on-the-contrary imprecation katara is-called others will
ab altitudine aras, sed male. Altare autem ab altitudine
from height altars but wrongly altare moreover from height
constat esse nominatum, quasi alta ara. Pulpitum, quod
it-is-agreed to-be named as-if high altar pulpit because
in eo lector vel psalmista positus in publico conspici a
on it the-reader or psalmist placed in public to-be-seen by
populo possit, quo liberius audiatur. Tribunal, eo
the-people may-be-able by-which more-freely he-may-be-heard tribunal for-this
quod inde a sacerdote tribuantur praecepta vivendi. Est
that thence by the-priest are-assigned precepts of-living it-is
enim locus in sublimi constitutus, unde universi exaudire
for a-place on high established whence all to-hear
possint. Alias tribunal a tribu denominatum, quod ad
may-be-able otherwise tribunal from tribe named because to
illud tribus convocetur. Analogium dictum quod sermo inde
it the-tribe is-convoked analogium called because the-word thence
praedicetur; nam λόγος Graece sermo dicitur; quod et ipsud
is-preached for logos in-Greek word is-called which also itself
altius situm est [ut in eo lector vel psalmista positus in
higher situated is that on it the-reader or psalmist placed in
publico conspici a populo possit, quo liberius audiatur].
public to-be-seen by the-people may-be-able by-which more-freely he-may-be-heard

De repositoriis

V · STOREHOUSES

The sacristy, the treasury of gifts, the aerarium, the armory, the library, the pantry and the cellar, and the granary are each named from what they hold.

Sacrarium proprie est locus templi in quo sacra
sacrarium properly is the-place of-the-temple in which sacred-things
reponuntur; sicut donarium est in quo conlocantur oblata;
are-stored as donarium is in which are-placed the-offerings
sicut lectisternia dicuntur ubi homines sedere consueverunt.
as lectisternia are-called where men to-sit have-been-accustomed
Ab inferendis igitur et deportandis sacris sacrarium
from to-be-brought-in therefore and to-be-carried-away sacred-things sacrarium
nuncupatur. Donaria vero, eo quod ibi dona reponantur
is-named donaria but for-this that there gifts are-stored
quae in templis offerre consueverunt. Aerarium vocatum
which in temples to-offer they-have-been-accustomed aerarium called
quia prius aes signatum ibi recondebatur. Hoc enim olim
because earlier bronze stamped there was-stored this for once
in usu erat auro argentoque nondum signato: ex quorum
in use was with-gold and-silver not-yet stamped from whose
metallis quamvis postea facta fuisset pecunia, nomen tamen
metals although afterward made had-been money the-name yet
aerarii permansit ab eo metallo unde pecunia [nomen]
of-aerarium remained from that metal whence money the-name
initium sumpsit. Armarium locus est ubi quarumcumque
the-beginning took armarium a-place is where of-whatever

artium instrumenta ponuntur. Armamentarium vero, ubi
arts the-instruments are-placed armamentarium but where
tantum tela armorum. Unde Iuvenalis:
only the-weapons of-arms whence Juvenal

Quidquid habet telorum armamentaria caeli.
whatever has of-weapons the-armories of-heaven

Dicta autem utraque ab armis, id est brachiis, quibus
called moreover both from arms that is arms by-which
exercentur. Bibliotheca est locus ubi reponuntur libri; βίβλος
they-are-exercised library is the-place where are-stored books biblos
enim Graece liber, θήκη repostorium dicitur. Promtuarium
for in-Greek book theke repository is-called promptuarium
dictum eo quod inde necessaria victui promuntur, hoc
called for-this that thence necessary-things for-food are-brought-out that
est proferuntur. Cellarium, quod in eo colligantur ministeria
is are-produced cellarium because in it are-gathered the-services
mensarum, vel quae necessaria victui supersunt. Inter
of-tables or which necessary for-food are-left-over between
promtuarium autem et cellarium hoc interest quod cellarium
promptuarium moreover and cellarium this differs that the-cellarium
est paucorum dierum, promtuarium vero temporis longi est.
is of-few days the-promptuarium but of-time long is
Apotheca autem vel horrea a Graeco, verbum e verbo
apotheca moreover or granaries from the-Greek word from word
repostoria vel reconditoria dici possunt, eo quod in his
repositories or storehouses to-be-called can for-this that in these
homines elaboratas fruges reponunt. Unde et enthecam Graeco
men worked-up crops store whence also entheca by-a-Greek
nomine repositam rei copiosam substantiam appellamus.
name stored of-a-thing abundant substance we-call

De operariis

VI · WORKSHOPS

The workshop, the ergastulum, the women's quarters, and the mill are named, with the oven, the wine press, and the forum and its several meanings.

Ergasterium locus est ubi opus aliquod fit. Graeco enim
ergasterium a-place is where work some is-done in-Greek for
sermone ἔργα opera, στηριον statio; id est operarii statio.
speech erga works sterion station that is of-the-worker the-station
Ergastula quoque et ipsa a Graeco vocabulo nuncupantur,
ergastula also and themselves from a-Greek word are-named
ubi deputantur noxii ad aliquod opus faciendum; ut solent
where are-assigned the-guilty to some work to-be-done as are-wont
gladiatores et exules, qui marmora secant et tamen vinculorum
gladiators and exiles who marbles cut and yet of-chains
custodiis alligati sunt. Gynaeceum Graece dictum eo quod
by-the-guards bound they-are gynaeceum in-Greek called for-this that
ibi conventus feminarum ad opus lanificii exercendum
there the-assembly of-women for the-work of-wool-making to-be-exercised
conveniat. Mulier enim Graece γυνὴ nuncupatur. Pistrinum quasi
gathers woman for in-Greek gyne is-named pistrinum as-if
pilistrinum, quia pilo antea tundebant granum. Unde et
pilistrinum because with-a-pestle before they-pounded grain whence also
apud veteres non molitores sed pistores dicti, quasi pinsores,
among the-ancients not millers but pistores called as-if pinsores

a pinsendis granis frumenti; molae enim usus nondum
from pounding the-grains of-wheat of-the-mill for the-use not-yet
erat, sed granum pilo pinsebant. Unde et Vergilius:
was but the-grain with-a-pestle they-pounded whence also Virgil

Nunc torrete igni fruges, nunc frangite saxo.
now parch with-fire the-crops now break with-stone

Clibanus [a clivo dictus, ab eo quod in erectione sit collectus;
clibanus from slope called from that that in erection it-be gathered
clivum enim ascensum dicimus sive flexuosum]. Furnum per
clivus for ascent we-say or winding oven by
derivationem a farre dictum, quoniam panis ex eo factus ibi
derivation from spelt called since bread from it made there
coquitur. Torcular dictum eo quod ibi uvae calcentur atque
is-baked torcular called for-this that there grapes are-trodden and
extortae exprimantur. Forus est locus ubi uva calcatur,
twisted are-pressed forus is the-place where the-grape is-trodden
dictus quod ibi feratur uva, vel propter quod ibi pedibus
called because there is-borne the-grape or on-account-of that there with-feet
feriatur: unde et calcatorium dicitur. Sed hoc nomen multa
it-is-struck whence also calcatorium it-is-called but this name many-things
significat: prima species fori locus in civitate ad exercendas
signifies the-first species of-forum a-place in the-city for holding
nundinas relictus; secunda, ubi magistratus iudicare solet;
market-days left the-second where the-magistrate to-judge is-wont
tertia, quem supra diximus, quem calcatorium nominavimus.
the-third which above we-have-said which calcatorium we-have-named
Quarta, spatia plana in navibus, de quibus Vergilius:
the-fourth spaces flat in ships about which Virgil

Laxatque foros.
and-loosens the-decks

Lacus dictus quia ibi decurrit frugum liquor.
lacus called because there runs-down of-crops the-liquor

De aditibus

VII · ENTRANCES

Isidore explains entrance, vestibule, portico, door and gate, windows, the hinge, the threshold, and the doorposts.

Aditus ab eundo dictus, per quem ingredimur et
entrance from going called through which we-enter and
admittimur. Vestibulum est vel aditus domus privatae,
are-admitted vestibule is either the-entrance of-a-house private
vel spatium adiacens aedibus publicis. Et vestibulum dictum
or a-space adjoining to-buildings public and vestibulum called
eo quod eo vestiuntur fores, aut quod aditum tecto
for-this that by-it are-clothed the-doors or because the-entrance with-a-roof
vestiat, aut ab stando. Porticus, quod transitus sit magis
it-clothes or from standing portico because a-passage it-be more
quam ubi standum sit, quasi porta; et porticus, eo quod
than where to-be-stood it-be as-if a-gate and porticus for-this that
sit apertus. Ianua a Iano quodam appellatur, cui gentiles
it-be open ianua from Janus a-certain is-called to-whom the-gentiles
omne introitum vel exitum sacraverunt. Unde Lucanus:
every entrance or exit consecrated whence Lucan

Ferrea belligeri conpescat limina Iani.
iron of-warlike may-restrain the-thresholds of-Janus

Est autem primus domus ingressus; cetera intra ianuam
it-is moreover the-first of-the-house entrance the-others within the-ianua
ostia vocantur generaliter. Ostium est per quod ab aliquo
ostia are-called generally ostium is through which from something
arcemur ingressu, ab ostando dictum [sive ostium, quia
we-are-kept-off from-entering from obstructing called or ostium because
ostendit aliquid intus]. Alii aiunt ostium appellari quia
it-shows something within others say ostium to-be-named because
ostem moratur; ibi enim adversariis nos obicimus: hinc et
the-enemy it-delays there for to-adversaries ourselves we-oppose hence also
Ostia Tiberina, quia ostibus sunt opposita. Fores et valvae
the-Ostia of-the-Tiber because to-enemies they-are opposed fores and valvae
claustra sunt; sed fores dicuntur quae foras, valvae, quae intus
barriers are but fores are-called which outward valvae which inward
revolvuntur, et duplices conplicabilesque sunt. Sed generaliter
revolve and double and-folding are but generally
usus vocabula ista corrupit. Claustra ab eo quod claudantur
use words these corrupted claustra from that that they-are-closed
dicta. Fenestrae sunt quibus pars exterior angusta et interior
called windows are of-which the-part outer narrow and inner
diffusa [est], quales in horreis videmus, dictae eo quod
spread is such-as in granaries we-see called for-this that
lucem fenerent: lux enim Graece φῶς dicitur: vel quia per
light they-may-lend light for in-Greek phos is-called or because through
eas intus positus homo videt. Alii fenestram putant dictam
them within placed a-man sees others window think called
eo quod domui lucem minestret, conpositum nomen ex
for-this that to-the-house light it-furnishes compounded a-name from

Graeco Latinoque sermone; φῶς enim Graece lux est. Cardo est
Greek and-Latin speech phos for in-Greek light is hinge is
locus in quo ostium vertitur et semper movetur, dictus ἀπὸ
the-place in which the-door is-turned and always is-moved called from
τῆς καρδίας, quod quasi cor hominem totum, ita ille cuneus
the heart because as-if the-heart the-man whole so that wedge
ianuam regat ac moveat. Unde et proverbiale est: 'In cardine
the-door rules and moves whence also proverbial it-is on the-hinge
rem esse.' Limina ostiorum dicta eo quod transversa sint
the-thing to-be thresholds of-doors called for-this that crosswise they-be
ut limes, et per ea sicut in agro aut introeatur aut foris
as a-boundary and through them as in a-field either is-entered or out
eatur. Postes et antae quasi post et ante: et antae quia
one-goes posts and antae as-if after and before and antae because
ante stant, vel quia antea ad eas accedimus prius quam
before they-stand or because before to them we-approach before than
domum ingrediamur; postes eo quod post ostium stent.
the-house we-enter postes for-this that after the-door they-stand

De partibus aedificiorum

VIII · THE PARTS OF BUILDINGS

The parts of buildings are named: foundation, wall, corner, roof, vault and panel, apse, arch, pavement, tiles, bricks, columns of the five orders, capitals, gutters, and water pipes.

Fundamentum dictum quod fundus sit domui. Idem et
foundation called because the-bottom it-be for-the-house the-same also
caementum a caedendo dictum, quod caeso crasso lapide
caementum from cutting called because with-cut thick stone

surgat. Paries nuncupatus quia semper duo sunt pares,
it-rises wall named because always two are equal
vel a latere vel a fronte. Sive enim tetragonum sive
either from the-side or from the-front whether for four-sided or
hexagonum sit, qui se conspiciunt ex pari erunt. Aliter
six-sided it-be which each-other look-at from equal shall-be otherwise
enim structura facta deformis est. Parietinas dicimus quasi
for the-structure made misshapen is parietinae we-call as-if
parietum ruinas: sunt enim parietes stantes sine tecto,
of-walls ruins they-are for walls standing without roof
sine habitantibus. Angulus, quod duos parietes in unum
without inhabitants corner because two walls into one
coniungat. Culmina dicta sunt quia apud antiquos tecta
it-joins culmina called are because among the-ancients roofs
culmo tegebantur, ut nunc rusticani. Hinc tecti summitas
with-straw were-covered as now rustics hence of-the-roof the-top
culmen dicitur. Camerae sunt volumina introrsum respicientia,
culmen is-called vaults are curves inward looking
appellatae a curvo; καμουρ enim Graece curvum est.
called from curved kamour for in-Greek curved is
Laquearia sunt quae cameram subtegunt et ornant, quae et
laquearia are which the-vault underlie and adorn which also
lacunaria dicuntur. Principaliter autem lacus dicitur, ut Lucilius:
lacunaria are-called principally moreover lacus is-said as Lucilius

Resultant aedesque lacusque.
resound and-the-house and-the-panel

Cuius diminutio lacunar facit, ut Horatius:
whose diminution lacunar makes as Horace

Neque aureum
nor golden
mea renidet in domo lacunar.
my shines in house paneled-ceiling

Inde fit alia diminutio lacunarium; et per ἀντίστιχον
thence is-made another diminution lacunarium and through antistichon
laquearium facit. Absida Graeco sermone, Latine interpretatur
laquearium makes apse in-Greek speech in-Latin is-interpreted
lucida, eo quod lumine accepto per arcum resplendeat. Sed
bright for-this that with-light received through the-arch it-shines-back but
utrum absidam an absidem dicere debeamus, hoc verbi genus
whether absida or absis to-say we-ought this of-the-word gender
ambiguum quidam doctorum existimant. Testudo est camera
ambiguous some of-the-learned think testudo is the-vault
templi obliqua. Nam in modum testudinis veteres templorum
of-a-temple oblique for in the-manner of-a-tortoise the-ancients of-temples
tecta faciebant; quae ideo sic fiebant ut caeli imaginem
the-roofs made which therefore so were-made that of-heaven the-image
redderet, quod constat esse convexum. Alii testudinem volunt
it-might-render which it-is-agreed to-be convex others testudo will
esse locum in parte atrii adversum venientibus. Arcus
to-be a-place in the-part of-the-atrium opposite to-those-coming arches
dicti quod sint arta conclusione curvati; ipsi et fornices.
called because they-be by-tight closing curved they also fornices
Pavimenta originem apud Graecos habent elaborata arte
pavements the-origin among the-Greeks have elaborated by-the-art
picturae; lithostrota parvulis crustis ac tessellis tinctis in
of-painting lithostrota with-tiny crusts and tesserae dyed into

varios colores. Vocata autem pavimenta eo quod paviantur,
various colors called moreover pavimenta for-this that they-are-beaten
id est caedantur. Unde et pavor, quia caedit cor. Ostracus
that is struck whence also fear because it-strikes the-heart ostracus
est pavimentum testaceum, eo quod fractis testis calce
is a-pavement of-potsherd for-this that with-broken potsherds with-lime
admixto feriatur; testa enim Graeci ὄστρα dicunt. Conpluvium
mixed it-is-beaten potsherd for the-Greeks ostra call compluvium
dictum quia aquae partibus, quae circa sunt, eo conveniunt.
called because the-waters from-the-parts which around are to-it come-together
Tessella sunt e quibus domicilia sternuntur, a tesseris
tessellae are from which dwellings are-paved from tesserae
nominata, id est quadratis lapillis, per diminutionem. Bases
named that is square pebbles through diminution bases
fulturae sunt columnarum, quae a fundamento consurgunt et
the-props are of-columns which from the-foundation rise and
superpositae fabricae sustinent pondus. 'Bases' autem nomen
of-the-placed-above structure sustain the-weight basis moreover the-name
petrae est fortissimae Syro sermone. Columnae pro longitudine
of-a-rock is most-strong in-Syrian speech columns for length
et rotunditate vocatae, in quibus totius fabricae pondus
and roundness called on which of-the-whole structure the-weight
erigitur. Antiqua ratio erat columnarum altitudinis tertia pars
is-raised the-ancient reckoning was of-columns of-the-height the-third part
latitudinum. Genera rotundarum quattuor: Doricae, Ionicae,
of-the-breadths the-kinds of-round-ones four Doric Ionic
Tuscanicae, Corinthiae, mensura crassitudinis et altitudinis
Tuscan Corinthian by-the-measure of-thickness and height
inter se distantes. Quintum genus est earum quae vocantur
among themselves differing the-fifth kind is of-those which are-called
Atticae, quaternis angulis aut amplius, paribus laterum
Attic with-four-each corners or more with-equal of-sides

intervallis. Capitolia dicta quod sint columnarum capita,
intervals capitals called because they-be of-columns the-heads
sicut super collum caput. Epistolia sunt quae super capitella
as upon the-neck the-head epistylia are which upon the-capitals
columnarum ponuntur; et est Graecum [id est supermissa].
of-columns are-placed and it-is Greek that is placed-over
Tegulae, quod tegant aedes; et imbrices, quod accipiant
tiles because they-cover houses and imbrices because they-receive
imbres. Lateres et laterculi, quod lati formentur circumactis
rains bricks and little-bricks because broad they-are-formed with-put-around
undique quattuor tabulis. Canalis ab eo quod cava sit in
on-all-sides four boards channel from that that hollow it-be in
modum cannae. Sane canalem melius genere feminino quam
the-manner of-a-reed certainly canalis better in-gender feminine than
masculino proferimus. Fistulae aquarum sunt dictae quod aquas
masculine we-bring-forth pipes of-waters are called because waters
fundant et mittant; nam στολά Graece mittere est. Formae
they-pour and send for stola in-Greek to-send is the-forms
earum pro magnitudine aquae et capacitatis modo fiunt.
of-them for the-size of-the-water and of-capacity the-measure are-made

De munitionibus

IX · FORTIFICATIONS

Fortification, the enclosure (cohors), rampart, mound, and walls are explained, with the earth walls of Africa and Spain, hedges, and sheepfolds.

Munitum vel munimentum dictum quia manu est factum.
munitum or munimentum called because by-hand it-is made
Cohors vocata vel quod coartet cuncta quae interius sunt, id
cohors called either because it-confines all-things which within are that
est concludat, vel quod coerceat obiectu suo extraneos et
is it-encloses or because it-restrains by-the-obstacle its outsiders and
adire prohibeat. Vallum est quod mole terrae erigitur,
to-approach forbids rampart is what with-a-mass of-earth is-raised
ut custodia praetendatur. Dictum autem vallum a vallis;
that a-guard be-held-before called moreover vallum from valli
nam valli fustes sunt, quibus vallum munitur. Et valli dicti
for valli stakes are by-which the-rampart is-fortified and valli called
quod figantur et vellantur. Intervalla sunt spatia inter capita
because they-are-fixed and are-pulled-up intervals are spaces between the-heads
vallorum, id est stipitum quibus vallum fit; unde et cetera
of-the-valli that is of-the-stakes of-which the-rampart is-made whence also the-other
quoque spatia dicunt, ab stipitibus scilicet. Agger est cuiuslibet
also spaces they-call from stakes namely mound is of-any
rei acervatio, unde fossae aut valles possint repleri. Agger
thing the-heaping whence ditches or valleys can to-be-filled agger
proprie dicitur terra aggesta quae vallo facto propius
properly is-called earth heaped which with-the-rampart made nearer
ponitur; sed abusive et muros et munimenta omnia aggerem
is-placed but loosely both walls and fortifications all agger
dicimus. Maceriae sunt parietes longi quibus vineae aliquae
we-call maceriae are walls long by-which vineyards some

clauduntur; longum enim Graeci μακρὸν dicunt. Formatum,
are-enclosed long for the-Greeks makron call formatum
sive formacium, in Africa et Hispania parietes e terra appellant,
or formacium in Africa and Spain walls of earth they-call
quoniam in forma circumdatis duabus utrimque tabulis
since in a-form with-surrounded two on-both-sides boards
inferciuntur verius quam instruuntur. Aevis durant incorrupti
they-are-stuffed rather than they-are-built for-ages they-last uncorrupted
ventis, ignibus omnique caemento fortiores. Sepes munimenta
by-winds fires and-every rubble stronger hedges the-defenses
satorum sunt; unde et appellatae. Caulas munimenta ovium vel
of-sown-crops are whence also called caulae the-defenses of-sheep or
sepimenta ovilium. Est autem Graecum nomen C [littera]
the-enclosures of-sheepfolds it-is moreover a-Greek name with-C the-letter
detracta; nam Graeci αὐλὰς vocant animalium receptacula.
withdrawn for the-Greeks aulas call of-animals the-receptacles

De tentoriis

X · TENTS

Tents and tabernacles shelter soldiers on the march; the pavilion is named from the butterfly.

Tabernacula tentoria sunt militum, quibus in itinere
tabernacles the-tents are of-soldiers by-which on the-march
solis ardores tempestatesque imbrium frigorisque iniurias
of-the-sun the-heats and-the-tempests of-rains and-of-cold the-injuries
vitant. Dicta autem tabernacula quod cortinae distentae
they-avoid called moreover tabernacula because curtains stretched
funibus tabulis interstantibus adpenderentur, quae tentoria
with-ropes with-boards standing-between were-hung which the-tents

sustinerent. Tentorium vocatum eo quod tendatur funibus
might-sustain tentorium called for-this that it-is-stretched with-ropes
atque palis; unde et hodie praetendere dicuntur. Papiliones
and stakes whence also today they-are-said to-stretch-before papiliones
vocantur a similitudine parvuli animalis volantis, quae
are-called from the-likeness of-the-little animal flying which
maxime abundant florentibus malvis. Haec sunt aviculae
most abound in-flowering mallows these are little-birds
quae lumine accenso conveniunt, et circa volitantes ab igne
which with-light kindled gather and around flying by the-fire
proxime interire coguntur.
nearest to-perish are-compelled

De sepulchris

XI · TOMBS

The dead were once buried at home until the laws forbade it. Isidore explains monument, mound, sarcophagus, mausoleum, and the pyramids of Egypt.

Sepulchrum a sepulto dictum. Prius autem quisque in domo
tomb from buried called earlier moreover each in house
sua sepeliebatur. Postea vetitum est legibus, ne foetore
his was-buried afterward forbidden it-was by-laws lest by-the-stench
ipso corpora viventium contacta inficerentur. Monumentum
itself the-bodies of-the-living touched should-be-infected monumentum
ideo nuncupatur eo quod mentem moneat ad defuncti
therefore is-named for-this that the-mind it-warns to of-the-dead-man
memoriam. Cum enim non videris monumentum, illud
the-memory when for not you-shall-have-seen the-monument that
est quod scriptum est: 'Excidi tamquam mortuus a corde.'
is which written is I-have-fallen-out like a-dead-man from the-heart

Cum autem videris, monet mentem et ad memoriam te
when moreover you-shall-have-seen it-warns the-mind and to memory you
reducit ut mortuum recorderis. Monumenta itaque et memoriae
leads-back that the-dead-man you-may-recall monuments and-so and memorials
pro mentis admonitione dictae. Tumulus dictus quasi tumens
for of-the-mind admonition called tumulus called as-if swelling
tellus. Sarcophagus Graecum est nomen, eo quod ibi
earth sarcophagus a-Greek is name for-this that there
corpora absumantur; σάρξ enim Graece caro, φαγεῖν comedere
bodies are-consumed sarx for in-Greek flesh phagein to-eat
dicitur. Mausolea sunt sepulchra seu monumenta regum, a
is-called mausoleums are tombs or monuments of-kings from
Mausol[e]o rege Aegyptiorum dicta. Nam eo defuncto
Mausolus king of-the-Egyptians called for with-him dead
uxor eius mirae magnitudinis et pulchritudinis extruxit
wife his of-marvelous size and beauty built
sepulchrum in tantum ut usque hodie omnia monumenta
a-tomb in so-much that all-the-way-to today all monuments
pretiosa ex nomine eius Mausolea nuncupentur. Pyramides
precious from the-name his Mausolea are-named pyramids
genus sepulchrorum quadratum et fastigiatum ultra omnem
a-kind of-tombs square and peaked beyond all
excelsitatem quae fieri manu possit, unde et mensuram
loftiness which to-be-made by-hand can whence also the-measure
umbrarum egressae nullam habere umbram dicuntur. Tali
of-shadows having-exceeded no to-have shadow they-are-said with-such
autem aedificio surgunt ut a lato incipiant et in angusto
moreover a-building they-rise that from broad they-begin and in narrow
finiantur sicut ignis; πῦρ enim dicitur ignis. Hos Aegyptus
they-end as fire pyr for is-called fire these Egypt
habet. Apud maiores enim potentes aut sub montibus aut
has among the-ancestors for the-powerful either under mountains or

in montibus sepeliebantur. Inde tractum est ut super cadavera
on mountains were-buried thence drawn is that over corpses
aut pyramides fierent, aut ingentes columnae conlocarentur.
either pyramids were-made or huge columns were-placed

De aedificiis rusticis

XII · RUSTIC BUILDINGS

The cottage, the hut that vineyard keepers make, and the magalia of the Numidians are named.

Casa est agreste habitaculum palis atque virgultis
cottage is a-rustic dwelling with-stakes and twigs
arundinibusque contextum, quibus possint homines
and-reeds woven by-which can men
tueri a [vi] frigoris vel caloris iniuria. Tugurium
protect-themselves from the-force of-cold or of-heat the-injury tugurium
casula est quam faciunt sibi custodes vinearum
a-little-cottage is which make for-themselves the-guards of-vineyards
ad tegimen sui, quasi tegurium, sive propter ardorem
for covering of-themselves as-if tegurium either on-account-of the-heat
solis et radios declinandos, sive ut inde vel homines vel
of-the-sun and rays to-be-avoided or that thence either men or
bestiolas, quae insidiare solent natis frugibus, abigant.
little-beasts which to-lie-in-wait are-wont for-born crops they-may-drive-off
Hunc rustici capannam vocant, quod unum tantum capiat.
this rustics capanna call because one only it-holds
Tescua quidam putant esse tuguria, quidam loca praerupta
tescua some think to-be huts some places steep
et aspera. Magalia aedificia Numidarum agrestium oblonga,
and rough magalia the-buildings of-the-Numidians rustic oblong

incurvis lateribus tecta, quasi navium carinae sunt, sive
with-curved sides roofed as-if of-ships keels they-are or
rotunda in modum furnorum. Et magalia dicta quasi
round in the-manner of-ovens and magalia called as-if
magaria, quia 'magar' Punici novam villam dicunt, una
magaria because magar the-Punic new farm call with-one
littera commutata L pro R, magalia, magaria.
letter changed L for R magalia magaria

De agris

XIII · FIELDS

Isidore explains field, villa, possessions, estate, and farm, Varro's four kinds of field, and the words for common pasture, alluvial, fallow, marshy, and leftover land, the threshing floor, the meadow, and the marsh.

Ager Latine appellari dicitur eo quod in eo agatur aliquid.
field in-Latin to-be-named is-said for-this that in it is-done something
Alii agrum ex Graeco nominari manifestius credunt. Unde
others ager from Greek to-be-named more-plainly believe whence
et villa Graece †coragros† dicitur. Villa a vallo, id est
also villa in-Greek coragros is-called villa from vallum that is
aggere terrae, nuncupata, quod pro limite constitui solet.
the-mound of-earth named which for a-boundary to-be-established is-wont
Possessiones sunt agri late patentes publici privatique, quos
possessions are fields widely lying-open public and-private which
initio non mancipatione, sed quisque ut potuit occupavit
at-the-beginning not by-mancipation but each as he-could occupied
atque possedit; unde et nuncupati. Fundus dictus quod
and possessed whence also named fundus called because

eo fundatur vel stabiliatur patrimonium. Fundus autem et
by-it is-founded or is-made-stable the-patrimony fundus moreover both
urbanum aedificium et rusticum intellegendum est. Praedium,
an-urban building and a-rustic to-be-understood is praedium
quod ex omnibus patrifamilias maxime praevidetur,
because from all to-the-father-of-the-family most is-foreseen
id est apparet, quasi praevidium; vel quod antiqui agros,
that is appears as-if praevidium or because the-ancients the-fields
quos bello ceperant, ut praedae nomine habebant. Omnis
which in-war they-had-taken as of-plunder under-the-name held every
autem ager, ut Varro docet, quadrifarius dividitur: aut enim
moreover field as Varro teaches fourfold is-divided either for
arvus est ager, id est sationalis; aut consitus, id est aptus
arable is the-field that is for-sowing or planted that is apt
arboribus; aut pascuus, qui herbis tantum et animalibus
for-trees or pasture which for-herbs only and animals
vacat; aut florus, quod sunt horti apibus congruentes et
is-free or flowery because they-are gardens for-bees fitting and
floribus. Quod etiam Vergilius in quattuor libros Georgicorum
for-flowers which also Virgil in four books of-the-Georgics
secutus est. Rura veteres incultos agros dicebant, id est
followed has rura the-ancients uncultivated fields called that is
silvas et pascua; agrum vero, qui colebatur. Nam rus
woods and pastures agrum but which was-tilled for rus
est quo mel, quo lac, quo pecus haberi potest; unde et
is where honey where milk where cattle to-be-had can whence also
rusticus nominatur: haec agrestium prima et otiosa felicitas.
rustic is-named this of-country-folk the-first and leisured happiness
Seges ager est in quo seritur; unde et Vergilius:
seges a-field is in which is-sown whence also Virgil

Illa seges demum votis respondet avari agricolae.
that crop at-last to-the-prayers answers of-the-greedy farmer

Conpascuus ager dictus qui a divisoribus agrorum relictus est
common-pasture field called which by the-dividers of-fields left is
ad pascendum communiter vicinis. Alluvius ager est quem
for pasturing in-common for-the-neighbors alluvial field is which
paulatim fluvius in agrum reddit. Arcifinius ager dictus est
little-by-little the-river into field renders arcifinius field called is
qui a certis linearum mensuris non continetur, sed arcentur
which by fixed of-lines measures not is-contained but are-kept-off
fines eius obiectu fluminum, montium, arborum; unde
the-boundaries its by-the-obstacle of-rivers of-mountains of-trees whence
et in his agris nihil subsicivorum intervenit. Novalis ager est
also in these fields nothing of-subsiciva intervenes fallow field is
primum proscissus, sive qui alternis annis vacat novandarum
first broken or which in-alternate years is-free of-to-be-renewed
sibi virium causa. Novalia enim semel cum fructu erunt
for-itself of-strengths for-the-sake fallows for once with fruit shall-be
et semel vacua. Squalidus ager quasi excolidus, quod iam
and once empty squalid field as-if excolidus because already
a cultura exierit; sicut exconsul, quod a consulatu
from cultivation it-has-gone-out as exconsul because from the-consulship
discesserit. Uliginosus ager est semper uvidus. Nam humidus
he-has-departed marshy field is always moist for humid
dicitur qui aliquando siccatur. Uligo enim humor terrae
is-called which at-some-time is-dried uligo for the-moisture of-the-earth
est naturalis, ab ea numquam recedens. Subseciva sunt
is natural from it never receding subsiciva are
proprie quae sutor de materia praecidens quasi supervacua
properly what the-cobbler from the-material cutting-off as-if superfluous

abicit. Inde et subsiciva, agri quos in pertica divisos
throws-away thence also the-subsiciva fields which in the-measuring-rod divided
recusant quasi steriles vel palustres. Item subseciva quae
they-refuse as-if sterile or marshy likewise subsiciva which
in divisura agri non efficiunt centuriam, id est iugera
in the-division of-the-field not make a-century that is acres
ducenta. Area dicitur tabularum aequalitas. Dicta autem
two-hundred threshing-floor is-called of-boards the-evenness called moreover
area a planitie atque aequalitate; unde et ara. Alii aream
area from flatness and evenness whence also ara others area
vocatam dicunt quod pro triturandis frugibus eradatur, vel
called say because for threshing crops it-is-scraped or
quod non triturentur in ea nisi arida. Pratum est cuius
because not are-threshed on it except dry-things meadow is of-which
feni copia armenta tuentur, cui veteres Romani
of-hay by-the-abundance the-herds are-sustained to-which the-old Romans
nomen indiderunt ab eo quod protinus sit paratum, nec
the-name gave from that that straightway it-be prepared nor
magnum laborem culturae desideret. Prata autem esse quae
great labor of-cultivation it-requires meadows moreover to-be which
secari possunt. Paludes dictae a Pale pastorali dea,
to-be-mown can marshes called from Pales the-pastoral goddess
quod paleam, id est pabula, nutriant iumentorum.
because chaff that is the-fodders they-nourish of-draft-animals

De finibus agrorum

XIV · THE BOUNDARIES OF FIELDS

Boundaries and limits divide the fields; the two greatest limits are the cardo, running from the north, and the decumanus, from east to west, which together make the figure X.

Fines dicti eo quod agri funiculis sint divisi.
boundaries called for-this that the-fields with-little-ropes be divided
Mensurarum enim lineae in terrarum partitione tenduntur ut
of-measures for the-lines in of-the-lands the-partition are-stretched that
dimensionis aequalitas teneatur. Limites appellati antqiuo verbo
of-measurement the-equality be-held limites called by-an-old word
transversi, nam transversa omnia antiqui lima dicebant; a
crosswise for crosswise all the-ancients lima called from
quo et limina ostiorum, per quae foris vel intus itur, et
which also the-thresholds of-doors through which out or in one-goes and
limites, quod per eos in agros foris eatur. Hinc et limus
limites because through them into the-fields out one-goes hence also limus
vocabulum accepit, cingulum quo servi publici cingebantur
the-name received the-girdle by-which slaves public were-girded
obliqua purpura. Termini dicti quod terrae mensuras
with-oblique purple termini called because of-the-earth the-measures
distinguunt atque declarant. His enim testimonia finium
they-distinguish and declare by-these for the-testimonies of-the-boundaries
intelleguntur, et agrorum intentio et certamen aufertur.
are-understood and of-fields the-contention and the-dispute is-taken-away
Limites maximi in agris duo sunt: cardo et decumanus. Cardo,
the-limits greatest in fields two are the-cardo and the-decumanus the-cardo
qui a septentrione directus a cardine caeli est; nam
which from the-north directed from the-hinge of-heaven is for

sine dubio caelum vertitur in septentrionali orbe. Decumanus
without doubt heaven is-turned in the-northern circle the-decumanus
est qui ab oriente in occidentem per transversum dirigitur,
is which from the-east into the-west through crosswise is-directed
qui pro eo quod formam X faciat decumanus est appellatus.
which for that that the-form X it-makes decumanus is called
Ager enim bis divisus figuram denarii numeri efficit.
the-field for twice divided the-figure of-the-ten number makes
Arca ab arcendo vocata: fines enim agri custodit
arca from keeping-off called the-boundaries for of-the-field it-guards
eosque adire prohibet. Trifinium dictum eo quod trium
and-them to-approach forbids trifinium called for-this that of-three
possessionum fines adstringit. Hinc et quadrifinium,
possessions the-boundaries it-binds hence also quadrifinium
quod quattuor. Reliqui limites angustiores et inter se
which of-four the-remaining limits narrower and among themselves
distant inparibus intervallis et nominibus designatis.
differ by-unequal intervals and by-names designated

De mensuris agrorum

XV · THE MEASURES OF FIELDS

Isidore sets out the measures from the finger, inch, palm, foot, pace, and perch to the actus, the acre, the century, and the mile.

Mensura est quidquid pondere, capacitate, longitudine,
measure is whatever by-weight capacity length
altitudine, latitudine, animoque finitur. Maiores itaque
height breadth and-mind is-bounded the-ancestors and-so
orbem in partibus, partes in provinciis, provincias in
the-world into parts the-parts into provinces the-provinces into

regionibus, regiones in locis, loca in territoriis, territoria
regions the-regions into places the-places into territories the-territories
in agris, agros in centuriis, centurias in iugeribus, iugera
into fields the-fields into centuries the-centuries into acres the-acres
in climatibus, deinde climata in actus, perticas, passus,
into climata then the-climata into actus perches paces
gradus, cubitos, pedes, palmos, uncias et digitos dividerunt;
steps cubits feet palms inches and fingers divided
tanta enim fuit illorum sollertia. Digitus est pars minima
so-great for was their skill the-finger is the-part least
agrestium mensurarum. Inde uncia habens digitos tres.
of-rural measures thence the-inch having fingers three
Palmus autem quattuor digitos habet, pes sedecim, passus
the-palm moreover four fingers has the-foot sixteen the-pace
pedes quinque, pertica passus duos, id est pedes decem.
feet five the-perch paces two that is feet ten
Pertica autem a portando dicta, quasi portica. Omnes enim
pertica moreover from carrying called as-if portica all for
praecedentes mensurae in corpore sunt, ut palmus, pes,
the-preceding measures in the-body are as the-palm the-foot
passus, et reliqua; sola pertica portatur. Est enim decem
the-pace and the-rest alone the-perch is-carried it-is for of-ten
pedum ad instar calami in Ezechielo templum mensurantis.
feet to the-likeness of-the-reed in Ezekiel the-temple of-measuring
Actus minimus est, latitudine pedum quattuor, longitudine
the-actus least is in-breadth of-feet four in-length
centum viginti. Climata quoque undiqueversum pedes habent
a-hundred twenty the-climata also on-every-side feet have
sexaginta, ita. Actus quadratus undique finitur pedibus
sixty thus the-actus square on-all-sides is-bounded by-feet
centum viginti, ita. Hunc Baetici arapennem dicunt, ab
a-hundred twenty thus this the-Baetici arapennis call from

arando scilicet. Actus duplicatus iugerum facit; ab eo quod
plowing namely the-actus doubled the-acre makes from that which
est iunctum iugeri nomen accepit. Iugerum autem constat
is joined of-the-iugerum the-name it-received the-acre moreover consists
longitudine pedum ducentorum quadraginta, latitudine centum
in-length of-feet two-hundred forty in-breadth a-hundred
viginti, ita. Actum provinciae Baeticae rustici acnuam vocant.
twenty thus the-actus of-the-province Baetica the-rustics acnua call
Porcam idem Baetici triginta pedum latitudine et octuaginta
the-porca the-same Baetici of-thirty feet in-breadth and eighty
longitudine definiunt. Sed porca est quod in arando extat;
in-length define but porca is what in plowing stands-out
quod defossum est, lira. Galli candetum appellant in
what dug-down is lira the-Gauls candetum call in
areis urbanis spatium centum pedum, quasi centetum.
areas urban a-space of-a-hundred feet as-if centetum
In agrestibus autem pedes centum quinquaginta quadratum
in rural moreover feet a-hundred fifty square
iustum candetum vocant. Porro stadialis ager habet passus
proper candetum they-call further the-stadial field has paces
CXXV, id est pedes DCXXV; cuius mensura
one-hundred-twenty-five that is feet six-hundred-twenty-five whose measure
octies conputata, miliarium facit, qui constat quinque milia
eight-times computed the-mile makes which consists of-five thousand
pedibus. Centuria autem ager est ducentorum iugerum, qui
feet century moreover a-field is of-two-hundred acres which
apud antiquos a centum iugeribus vocabatur, sed postea
among the-ancients from a-hundred acres was-called but afterward
duplicata est nomenque pristinum retinuit. In numero enim
doubled it-was and-the-name former kept in number for
centuriae multiplicatae sunt, nomen mutare non potuerunt.
the-centuries multiplied were the-name to-change not they-could

De itineribus

XVI · ROADS

The measures of roads differ by people, the mile, the stade Hercules is said to have set, and the league. Isidore explains road, public and private, the paved road, the agger, and the words for paths, tracks, crossroads, ruts, and footprints.

Mensuras viarum nos miliaria dicimus, Graeci stadia,
the-measures of-roads we miles call the-Greeks stades
Galli leugas, Aegypti schoenos, Persae parasangas. Sunt
the-Gauls leagues the-Egyptians schoeni the-Persians parasangs they-are
autem proprio quaeque spatio. Miliarium mille passibus
moreover by-their-own each space the-mile by-a-thousand paces
terminatur; et dictum miliarium quasi mille adium,
is-bounded and called miliarium as-if a-thousand of-steps
habens pedes quinque milia. Leuga finitur passibus mille
having feet five thousand the-league is-bounded by-paces a-thousand
quingentis. Stadium octava pars miliarii est, constans passibus
five-hundred the-stade the-eighth part of-a-mile is consisting of-paces
centum viginti quinque. Hunc primum Herculem statuisse
a-hundred twenty five this first Hercules to-have-set
dicunt, eumque eo spatio determinasse quod ipse
they-say and-it by-that space to-have-determined which he-himself
sub uno spiritu confecisset, ac proinde stadium appellasse
under one breath had-completed and accordingly stadium to-have-named
quoniam in fine respirasset simulque et stetisset. Via est
since at the-end he-had-breathed and-at-once also had-stood road is
qua potest ire vehiculum; et via dicta a vehiculorum
by-which can go a-vehicle and via called from of-vehicles
incursu. Nam duos actus capit, propter euntium et
the-running for two actus it-holds on-account-of of-going and

venientium vehiculorum occursum. Omnis autem via aut
coming vehicles the-meeting every moreover road either
publica est aut privata. Publica est quae in solo publico est,
public is or private public is which on soil public is
qua iter, actus populo patet. Haec aut ad mare aut
by-which the-way the-drive to-the-people lies-open this either to the-sea or
ad oppida pertinet. Privata est quae vicino municipio
to towns pertains private is which to-a-neighboring municipality
data est. Strata dicta quasi vulgi pedibus trita. Lucretius:
given is strata called as-if of-the-crowd by-the-feet trodden Lucretius

Strataque iam vulgi pedibus detrita viarum.
and-the-paved now of-the-crowd by-the-feet worn of-roads

Ipsa est et delapidata, id est lapidibus strata. Primi autem
it is also delapidata that is with-stones paved first moreover
Poeni dicuntur lapidibus vias stravisse; postea Romani eas
the-Punic are-said with-stones roads to-have-paved afterward the-Romans them
per omnem pene orbem disposuerunt, propter rectitudinem
through all almost the-world disposed on-account-of the-straightness
itinerum et ne plebs esset otiosa. Agger est media stratae
of-journeys and lest the-plebs be idle agger is the-middle of-the-paved-road
eminentia coaggeratis lapidibus strata, ab aggere, id est
prominence with-heaped-up stones paved from agger that is
coacervatione dicta; quam historici viam militarem dicunt, ut:
heaping called which the-historians road military call as

Qualis saepe viae deprensus in aggere serpens.
such-as often of-a-road caught on the-ridge a-serpent

Iter vel itus est via qua iri ab homine quaquaversum
iter or itus is the-way by-which to-be-gone by man in-every-direction
potest. Iter autem et itiner diversam significationem habent.
it-can iter moreover and itiner diverse signification have
Iter [enim] est locus transitu facilis; unde appellamus et
iter for is a-place for-passage easy whence we-call also
itum. Itiner autem est itus longae viae, et ipse labor
itus itiner moreover is the-going of-a-long road and the-very labor
ambulandi ut quo velis pervenias. Semita itineris dimidium
of-walking that where you-wish you-may-arrive path of-a-way the-half
est, a semiitu dicta. Semita autem hominum est, calles
is from half-going called path moreover of-men is tracks
ferarum et pecudum. Callis est iter pecudum inter montes
of-beasts and of-cattle callis is the-way of-cattle between mountains
angustum et tritum, a callo pedum vocatum, sive
narrow and trodden from the-callus of-feet called or
a callo pecudum praeduratum. Tramites sunt transversa
from the-callus of-cattle hardened tramites are crosswise
in agris itinera, sive recta via, dicta quod transmittat.
in fields ways or a-straight road called because it-transmits
Divortia sunt flexus viarum, hoc est viae in diversa
divortia are the-bends of-roads that is roads into diverse-ways
tendentes. Idem diverticula sunt, hoc est diversae ac divisae
tending the-same diverticula are that is diverse and divided
viae, sive semitae transversae quae sunt a latere viae.
roads or paths crosswise which are from the-side of-the-road
Bivium, quia duplex est via. Conpeta, quia plures in
bivium because double is the-road compita because many in
ea conpetunt viae, quasi triviae, quadriviae. Ambitus inter
it meet roads as-if trivia quadrivia ambitus between
vicinorum aedificia locus, duorum pedum et semipedis ad
of-neighbors the-buildings a-place of-two feet and a-half-foot for

circumeundi facultatem relictus, et ab ambulando dictus.
of-going-around the-facility left and from walking called
Orbita vestigium carri, ab orbe rotae dicta. Porro actus,
orbita the-track of-a-cart from the-circle of-the-wheel called further actus
quo pecus agi solet. Clivosum iter flexuosum. Vestigia
by-which cattle to-be-driven is-wont clivosum a-way winding footprints
sunt pedum signa primis plantis expressa, vocata quod
are of-feet signs by-the-first soles pressed called because
his viae praecurrentium investigentur, id est agnoscantur.
by-these the-ways of-those-running-before are-traced that is are-recognized

---